



New Hello!

By a group of supervisors

الصف الثالث الإعدادى الفصـل الدراســى الأول



mr.salah abdelsalam

لتطبيق التفاعلى لتعليم عن يعد





Contents

Check your English

Around town

E 2 Let's go shopping

5 3 My community

Review A

Have you ever travelled by plane?

5 Young role models

5 6 What's wrong?

Review B

page

11

15

75

133

190

196

249

304

364



Complete the questions with these words.

a lot of - how to - if - located - n	nustn't - quietly - used to - which
1. What you do in an exam	The state of the s
2. What should you doyou	
3. What do you call someone who	o knows paint very well?
Which city is on the Sue	z Canal ?
5. Who think that an anim	al's eye helped blind people ?
6. What fast food has fat ir	lt?
What do you call the material	people often use to make clothes
In which building do people us	sually sit and read?
Now match the questions from	
a. cotton	e. a library
b. the Ancient Egyptians	f. pizza
c. talk loudly	you should tell the teacher.
d. Port Said	h. an artist

3 Listen and check your answers to exercises 1 and 2.



Narrator: 1

Speaker 1: What mustn't you do in an exam?

Speaker 2: (c) talk loudly

Narrator: 2

Speaker 1: What should you do if you feel ill at school?

Speaker 2: (g) You should tell the teacher.

Narrator: 3

Speaker 1: What do you call someone who knows how to paint very well?

Speaker 2: (h) an artist.

Narrator: 4 Speaker 1: Which city is located on the Suez Canal? Speaker 2: (d) Port Said. Narrator: 5 Speaker 1: Who used to think that an animal's eye helped blind people? Speaker 2: (b) the Ancient Egyptians. Narrator: 6 Speaker 1: What fast food has a lot of fat in it? Speaker 2: (f) pizza. Narrator: 7 Speaker 1: What do you call the material which people often use to make Speaker 2: (a) cotton. Narrator: 8 Speaker 1: In which building do people usually sit and read quietly? 4 Read and underline the mistakes in these sentences. 1. As we walk into the museum, we saw lots of old statues. As we were walking into the museum, we saw lots of old statues. 2. My sister bought a cotton, new, pretty dress. 3. Tarek wants the blue shoes, but I prefer the brown one. 4. Look at those dark clouds! I think it is raining soon. 5. Hundreds of fish caught by the fishermen every week.

5 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.



- In the foreground, I can see some shops. There is a man selling clothes on the right.
- A: Good morning. How can I help you?
 - B: Hello. Can you tell me what time the museum opens?
 - A: Of course. It opens at 9 am.
 - B: Can I buy tickets there?
 - A: Certainly or you can buy them online.
- Beat two eggs in a bowl with a little milk. Add some salt. Pour the eggs into a frying pan and cook them in a little butter. When it is ready, serve it with salad.
- A: Hi, Leila. I was wondering if you would like to watch a film at my house this evening?
 - B: Thanks Sara. What time should I come?
 - A: About seven.
 - B: Shall I bring anything?
 - A: Could you bring some orange juice?
 - B: Of course. See you later.
- A: Can I help you?
 - B: Yes. I like this red dress. Could I try it on?
 - A: Of course. The changing room is there.
 - B: Does it fit?
 - A: No. Do you have a smaller size?
 - B: We don't have smaller red dresses, but we have a smaller one in blue.
 - A: Thanks. I'll take it.
 - 1. The boy is
 - a. describing a photo
- b. selling clothes
- c. going to the shops
- d. buying something

- 2. The man is
 - a. buying tickets at a museum
- b, helping a woman
- c. asking for information on the phone
- d. describing a visit to a museum yesterday

- 3. The woman is
 - a. making a salad
 - c. saying how to make a salad
- 4. Sara is
 - a. cooking food for Leila
 - c. making a film
- 5. The woman in the shop
 - a. buys a red dress
 - c. doesn't buy a dress

- b. eating lunch
- d. saying how to make an omelette
- b. inviting Leila to her house
- d. going to Leila's house this evening
- b. wants a larger dress
- d. buys a blue dress

6 Read the text, then answer the questions:

What clothes do you like to wear? Most people can choose the clothes that they wear each day, but in some jobs you must wear special clothes. For example, firefighters must wear clothes that are made of special material that does not burn. If you are a doctor, you should sometimes wear special clothes and masks that stop you from becoming ill. Many other people, such as engineers and builders, must wear hats and big boots when they are working.

- 1. What is different about the clothes firefighters wear? They are made of a special material that does not burn.
- 2. How do the clothes that doctors wear help them?
- 3. What do engineers and builders often wear?
- 4. Why do you think they wear these clothes?
- 5. In which other jobs do people wear special clothes, and why?
- Write in your notebook about a person with a great job.
 - What makes this job special?
 - · Why do you think the person does this job?
 - Say if you would like to do this job and why.

TIND

Around town

SEPROPORE THE YOU DOWN FREE



Objectives

· Reading:

A description of Ismailia; maps, posters and timetables; accounts of forms of transport; a botanical garden's brochure; an email about meeting a friend

· Writing:

A fact file; a paragraph about your city; a reply to an email;

· Listening:

Giving and following directions; people talking about their city; a discussion at a train station; making suggestions for a day out

- العلامة 👣 تسبق أسئلة كتاب الطالب - العلامة 🕬 تسبق أسئلة كتاب التحريبات



· Speaking:

Giving directions, talking about your city or village; discussing timetables and public transport, making suggestions

· Language :

The present simple for scheduled events

· Life Skills:

Decision making, respect for diversity

: للرزناء ية الرومية و الله ا**ن في Master your term** : قاموس الن عاجر اللغو**ب**



1 & 2

SB pages 2:5 WB pages 72 & 73



Vocabulary

Key Vocabulary

اibrary (n) (قرائق نباتية والاستعارة) (library (n) (قرائة والاستعارة) (sports centre (n)	monument (n) peaceful (adj) traffic (n)	ديرة ئر (تاريخي) سالم - هادئ رخة المرور
مرکر ریاطی	especially (adv)	موضا - خاصة

تنويه • Key Vocabulary هي المفردات الأكثر أهمية المطلوب من الطالب إتقانها. ■ Master your Vocabulary يقضى على جميع مشاكل حفظ المفردات (ملحق Master).



■ Glossary لحصيلة أكبر (للمزيد) من المفردات اللغوية انظر نهاية الكتاب.

Lesson (1)

SB pages 2 & 3 WB page 72

محطة (قطار او الوبيس) acts (n) estaurant (n)	Pidit(3 (11)	يستعير - يستلف مركز تسوق يتجه / دور نباتات

Lesson (2)

SB pages 4 & 5 WB page 73

ruins (n)	ob pages 4 & 5 WB page		
pollution (n)	بقایا / أطلال	natural (adj)	
nature reserve (n)	تلوث	fact file (n)	ر د درون
area (n)	وتدتنه وتمعه	village (n)	ملف حقائق / معلومات
Sphinx (n)	منطقة - مساحة	grandparents (n)	مَرية
include (d) (v)	أبوالهول	event (n)	الأجداد
	يشمل / يضم	useful (adj)	حدث
		-	مفيد - نافع

Cities and important places			مدن وأماكن ممامة
Ismailia	مدينة الاسماعيلية		بحيرة التمساح
the Suez Canal	قناة السويس	Natural Science M	useum متحف العلوم الطبيعية
Port Said	مدينة بورسعيد	Giza	مدينة الجيزة

Conjugation of Irregular Verbs تصريف الأفعال غير المنتظمة الماضي Past التصريف الثالث .P.P Present المضارع took بأخذ taken take went پذھب gone go ran run run said يقول said say saw seen see built built پېنې build heard heard hear

تَنْوِيهِ ۗ هذه التعريفات مجمعة من كتاب الطالب وكتاب التدريبات وقاموس التعريفات (glossary) في <mark>نهاية كتاب التدريبات.</mark>



Study these	يفات definitions	ادرس هذه التعر
aquarium	you can see beautiful fish there	متحف الأحياء المائية
bank	you can borrow and save money there	بنك
botanical gardens	you can see trees and other interesting pla	ants there
botanicai gardens	×	حدائق نباتية
library	you can borrow and read books there	مكتبة
sports centre	you can play volleyball, tennis and other s	ports there
sports centre		مرکز ریاضی
lake	a large area of water with land around it	بحيرة
monument	something that people build to remembe	r
monument	an important person or event	أثر (تاریخی)
peaceful	calm and quiet	مسالم/هادي
traffic	cars, lorries and motorbikes that use a road	حركة المرور d
especially	more than usual	خصوصًا - خاصة

	ocations			متلازمات لفظية
things موم بعمل أشياء the same things	go	swimming shopping	يذهب للسباحة بذهب للتسوق	
do	يقوم بعمل نفس الأشياء		directions	يعطى اتجاهات
	homework يقوم بعمل الواجب المنزلي	give	advice	كصني

Listening and Reading





on Lesson 1 SB page 3

Mona: Hello, Dalia. I'm at the library. Where are you?

Dalia: Hi, Mona. I'm next to the station. How do I get to the library?

Mona: It's easy. From the station, go straight on (1).

Dalia: How far(2)?

Mona: For about 20 metres.

Dalia: OK. Do I go past⁽³⁾ the sports centre⁽⁴⁾?

Mona: Yes, but then turn left.

Dalia : OK.

Mona: Walk past the botanical gardens (5).

Dalia: I'm walking past them now.

Mona: Great! After the botanical gardens, turn right

Dalia: Turn right after the botanical gardens, OK.

Mona: Then take the second road on the right. Can you see a restaurant?

Dalia: I think I can see it. It's on the corner (6).

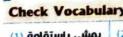
Mona: Walk past the restaurant. The library is between the restaurant

and the museum, opposite the bank.

Dalia: Thanks, Mona. See you soon!

Check Vocabulary

حداثق نباتية (5) مركز رياضي (4) يمشي مارًا بـ (3) كم المسافة / البعد (2) يمشي باستقامة (1)



on Lesson 2 SB page 5

Nader: My name's Nader. I live in Alexandria with my mum, my dad and my two brothers. Alexandria is a very historical⁽¹⁾ city, with lots of famous buildings, ruins⁽²⁾ and monuments⁽³⁾, but it's a modern city too, and there are lots of things to do here.

At the weekend, I like to spend time with my family. On Friday afternoons, we usually go to the park, but sometimes we go to a museum or to the aquarium. I love watching the fish!

On Saturdays, I visit my grandparents. They live in Alexandria, too. I enjoy playing chess with my granddad. He's very good at it, but sometimes I win!

Judy: My name's Judy and I live in Aswan. It's a busy city⁽⁴⁾, with about one and a half million people, and there's always a lot to do at the weekend.

On Friday mornings, I sometimes go shopping. Aswan is a great place for this! There are lots of interesting shops and I love going to the famous market. I also like to go to the botanical gardens or the nature reserve⁽⁵⁾.

On Saturdays, I do my homework and in the afternoon, I go to the sports centre for my squash lesson⁽⁶⁾. It's my favourite sport.

Check Vocabulary

درس في رياضة الاسكواش (6) محمية طبيعية (5) مدينة مزدحمة (4) أثار (3) بقايا/اطلال (2) تاريخي (1)



on Lesson 2 SB page 4

I am Sherif and I live in Ismailia, which is between Port Said and Suez. The Suez Canal⁽¹⁾ runs through⁽²⁾ the city before it reaches⁽³⁾ the sea.



Check Vocabulary

تصل (3) تمر / تتدفق خلال (2) قناة السويس (1)

Ismailia is beautiful. There are attractive (4) buildings, interesting monuments (5) and lots of gardens. Around 350,000 people live here, but since traffic⁽⁶⁾ is slow, there isn't much pollution⁽⁷⁾.

Ismailia is peaceful⁽⁸⁾, but it isn't boring!⁽⁹⁾ There are lots of things to do here, especially (10) at the weekends. On Friday afternoons, I often go to Lake Timsah, which is near the city, with my family. It's a beautiful lake with beaches around it.

On Saturday mornings, I have tennis lessons at the sports centre at 9 am. Sometimes I go swimming in the afternoon with my friend, Sayed.

There are some interesting museums in Ismailia! My favourite is the Natural Science Museum⁽¹¹⁾ because I'm interested in animals. It's a good place to go at the weekend.









Check Vocabulary

جذاب (4)	أثار (5)	دركة المرور (6)	تلوث (7)
هادئ / مسالم (8)	(9) Jaa	خصوصًا - خاصة (10)	متحف العلوم الطبيعية (11)

on Lesson 2 WB page 73

I live in a small village in the south of Egypt. At the weekend, I usually do the same things. On Saturdays, I get up at 7 am, then I always do my homework after breakfast. At lunchtime, I visit my cousins. We like to eat together. Then, in the afternoon, I often play games with my cousins. What do you do?

General Notes on Reading & Listening

1 since

تستخدم بمعنى (منذ) ويأتي بعدها بداية المدة

ex.: - We've lived here since 2007

تستخدم بمعنى (منذ) ويأتي بعدها جملة في زمن الماضي

ex .: - I haven't phoned Leen since she left Cairo.

تستخدم بمعنى (لأن) ويأتي بعدها جملة كاملة

ex.: - Since traffic is slow, there isn't much pollution.

2 around - round

* around (adv), (prep)

تستخدم للتقريب بمعنى (حوالي)

ex.: - 53 Around 350,000 people live in Ismailia.

٢. تستخدم كظرف أو حرف حر لتحديد المكان أو الاتجاه بمعنى (حول)

- The moon goes round / around the Earth.

* round (adj)

دائري (الشكل)

ex.: - The sun is round.

3 Interesting - interested - interest

* interesting (adj)

شيق - رائع

ex.: - SB There are attractive buildings, interesting monuments and a lot of gardens in Ismailia.

* interested (adj) in + (inf. + ing) / noun اسم

ممتم

ex.: - I'm interested in reading short stories.

- He is interested in science.

* interest (v), (n)

يثير اهتمام / اهتمام

ex.: - Science interests me a lot. (افعا

(Jco)

- My interests are music and painting. (اسم)

(pwl)

عِستَخْدَمُ هَذَانَ التَّعبِيرانَ بَمَعنَى يَتَسُوقَ go shopping = do the shopping فيستَخْدَمُ هَذَانَ التَّعبِيرانَ بَمَعنَى يَتَسُوقَ عند: - I always go shopping / do the shopping on Friday.

5 reach - arrive - get

* reach

يصل إلى (مكان) ولا يأتي بعدها حرف جر

ex.: - 533 The Suez Canal runs through the city before it reaches the sea.

* arrive

يصل (بدون مفعول)

ex.: - She arrived late yesterday.

* arrive at

يصل إلى مكان صغير (قرية -مدينة صغيرة - مدرسة - الخ)

ex.: - He arrived at school on time.

* arrive in (مدينة ڪبير (مدينة ڪبيرة او دولة) ex.: - They arrived in Alexandria to spend the summer holiday.

* **get to** پطل إلى مكان ما (بطعوبة) ex.:- He gets to his work late every day.

6 peace / peaceful

* peace (n) # war (اسم لا يُعد) # حرب (اسم يعد) # حرب (اسم يعد) # عدد.: - All people don't like wars. They'd like to live in peace.

* peaceful (adj) مسلم - ينعم بالسلام - هادىء • اينعم بالسلام - salia is a peaceful place to to live in. (ينعم بالسلام)

- Elham is a peaceful woman. She doesn't make troubles (هادئ).

تعبیرات وحروف جر هامة Prepositions & ecopositions تعبیرات وحروف جر هامة

find some facts about

يكتشف بعض الحقائق عن

يتخذ الطريق الثاني take the second road

on the lake على شاطئ البحيرة

لمسافة حوالي عشرون مترًا for about 20 metres

run through يجرى خلال - يمر عبر

There are a lot of things to do.

يوجد الكثير لتفعله.

with beaches around it يوجد شواطئ حولها have tennis lessons يأخذ دروس في التنس look like

It is a good place to... الله مكان جيد لـ ... أعكر من المعتاد more than usual أكثر من المعتاد find places on the map يأتي للمنزل بواسطة ... come home by

Exercise on Vocabulary

• Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

Key Vocabulary

- 1. Luxor has a lot of interesting One of them is Karnak Temple.
 - a. moments
- b. monuments
- c. dictionaries
- d. corners
- 2. Ahmed is a student. This means he is calm and quiet.
 - a. peaceful
- b. careless
- c. helpful
- d. noisy

	3. You can see a lot of		ne	
	a. museum		c. library	d. aquarium
	4. If you want to see to gardens.			ı can go to
	a. botanical			d. balanced
	5. My uncle is very go		at handball.	
	a. hardly	b. just	c. especially	d. only
	SB and WB Exercises		الطالب والتدريبات	تدریبات من کتاب
	6. WB There was a lot was late for work.	of on the ro	ads this morning,	so Mr Ahmed
	a. care	b. peace	c. traffic	d. juice
	7. WB This machine do	oes many things. I	t is very	
	a. peaceful	b. useful	c. careful	d. helpless
	8. SB My city has lots			
	a. interested	b. silly	c. interesting	d. ugly
0	El-Moasser Exercises		שושנ	تدريبات كتاب الم
	9. I can two boo	oks from the Public		
	a. lend	b. give	c. borrow	d. leave
	10. We have four	: north, south, east		
	a. secrets		b. seasons	
	c. directions		d. dictionaries	Musaum
	11. I'm interested in ani	mals, so I love goin	c. Science	d. History
	a. Geography	b. Maths		G. History
0	Language Notes, Exp	ressions & Prepos	itions	
	12. Lake Timsah is a be		beaches around it.	d. to
	a. with	D. G.	c. from	u. to
	13. Rahma has read a. round	b. around	s. c. rounded	d. bound
	14. Judy always goes	in the pool.		
	a. swim	b. to swim	c. swam	d. swimming
	15. The Nile thro	ugh the city of Bar	nha.	d. swims
	a. walks	b. flies	c. runs	a' 2MIII2
	16. Adam to his v	work late yesterday b. got	y. c. reached	d. found

LINO

Vocabulary Study:

Synonym	and Anto	nyms	بترادفات ومتضادات
المرادف Synonym الكلمة		Antonym/opposite	
attractive	جذاب / جميل	beautiful	unattractive / ugly
			بیر جذاب / قبیح
modern	حدیث / عصری	new / up - to - date	ديم / عتيق old / ancient
interesting	رائع / شيق	lovely / exciting	boring Ja
peaceful	مُسالم - هادي	calm / quiet	رزعج / ملئ بالضوضاء
famous	مشهور	well known	ىير معروف unknown
borrow	يستعير / يستلف	take	سلف - يقرض lend

Prefixes & Suffixes	3	اهية	مقاطع بادئة ونا
Prefix / Suffix	الوظيفة Function	Exam	pies قام
– ful	تكون (صفة) من الاسم أو الفعل	careful helpful peaceful useful	حذر - حریص مفید - مساعد مسالم - ممادئ مفید - نافع
– ion	تڪون اسم من فعل	pollution direction	تلوث اتجاه
– ive	تكون صفة من فعل	attractive	بنبات
un –	تكون عكس (ال <mark>صفة)</mark>	unnatural unusual	غیر طبیعی غیر عادی

Exercise on Vocabulary Study

• Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- 1. The word "peaceful" can be replaced by
 - a. ugly and dirty
 - c. quiet and dirty

- b. calm and quiet
- 2. There are attractive buildings, interesting monuments and lots of
 - gardens. The word "attractive" means
 - b. dirty
- c. beautiful
- d. ugly

d. im -

3. The word "	" can be the oppos	ite of "boring".	
a. near	b. interested	c. excited	d. interesting
You can make a	in adjective from the	verb "use" by ad	lding
a al	b ful	c. – le	d. – tion
5. We can form th	e word "peaceful" fror	n the noun	
a. pace	b. peace	c. pack	d. pass
6. To give the opp	osite of the word "na	tural" we add th	

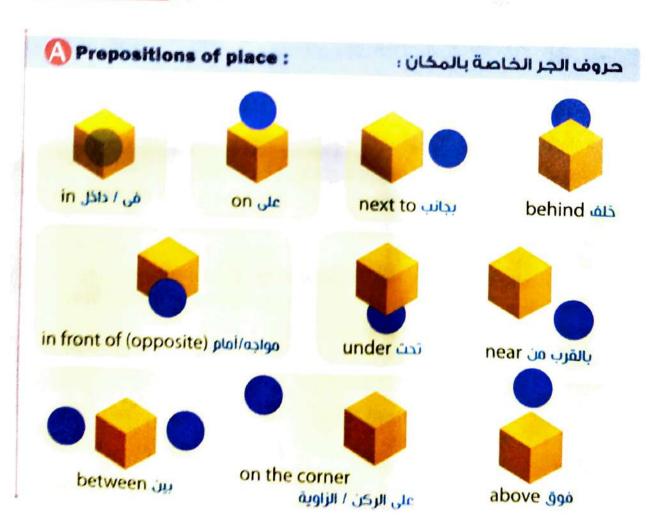
c. ir -

III Language

b. un -

تفڪر Remember

a. dis -



Phrases to show directions

عبارات تبين الاتجاهات

turn right turn left tilau aşızı

يتخذ الطريق الأول / الثاني road he first / second /

on the right على اليمين on the left على اليسار على الناصية على الناصية

From the sports centre, go straight on for about 20 metres.

- Go past the botanical gardens and the aquarium and then turn left.

Prepositions of time :

حروف الجر الخاصة بالوقت:

at - on - in

· Specific time

قبل وقت محدد

ex. - The first lesson begins at 8 o'clock.

Names of mealtimes

قبل أسماء الوجبات

ex. - I'll meet you at breakfast / lunch / dinner.

· Before holidays

قبل الإجازات الرسمية / الأعياد

at Christmas - at Thanksgiving

ex. - At Christmas, we decorate our tree with silver bells.

· To talk about a person's age as a point in time

عند التحدث عن عمر شخص كنقطة زمنية

ex. - Hana left university at 22.

- At the age of seven, Leen learned to swim.

With these phrases
 at the moment

هع هذه العبارات

في هذه اللحظة at dawn في الفجر في الفجر

at night لبلاً في منتصف الليل at midnight

فى فترة الظهيرة فى عطلة نهاية الأسبوع at the weekend

at midday في منتصف النهار

o at

· With parts of the day

مع أجراء البوو

in the morning - in the afternoon - in the evening

ex.- In the morning, Lalways run for 30 minutes.

- ه محول السنة والشعور والسنوات . With seasons, months and years
 - spring summer winter autumn
- January March September
- 2012 1989 2000 2019

· Before phrases identifying centuries and historical periods

قبل عبارات تشير إلى القرون والفترات التاريخية

- in the 19th century

مي القرن الناسج عشر

- in the 1960s

في فترة الستبنات

For a period of time before something happens or is completed

لمترة زمنية قبل وقوع الحدث أو أكتماله.

in ten minutes

في خلال عشر دفائق

in two days

في خلال يومين

Before a specific day and dates

قبل يوم معين والتواريخ

ex. - I'll see you on Tuesday.

The final exam is on June 29th

· With special days or occasions

مع أيام ومناسبات خاصة

ex. - I'll get many presents on my birthday.

· With these phrases

مع هذه العبارات

مَى أَجَازَة on holiday

في العمل / الخدمة on duty

في الوقت المحدد on time

في يوم دافيء on a warm day

می ہوم ح**یش مشمس on** a sunny summer day

Stop here! on Language (Answered & Explained)

في هذا الجزء نقدم للطالب تدريب **على القاعدة اللغوية م**جاب عنه ومصحوب بشرج أسباب اختيار اللحابة الصحيحة

• Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The shopping centre is a. straight b. corner

the train station.

c. opposite

d. next

3 The theatre I	s the ac	juarium and the m	useum.
	b. next	c. on	d. in
1. I get up	nine oʻcloci b. at	every day. c. on	d. from
4. Leften play o	ames with my	cousins the	afternoon.
a at	b. on	c. In	d. from
5. Saturd	ays, I like to st	ay at home.	
a. On	b. At	c. From	d. Into
production of the last			

No.	الإجابة والتوضيح Answer + Explanation		
1	C	لمعنى المطلوب يتفق مع الإجابة	
2	a	وجد بالجملة ثلاث أماكن لذا الإجابة تتفق مع الجملة (مكان بين مكانين)	
3	ь	يبق الساعة / الوقت المحدد بحرف الجر (at)	
4	c	عتبر (the afternoon) من أجزاء اليوم لذا يسبقها حرف الجر (in)	
5	a	بيق أيام الأسبوع بحرف الجر (on)	

Exercises on Language

1. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

	. Choose the correct answer	from a, b, c or d:	
	SB & WB Exercises	لتدريات	تدريبات من كتاب الطالب وا
0	1. Wa The museum is	c. next Saturday morning C. at Oy cousins. C. At the aquarium and the c. between	hospital. d. between gs. d. in
	5. She usually gets up	C up right of the picture	تدریبات کتاب المعاصر d. at d. of etres.
24			d. at

8. I did the	crossword	five minutes.	
a. on	b. in	c. at	d. over
	to visit Luxor	winter.	
a. of	b. at	c. in	d. on
. Complete t	he sentences w	ith the correct forr	m of the word(s) in brackets:
SB & WB Exe	rcises	,	تدريبات من كتاب الطالب والتدريبات
1. SB Fady	goes shopping	(on) the afte	ernoon.
2. SB Write	what you do	(in) the weeke	nd.
3. WB The li	brary is(c	opposite) to the ba	ink.
		I get up at 7 am.	
El-Moasser	Exercises		تدريبات كتاب المعاصر
5. They trav	el to Dahab	(at) holidav.	
	nere (in) t		
		(opposite) of the	
8. Farmers u	isually start wor	rking (in) da	wn.
9. Clothes w	ere very differe	nt (at) the 1	8 th century.
10. The bus a	rrives (or	ı) ten minutes.	
	Ski	lls Corn	er oO
ی درس علی حده.	لورقة الامتحانية لكر	- الكتابة - التحدث) في ال	كيفية التعامل مع معارات (القراءة
			المزيد من الشرح والتدر والتدر
		(Master Your Te	rm) فی ملحق Part 2
• Reading	Corner		
		ulis in Parding or	قم بقراءة An lesson 2 SB page 4
.,,-,			قم بقراءه 4 page على الخابة بعض أسئلة قطعة الفهم ح
Ancwartha			على إخابة بعض استنه مصعه انتفسر د
	following ques		
- Giving th	يية e main idea	إعطاء الفكرة الرئيس	
	uitable title for t		
	a is a peaceful o		
2. Why isn't	g information t Ismailia a borir	استحراج المعلومات	
	Cistilalia a DOIII	ig place r	
3. If you are	e interested in a	nimals, where can	you go in Ismailia ?
			E

معارة الكتابة

Writing Corner

- حمل تساعدك على كتابة فقرة إنشائية / رسالة بريد إلكتروني. A. Read the sentences
 - Ismailia is between Port Sald and Suez. ا. تقع مدينة الاسماعيلية بين مدينتي بورسعيد والسويس
 - The Suez Canal runs through the city before it reaches the sea. ع. تتدفق قناة السويس خلال المدينة قبل أن تصل إلى البحر. ٣. يوجد يعما مبان جذاية.
 - There are attractive buildings.
 - There are interesting monuments and lots of gardens. ع. يوجد بهما أثار رائعة وكثير من الحدائق
 - For the second of the ه. غالبًا ما أذهب إلى بحيرة التمساح مع عائلتي
 - Lake Timsah is beautiful with beaches around it. ٦. بحيرة التمساح بحيرة جميلة ويوجد شواطئ حولها

B. Building sentences

• Read and complete:

opposite - corner - monuments - interested - between

- There are many attractive in Egypt.
- 2. The museum is on the, opposite the library.
- 3. The shopping centre is _____ the station.
- 4. She is in reading and watching films.

بعر دراسة القواعد والمفردات اللغوية الخاصة بالدرسين قم بالتدريب على بناء الجملة

C. Writing a fact file

كتابة ملف حقائق

للمزيد من الشرح (مهارات الكتابة) يمكنك الرجوع إلى ملحق (Master Your Term)

Model fact file about Ismailia

Fact file

Ismailia

Where:

What it looks like:

How many people:

Places to visit in city:

sports:

Places to visit near city:

- 1. between Port Said and Suez
- 2. attractive buildings
- 3. interesting monuments
- 4. around 350.000 people
- 5. Natural Science Museum
- 6. tennis, swimming
- 7. Lake Timsah



D. Practise by yourself

تدرب على كتابة ملف حقائق

- 100k at the fact file from exercise (c). Write a paragraph of about 110 words on "Ismailia":

3. Speaking Corner

إعطاء الاتجاهات :

- A. Giving directions:
 - 1. Go straight on this road. The shopping centre is opposite the station.
 - ا. سر باستقامة على هذا الطريق ستجد مركز تسوق في مقابل المحطة.
 - 2. The museum is between the hospital and the bank. يوجد المتحف بين المستشفى والبنك.
 - ٣. من السوق اتجه يسار وسر باستقامة. . 3. From the market, turn left and go straight on.
 - 4. Take the second road on the left. The hospital is on the right.
 - ٤. خذ الطريق الثاني على جهة اليسار. توجد المستشفى على جهة اليمين.

B. Talking about your city or village

التحدث عن مدينتك أو قربتك :

Questions



Answers



- 2. Where is Ismailia? ٢. أين مدينة الإسماعيلية ؟
- 3. What does it look like? ٣. كيف تبدو مدينة الإسماعيلية ؟
- 4. How many people live in Ismailia? كم يبلغ عدد السكان الذين يعيشون في مدينة الإسماعيلية ؟
- 5. What places can you visit near your city? ٥. ما الأماكن التي يمكنك زيارتها بالقرب من مدينتك ؟
- 6. What sports can you do in your city? ٦. ما الألعاب الرياضية التي يمكنك ممارستها في مدينتك ؟

- . أعيش في مدينة الإسماعيلية . l live in Ismailia. ا. أين تعيش ؟ ? 1. Where do you live
 - It is between Port Said and Suez.
 - إنها تقع بين مدينتي بورسعيد والسويس.
 - It has attractive buildings, interesting monuments and lots of gardens.
 - لديها مبان جذابة وأثار رائعة وكثير من الحدائق.
 - Around 350.000 people live there.
 - يبلغ عدد السكان الذين يعيش**ون مئاك حوالي** ثلاثمائة وخمسون ألف نسمة.
 - I can visit Lake Timsah, which is near the city and the Natural Science Museum.
 - بمكنني زيارة بحيرة التمساح ا**لتي هي بالقرب من** المدينة ومتحف العلوم الطبيعية.
 - I can have tennis lessons at the sports centre and I can also go swimming.
 - يمكنني أخذ دروس تنس بالمر**كرُ الرياض**ي والذهاب للسناحة.

General Exercises



on LESSONS 1 & 2

• Create

-1				
-	Complete t	he following dialog	ue:	
۲	Hamma is as	king Ali about the spo	orts centre.	
	Hamza is asi	lo! Is the sports centre	near from here?	
	Hamza : Hell	o!(1)	It's a five-minute V	valk.
			.11341140 111111200	
	Hamza : (2)	?		a la
	Ali : Yes,	walk along this road.	It's opposite the bai	nk.
8	(3)	?		
	Hamza: I pla	y tennis. What about y	you ?	
	Ali : (4)			
		mming is a nice sport.	When do you go the	ere ?
9				
		it! Next Monday, I will b	oe at the club, so I ca	n meet you there.
		will be great!		
2	Choose the	correct answer from	a, b, c or d:	
•	1. We had a ni	ce meal at thisla	ast week.	
	a. factory	b. bank	c. restaurant	d. station
•	2. My father of	ften goes to his village	because it is a	place
	a. peaceful	b. boring	c. noisy	d had
•	3. WB "	" is a large area of wate	er with land around	u. Dau
	a. Sea	b. River	c. Lake	
•	4. Manar is into	erested watching	a En aliah	d. Pond
	a. at	b. in		
0	5. SB The café	is on the corner	c. of	d. on
	a. for	is on the cornerb. of	the botanical garde	en.
•	6. SB There ar	e lots of things	c. down	d. up
	a. slowly	e lots of things to do he	ere, at the wee	ekend
		b. quickly	c. suddenly	d. especially
Service .				- capeciany

7. WB You can see t	rees and other int	eresting plants a	ta/an	
a. airport	b. aquarium	c. botanical g	garden d. library	
8. The train leaves			,	
a. in	b. at	c. on	d. of	
9. My birthday is	17 th June.			
a. on	b. at	c. from	d. in	
10. WB The train leav	ves five min	utes.		
a. on	b. up	c. in	d. for	
Complete the tex	ct with words fro	m the list:		
	nes - kitchens - pea		- Lake	
I like Ismailia. It i do there, especially I often go to (3) a beautiful lake wit	y at the (2)Timsa	On Frid	re lots of things to lay afternoons, y. It's	
			vord(s) in brackets :	
1. WB I live(
			ernoon on Saturdays.	
3. I have tennis less	in) 9 ar	m	emoon on saturdays.	
4. The shopping centre is (opposite) to the station.				
		osite) to the stat	ion.	
Choose the corre				
 WB I live in/on a small village in the South of Egypt. SB Nagwa usually visits her grandparents in/at the weekend. WB You can't hear any traffic here. It is very noisy / peaceful. 				
Write a paragraph	of about 110 wo	rds on:	مجاب عنه في نهاية الكتاب	
"Ismailia is an interesting city"				

SB pages 6:8 WB pages 74 & 75



Vocabulary

Key Vocabulary

exhibition (n)	معرض - عرض	comfortable (adj)	مريح
space (n)	فضاء	passengers (n)	مسافرین
ferry (n)	معدية (النهر) - عُبارة	tram (n)	الترام (وسيلة مواصلات)
valley (n)	وادى	below (adv), (prep)	

■ Key Vocabulary هي المفردات الأكثر أهمية المطلوب من الطالب إتقانها.



■ Master your Vocabulary يقضى على جميع مشاكل حفظ المفردات (ملحق Master).

■ Glossary لحصيلة أكبر (للمزيد) من المفردات اللغوية انظر نهاية الكتاب.

F-G22011 (2)	SB pages 6 & 7 WB page 74
metro (n)	قطار مترو الانفاق
metro map (n)	خريطة المترو
metro station (n)	محطة مترو
platform (n)	رصيف القطار
paintings (n)	روحات / رسومات
objects (n)	أشياء / مقتنيات
travel (led) (v)	رسافر
timetable (n)	چدول مواعید
crosswords (n)	جدول مواعيد

electric (adj) journey (n) stop (n) (محطة (أتوبيس أو قطار) chat (ted) (v), (n) رش - حديث ودى - دردشة (text message (n) engineering and desired to the state of the state			
electric (adj) journey (n) stop (n) (محطة (أتوبيس أو قطار) chat (ted) (v), (n) رش - حديث ودى - دردشة (text message (n) engineering and desired to the state of the state	1	floor (n)	طابق - أرضية
stop (n) (محویت) محطة (أتوبیس أو قطار) (stop (n) (محویت) محطة (أتوبیس أو قطار) (chat (ted) (v), (n) دش - حدیث ودی - دردشة (text message (n) الله نصیة (engineering and state of the stat	6	electric (adj)	کھریی
علة توقف / محطة (أتوبيس أو قطار) stop (n) (بالمجتب أو قطار) (chat (ted) (v), (n) يدش - حديث ودى - دردشة (text message (n) الله نصية والمجتب المجتب ا	j	journey (n)	رحلة (طويلة)
chat (ted) (v), (n) دش - حدیث ودی - دردشة text message (n) الله نصیه	5	ية (أتوبيس أو قطار) (stop (n	
text message (n) قصية	(chat (ted) (v), (n) دردشة - دردشة	ىرىدش - ددىث ودې
enginogrina	t	text message (n)	
	6	engineering works (n)	أعمال هندسية
guard (n)	ć	guard (n)	حيدن محدديد
university (n)	ι	university (n)	دامعة

Lesson (4) SB page 8 WB page 75

transport (n)	"-II Page 70
type (n)	النقل والمواصلات
cross (ed) (v)	نوع
railway (n)	كبحر
energy (n)	جط سجو حدتد
Sydney (n)	طاقة
	مدينة سيدني (استراليا)

2//25	
environment (n)	البيئة
prefer (red) (v)	
rails (n)	يفضل
	قضبان السكة الحديدية
central (adj)	
Bondi (n) (الستراليا) عند الستراليا	رئیسی - مرکزی شلط بیمندی (أشهر شواد
3 G	شاط ، رمندی (اشمر سواد

تصريف الأفعال غير المنتظمة Present والمثارع Past المثارع P.P. التصريف الثالث P.P. المثارع المثارع المدارع الم

get بحيل على got got sit بجلس sat sat catch يلحق - بحيطاد caught find بحد found found

تنویه

هذه التعريفات مجمعة من ختاب الطالب وختاب التدريبات وقاموس التعريفات (glossary) في نهاية ختاب التدريبات.

Study these definitions

ادرس هذه التعريفات

platform	you can catch a train from here	رصيف (القطار)
map	you can use this to follow directions	خريطة
exhibition	you can go here to see paintings, photograp	ohs, objects, etc. عرض - معرض
timetable	you can use this to find when a train or bus	جدول مواعيد leaves
metro	you can use this to travel in a city. Sometime underground	es it travels مترو الانفاق

Colle	ocations			متلازمات لفظية
	the train يستقل القطار		home	يصل للمنزل
take	the second road یاخذ اتجاہ الطریق الثانی	get	back	يعود / يرجع
		follow	directions	يتبع الاتجاهات
	four hours يستغرق اربع ساعات		the rules	يتبع القواعد

II Reading and Listening



on Lesson 3 SB page 6

Khaled: Hi Fawzi. Would you like to come to

the Space Exhibition(1) tomorrow?

My dad is taking me.

Fawzi : Yes, please! What time does it start?

Khaled: It starts at 9.30. We're going by metro(?).

Fawzi : Which train shall we get ?

Khaled: The first metro train leaves (3) at 8.20 and arrives (4) at 8.30.

Fawzi : That's an hour before the exhibition starts!

Khaled: 😕 Perhaps we can leave later.

Fawzi : What time does the exhibition finish?

Khaled: It finishes at 2.00.

Fawzi : OK. Can we get a train in the afternoon

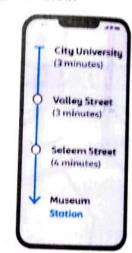
to get back?

Khaled: Yes, one leaves at 1.15 pm and arrives at 1.25.

Fawzi : Great! Let's take that.

Check Vocabulary

يصل (4) يغادر (3) باستخدام مترو الأنفاق (2) معرض الفضاء (1)



Space Exhibition

on Lesson 3 WB page 74

: Good morning. Where does the train to Aswan leave from ? Man

Guard: It leaves from platform(1) four.

: Thanks. What time is the next train? Guard: The next train leaves in five minutes(2).

: Great. What time does it arrive in Aswan?

Guard: The train usually takes six hours, so the next train arrives in

Check Vocabulary

. في غضون/ خَلَالَ خَمْسِ دَمَائِقَ (2) | رَصِيمُ القَطَارِ (1)

on Lesson 4 SB page 8

I love travelling⁽¹⁾ by train because it's interesting to look out of⁽²⁾ the window. In one journey, you can see ferries⁽³⁾ crossing the Nile, green valleys⁽⁴⁾, peaceful villages⁽⁵⁾ and busy cities⁽⁶⁾. Trains are often fast and comfortable⁽⁷⁾, too. Egypt has the oldest railway⁽⁶⁾ in Africa. More than 800 million passengers⁽⁹⁾ travel by train in Egypt every year on 5,000 kilometres of railway! I take the train when I visit my grandparents in Edfu. It's my favourite journey⁽¹⁰⁾.





Riham

Lots of people in Alexandria use the tram⁽¹¹⁾ to travel around the city. It's great way to travel! It's easy to use and it isn't expensive. Trams are electric⁽¹²⁾, so they are better for the environment⁽¹³⁾ than other types of transport⁽¹⁴⁾. Some of the trams in Alexandria are unusual⁽¹⁵⁾: they have two floors⁽¹⁶⁾! I like sitting at the top and watching the streets



Hana

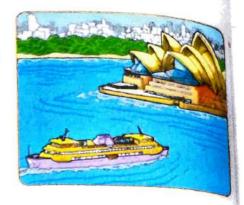
below.

Check Vocabulary

السفر (۱)	ينظر من خلال (2)	معديات / عُبارات (3)	اودية (4)
فری هادئة (٥)	مدن مزدحمة (6)	(7) مريح	خط سكك حديدية (8)
مسافرین (9)	رحلة (طويلة) (10)	ترام (11)	(12) كھريى
البيئة (13)	النقل والمواصلات (14)	غير معتاد (15)	طوابق / أدوار (16)

on Lesson 4 WB page 75

Some people think that Sydney in Australia has the best transport in the world. Why? Because trains, buses and ferries travel to all parts of the city. Comfortable buses go to the nearest beaches such as Bondi⁽¹⁾. If you want to get somewhere quickly, fast trains leave from Central Station (2) to many places,



including the airport is quiet on the water, so ferries are peaceful and they are also easy to use. It is interesting to see the famous buildings (5) from the water, too.

Check Vocabulary

مياني مشهورة (5) مطار (4) يما في ذلك / متضمناً (3) محطة رئيسية (2) شاطئ بوندي (أشهر شواطئ استرائية) (١)





on Lesson 3 SB page 7

Nadia: Which train do we need for Tanta?

Mother: We need the train to Alexandria. Look, it stops at Tanta.

Nadia: Oh, yes. So, the next train is at 11.30.

Mother: That's right.

Nadia : And when does it arrive?

Mother: It arrives at 13:00.

Nadia : Which platform does it leave from ?

Mother: It's the Alexandria train, so it leaves from platform 7.

on Lesson 3 WB page 74

Good morning. This is the 11.30 train to Luxor. It leaves in five minutes(1). The train stops(2) at Giza, Assiut and Qena. It doesn't stop at Al Balyana today because there are engineering works(3). The train arrives in Luxor at 23.15.

Check Vocabulary

يحل (4) أعمال صندسية (3) يتوقف (2) في خلار خسس دخلاق (1)





General Notes on Reading & Listening

11 take

يأخدُ / يستفرق (وقت)

ex.:- He forgot to take his English book.

ex.: - The journey to Port Said takes four hours by train.

2 stop (v) / (n)

يتوقف - محطة (قطار - اتوبيس)

ex.: - Express trains don't stop at all stations.

ex.: - 133 How many stops are there by metro?

3 look forward to + (inf. + ing) / (n)

يتطلع إلى

ex.: - Si I'm looking forward to seeing you later.

ex.: - Sally is looking forward to her weekend.

4 floor / flour

* floor (n)

أرضية - طابق

ex.: - Sara is sweeping the floor.

ex.: - Some buses in Alexandria have two floors.

ex.: - I live on the third floor.

* flour (n)

دقيق

ex .: - Bread and cakes are made of flour.

5 lt's + adj قفه + to + inf. (المصدر)...

ex.:- It's easy to use my new mobile.

6 see

للحظ استخدام الفعل see

ex .: - I saw Hend watering the flowers.

عند استَخَدام (inf. + ing) بعد المفعول به، فنحن نقصد رؤية الحدث في منتصفه ولم نشاهد بدايته.

ex .: - I saw Hend water the flowers.

عند استخدام (المصدر .inf) بعد المفعول فنحن نقصد رؤية الحدث من البداية حتى النهاية.

7

٧. للحظ:

يستخدم الفعل مضاف له ing - بعد الأفعال الأتية :

(love - like - prefer)

ex.: - 53 I love travelling by train.

ولكن إذا سبق تلك الأفعال (would) نستخدم (المصدر .to + inf).

ex.: - SB Would you like to come to the space exhibition?

8 platform / pavement

رميف (محطة قطار)

* platform (n)

ex: - The passengers are waiting for the train at platform 5.

رميف (الشارع)

* pavement = sidewalk (n)

ex: - People should walk on the pavement to avoid accidents.

نهپیرات وحروف جر هامت Prepositions وحروف جر هامت

by metro at the Science Museum في متحف العلوم busy cities يصل إلى المتحف get to the museum How long does the journey take by metro? كم المدة التي تستغرقها الرحلة باستخدام مترو الأنفاق ؟ یغادر فی وقت... leave at good for يلحق بالقطار catch a train ! It's more fun یستقل قطار get a train across water بصعد للطابق الأعلى go upstairs افضل طریقة لـ ... The best way to + inf. ... It's a great way to travel! إنها طريقة رائعة للسفر !

look out of the window باستخدام مترو الأنفاق ينظر من خلال النافذة

مدن مزدحمة

بنجول حول المدينة travel around the city

better for the environment أفضل للبيئة يجلس في الأعلى sit at the top

مفید لـ / حید لـ

إنها أكثر متعة !

عبر المياه

all parts of the city كل أجزاء المدينة

on the water على المياه

What's special about ...?

(ماذا يميز ؟ ما المميز حول ؟

exercise on Vocabulary

• Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

Key vocabulary

- 1. I think travelling by train is very It's my favourite. b. messy

 - c. comfortable

d. hard

2 If you go to the sp	ace today, yo	u'll learn about the s	cience of space.
a. street	b. exhibition	c. room	d. gallery
3. During the train j	ourney, we can see	crossing the	Nile.
a. ferries	b. cities	c. boxes	d. floors
4. must book			
		c. Passengers	
5. Lots of people in A	Alexandria use the	to travel arou	ind the city.
a. plane		c. ground	
SB and WB Exercises		الطالب والتدريبات	تدریبات من کتاب
6. W The is b			
a. lake		c. valley	
7. WB You can use the	to travel in a	city. Sometimes it trav	els underground.
a. plane	b. tram	c. taxi	d. metro
8. WB You can use			
a. pavement	b. diary	c. timetable	d. platform
El-Moasser Exercises	į.	هاصر	تدريبات كتاب الم
9. Trains, buses and fe	rries are types of		
a. boats	b. plants	c. transport	d. technology
10. A train uses	to move.		
a. rails	b. rolls	c. roles	d. rules
11. cities are alw	ays polluted.		
a. Free	b. Busy	c. Empty	d. Peaceful
Language Notes, Exp	ressions & Prepos	itions	
12. Dina is hurrying to			
a. hold	b. bring	c. catch	d. reach
13. Milk is good	building strong bo	dies.	
a. at	b. to	c. by	d. for
14. Which is your	flat on ?		
a. platform	b. flour	c. floor	d. flower
15. It's important	regularly.		
194 E3500-44 HOOM	b. to exercise	c. exercising	d. exercises
16. How can we get	the Egyptian M	useum, Baleegh?	
a. to	b. off	c. from	d. at

Vocabulary Study:

مترادفات ومتضادات مترادفات المستخادات Synonyms and Antonyms			
الكلمة Word	المرادف Synonym	Antonym/Op	المضاد posite)
leave يغادر	go – move	arrive	يصل
يوضح - يبين show	display – exhibit	hide – cover	يخبئ - يغطي
يبدأ start	begin	end – finish	ینمی - پنتمی
أسفل below	under – down	above	غوق
يفضل prefer	like better	hate	يكره
مالوف اعادی usual	normal – familiar	unusual	فير مألوف
nearest الأقرب	closest	farthest	لأبعد
مریح comfortable	relaxing	uncomfortable	فير مريح
easy to use سهل الاستخدام	user friendly	difficult to use	ععب الاستخدام
غیر ملوث unpolluting	good for the environment	polluting	ىلوث
upstairs الدور العلوى	the higher floor	downstairs	دور السفلي

Prefixes & Suffixes		مقاطع بادئة وناهية
Prefix / Suffix	الوظيفة Function	أمثلة Examples
– ing	ت ڪون (اسم - صفة)	engineering لهندسة paintings وحات / رسومات polluting polluting interesting
- able	تكون (صفة)	comfortable کریح

Exercise on Vocabulary Study

• Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- 1. The antonym of the word "leave" is to
 - a. arrive
- b. drive
- c. ride

d. dry

- 2. The words "peaceful" and "noisy" are
 - a. opposites
- b. equals
- c. synonyms
- d. prefixes
- 3. When something isn't good for the environment, then it is
 - a. lazy

- b. active
- c. affective
- d. polluting
- 4. The antonym of the word "nearest" is
 - a. fastest
- b. biggest
- c. farthest
- d. Fighest
- 5. We can form an adjective when we add "....." to the word "interest".
 - a. able
- b. ing
- c. est
- d. less

- 6. The word "engineering" is a / an
 - a. preposition
- b. verb
- c. noun
- d. adverb

Language

تذڪر (Remember

من المضارع البسيط The Present Simple Tense

Formation التكوين



- The maps show how to travel by metro.

The train usually takes twelve hours from Cairo to Aswan.

الحظ أن:

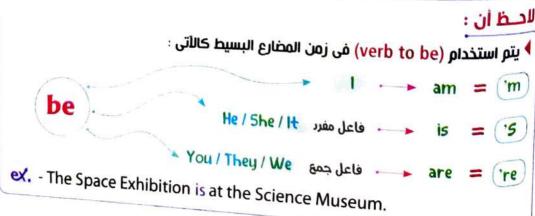
لاحــظ أن :

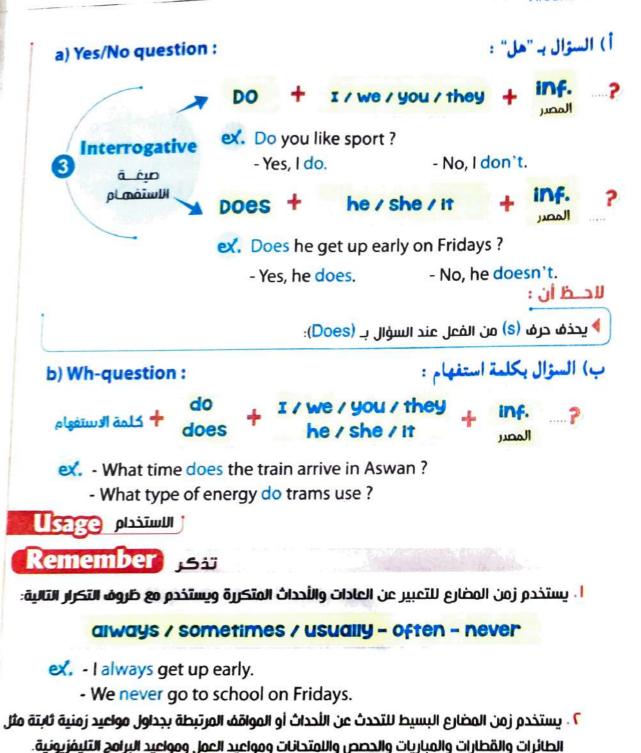
- ر يضاف للفعل (s) مع الفاعل المفرد الغائب (He / She / It).
- ex. The library opens at 8.30 in the morning. بيضاف للفعل (es) مع الفاعل المفرد الغائب (He / She / It) إذا كان منتميًا براد كان منتميًا : (ss , ch , sh , o , x) ب
- خ. The film finishes at 10.30.
 ب يضاف للفعل (ies) مع الفاعل المفرد الغائب (He / She / It) إذا كان منتهيًا بـ (y)
 مسبوقة بحرف ساكن ويحذف حرف (y) :
- ex. The eagle flies very high in the sky.



ex. - She doesn't read newspapers on Friday.

عند النفى (s) يحذف من الفعل عند النفى (s) يحذف من الفعل عند النفى (s) عند النفى (s) عند النفى (s) عند النفى (s) عند (s) عند (Me / She / it / نستخدم (never) في صيغة النفى مع عدم حذف (s) مع (اسم مفرد / never) في صيغة النفى مع عدم حذف (s) مع (اسم مفرد / He / She / it / قلم منددم (never) . - My father never forgets my birthday.





- My train arrives at 7.15 tomorrow morning.
 - The match starts at 9 pm next Friday.
 - The course ends in October.
 - This lesson doesn't finish until 2.30.
 - My plane leaves at 7.30 in the morning.

الحظ أن:

مناك أفعال شائعة الاستخدام مع المضارع البسيط عندما يستخدم مع الأحداث ذات المواعيد الثابتة، مثل:

close / open / start / end / leave / finish / arrive / take off / land

Stop here: on Language (Answered & Explained)

في هذا الجزء نقدم للطالب تدريب على القاعدة اللغوية مجاب عنه ومصحوب بشرح أسباب اختيار الوابة الصحيحة.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- 1. The Space Exhibition at 9.30 tomorrow. We're going by metro.
 - a. start
- b. starts
- c. started
- d. starting
- 2. What time does the exhibition? It finishes at 10.30 pm.
 - a. finish
- b. finishes
- c. finished
- d. finishing
- 3. The train to Port Said this station at 3.15 pm tomorrow.
 - a. left
- b. leave
- c. leaves
- d. leaving

No.	E	الإجابة والتوضيح Answer + Explanation				
1	b	الجملة تعبر عن برامج محددة ومواعيدها ثابتة لذا تكون الإجابة في زمن المضارع البسيط.				
2	a	يتكون السؤال في المضارع البسيط (? المصدر .inf + فاعل + Q.w + do / does)				
3	C	الجملة تعبر عن جدول مواعيد ثابتة والفاعل مفرد لذا تكون الإجابة في زمن المضارع البسيط.				

EXECCISES on Language

1. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

SB & WB Exercises

لدريبات من كتاب الطالب والتدريبات

- 1. SB What time does the lesson?
 - a. starts
- b. started
- C. start

- d. starting
- 2. SB When this plane arrive in Cairo?
 - a. is
- b. do
- c. does

- d. has
- 3. SB Which metro station they need to go to?

- b. do
- C. is

d. are

- 4. WB The train in Luxor at 23.15.

- a. arrive
- b. arrives
- c. will arrive
- d. is going to arrive

تدريبات كتاب المعاصر El-Moasser Exercises does the journey take by bus? d How far a How often b. How long How many to go to Luxor. What time does the bus leave? 6 1 d will want c wanted b. want a wants misses the bus to work 7 He d never c. hasn't b isn't a doesn't Heba travel in a car or in a taxi? d Are c Does b Is a Do Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets: تدريبات من كتاب الطالب والثدريبات SB and WB Exercises 1. 53 It's an hour before the exhibition (start) (there are) by metro? 2. Start How many stops (Do) a ferry take people across the desert or across water? (take) six hours to reach Aswan 4. WB The train usually تدريبات كتاب المعاصر

El-Moasser Exercises

- (do) the film start? 5 What time
- (doesn't) comes late. 6. Ahmed's uncle
- (does) Ayman and Ashraf want to go? 7 Where
- (be) the best place to visit in Aswan? 8 What
- (travelling) by train to Aswan. 9. We usually

Corner



كيفية التعامل مع معارات (القراءة - الك**تابة - التحدث) في الورقة الامتحانية لكل درس على حده.**

(القراءة - الكتابة - التحديث) للمريد من الشرح والتدريبات على مهارات (القراءة - الكتابة - التحدث)



Part 2 في ملحق (Master Your Term)

Reading Corner

قم بقراءة Reading on lesson 4 SB page 8 من كتاب المعاصر صفحة ۳۷ ثم قم بالتدرب على لحابة بعص أستلة قطعة الفهم طبقا نمواصفات الورقة الامتحانية

A. Answer the following questions:

- Critical thinking skill مهارة التفكير النفدى
- 1. Do you think that the train is the main means of transport in Egypt? Why / Why not ?
 - Yes, I think so. Because it's not expensive and fast.

P Choose the	correct answer f	rom a, b, c or d : استخراد المما	
2. You can see	b. metros	the Nile. c. ferries فهم ما پشیر إلیه الضم	d. buses
3. The pronou a. Hana	n (I) in the first p b. Riham	aragraph refers to c. Khalid	d, Mai
2. Writing C	reaction as	شالية / رسالة بريد الكتر	معارة الكتابة جمل تساعدك على كتابة فقرة إنيا
1. I love travel window. 2. Trains are for 3. Egypt has the wear on 5.00	lling by train beca خلال النافذة. ast and comforta he oldest railway i 800 million passe 00 kilometres of	ي التسلع النظر من م ble. in Africa. في أفريقيا engers travel by tr railways.	to look out of the ا. أحب السفر باستخدام القطار لأز ٢. القطارات سريعة ومريحة. ٣. مصر لديها أقدم خط سكة حديد rain in Egypt every ٤. يسافر أكثر من ٨٠٠ مليون م خطوط السكك الحديدية.
B. Building sent	tences		
⊙ Read and com	iplete :	· · · · · ·	
	sports centre -	library - does - do	o - tram
2. How often 3. You can bor	ole in Alexandria you go to the row books from the le do sports at the ourself	he library ? he	نويه بعد دراسة القواعد والمفردات اللغوية الخاصة بالدرسين قم بالتدريب على بناء الجملة

- Write a paragraph of about 110 words on :

"Types of transport in your city"

3. Speaking Corner

معارة التحدث

Discussing timetables and public transport :

منامَشة الجداول الزمنية ووسائل المواصلات العامة :

* Ali: Which way do you like to travel? Why?

- أي وسيلة مواصلات تفضل / تحب في السفر ؟ ولماذا ؟

Ahmed:

I like the train because it's comfortable and it isn't expensive.

أحمد : أحب القطار لأنه مريح ورخيص الثمن.

Hala:

I prefer the tram. It's more fun!

هالة : أفضل الترام. إنه أكثر متعة!

Questions



Answers



- 1. What time does the train to Alexandria leave?
 - ا. ما الوقت الذي يغادر فيه القطار إلى مدينة الإسكندرية ؟
- 2. Which platform does it leave from ? ٢. أي رصيف يغادر منه القطار ؟
- 3. How long does the journey take to Alexandria?
 - كم المدة التى تستغرقها الرحلة لمدينة الإسكندرية؟
- 4. How many passengers travel by train every year in Egypt ?
- كم راكب يسافر بالقطار كل عام في مصر ؟
- 5. What type of energy do trams use ? ٥. ما نوع الطاقة التي تستخدمها قطارات الترام ؟
- 6. What is special about some of the trams in Alexandria ? ٦. ماذا يميز بعض قطارات الترام فى مدينة الإسكندرية ؟

- At 11.30.
 - في الحادية عشر والنصف.
- From platform 7.
- من رصيف رقم ٧.
- About 3 hours.
- حوالي ثلاث ساعات.
- More than 800 Million passengers.
 - أكثر من ۸۰۰ مليون راكب.
- -They use electricity.
 - يستخدمون الكهرباء.
- They have two floors.
 - قطارات الترام لها طابقين.

A Company of the Comp	
dia dia	loque

Av. Henry	dialogue :
	going to the Space Exhibition.
State of	we go to the Space Exhibition ?
8	
inan:	······································
- We c	an go tomorrow morning.

Where will we meet ?

: (3) Adham: OK. I will wait in front of the Science Museum.

: (4) ?

Adham: No. I don't think Omar will come with us.

: Why ? Ali

Adham: (5)

: He is ill! We could visit him after visiting the exhibition. Ali

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

o an	My journey	to	Port	Said	***********	about	four	hours.
4		-						

- - d. sends b. gives a. takes c. gets
- 2. What about going to the Space at the Science Museum tomorrow?
 - a. Selection b. Prohibition c. Exception d. Exhibition
- 3. "....." gives the opposite meaning of "hide".
- b. See a. Leave c. Show d. Use
- 4. I like travelling on this train because it is
 - b. comfortable c. slow a. expensive d. uncomfortable
- 5. After leaving his secondary school, my brother went to the a. aquarium
 - b. museum c. university d. station
- 6. 53 The shows how to travel by metro.
 - a. exhibition b. map
 - c. stop
- d. space

General Exercises



on LESSONS 3 & 4

• Understand • Apply

• Create

	n. a.			
	Complete the	following dial	ogue :	
	Adham sugge:	sts going to the	Space Exhibition.	
	Adham: Shall v	ve go to the Spa	ce Exhibition ?	
	Ali : (1)	*****************		
	Adham: (2)	?		
	Ali : We can	n go tomorrow m	norning.	
	Adham: Where	will we meet ?		
	Ali : (3)			
	Adham: OK. I w	ill wait in front o	f the Science Muse	um.
	Ali : (4)	?		
	Adham: No. I do	on't think Omar v	vill come with us.	
	Ali : Why?			
	Adham: (5)			
-	Ali : He is ill	! We could visit h	nim after visiting th	e exhibition.
2	Choose the corr			
Ţ				
Ī	a takes	Port Saida	bout four hours.	
-	a. takes		c. gets	d. sends
1			at the Scien	
•	a. Selection	b. Prohibition	c. Exception	d. Exhibition
	3. "" gives th	abbosite meal	ning of "hide".	
•		D. Seier		d. Use
	4. I like travelling of a. expensive	h same	use it is	- OSC
•	5. After leaving his	b. comfortable	c. slow	d umas conta
	a. aquarium	secondary scho	ol, my brother was	d. uncomfortab
•	6. 1 The sh	D. museum	c. slow ol, my brother wer c. university	nt to the
	d. exhibition	lows how to trav	el by metro	d. station
		b. map	c. stop	
50	1		P	d. space

7. W The o a. boring 8. When	3	g" is "". c. pleasant	d. comfortable				
c. the film		b. the film is st d. does the filr					
a. closed	brary at 3.15. b. will close at Luxor Airpo b. lands	c. is going to coort at 23.05 pm.	lose d. closes				
3 Complete	the text with words	from the list:					
•	environment - with		tric				
Lots of peop (2) other types I like sitting Complete	The tram is one of the most famous types of transport in Alexandria. Lots of people use it to (1) around the city. Trams are (2) so they are better for the (3) than other types of transport. Some of the trams in Alexandria have two floors I like sitting at the (4) and watching the streets below. Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:						
	1. My Arabic lesson (start) at half past nine next Sunday.						
2. Port Said train (reach) in ten minutes.							
	3. SB When does this plane (arrives) in Cairo?						
4. WB My father (not take) the early bus because it is slow.							
Write an email of about (110) words to your friend Hesham who has travelled to Tunisia about new Egyptian cities :							
"Your name is Mazen and your email address is mazen2004@gmail.com.							
	iend's email address i						
	······································						

5 & 6

SB pages 9 & 10 WB pages 76 & 77



Vocabulary

	Ker	Vo	cabi	ulary	
--	-----	----	------	-------	--

(investigant (p)	مجوهرات	indoors (adv)	داکل استرل
jewellery (n)	أواني فخارية - صناعة الفخار		افتراح
, ,	قرن (۱۰۰ سنة)	outdoors (adv)	خارج المنزل
century (n)			

■ Key Vocabulary هي المفردات الأكثر أهمية المطلوب من الطالب إتقانها.



- Master your Vocabulary يقضى على جميع مشاكل حفظ المفردات (ملحق Master).
 - Glossary لحصيلة أكبر (للمزيد) من المفردات اللغوية نهاية الكتاب.

Lesson (5)

SB page 9 WB page 76

respond (ed) (v)	پستجیب / پرد	describe (d) (v)	يصف
disagree (d) (v)	يرفض	opinions (n)	- آزاء
politely (adv)	بطريقة مهذبة	feelings (n)	.ر. <u>.</u> مشاعر
suggest (ed) (v)		final (adj)	
arrange (d) (v)		decision (n)	نھائی
swimming pool (n)		reply (ied) (v)	قرار
		(V)	עַנ

Lesson (6) SB page 10 WB page 77

Fl-Orman C-	- page //		
El-Orman Gardens (wild (adj)			الخديوى (لقب حاكم مصر)
trip (n)	بری	Tanki (au) (anvi	متصل بالإنترنت
review (n)	رحلة (مصيره)	ready (adi)	سعن بالمحر
correctly (adv)	مقال نقدی	invitation (n)	جاهز - مستعد
easily (adv)	بطريقة صديحة	nearby (adj)	دعوة
lovely (adj)	ماكمسن	invite (d) (v)	قريب
,	جميل - جذاب	gardener (n)	يدعو
		()	بستاني / جنابني

Conjugation of Irregular Verbs

تصريف الأفعال غير المنتظمة

Present	the state of the s	Past uplan	التحريف الثالث . P.P.
meet up	ينقابل	met up	met up
send	Jmy	sent	sent
bring	بحضر	brought	brought
break	پکسر - پنگسر	broke	broken
wear	يرندى	wore	worn

Collocations

متلازمات لفظية

make	a decision a suggestion a plan lunch	ينخذ فرار يقدم افتراح يخطط يعد وجبة الغذاء	do	work something sports an activity	بقوم بعمل شيء ما بقوم بعمارسة رياضة بمارس نشاط
	sure	يتأكد			

Listening and Reading





· on Lesson 5 SB page 9

Basel: Hi, Taher. Would you like to meet up

tomorrow?

Taher: Hi, Basel. That would be great. Shall we

go to the sports centre?

Basel: I'm not sure. I hurt my leg, so I can't

play sport at the moment.

Taher: Oh dear! Shall we go to the park, then?

Basel: Maybe but it's a long way(1) to walk.

I'd prefer(2) to go somewhere indoors(3).

Taher: Oh, OK. How about the museum?

Basel: Perhaps ... but it's always busy on Saturdays.

Taher: OK, so what would you like to do?

Check Vocabulary

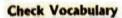
داخل المنزل (3) يفضل (2) طريق طويل (1)

Basel: I think it would be nice to watch a computer game. There's a new one which lets you practise your English.

Taher: That sounds like a great idea. Why don't you come to my house?

Basel: I'd love to! (4) Thanks, Taher, See you

tomorrow!



أحب ذلك (4)



Injy: Would you like to meet up tomorrow, Lina?

Lina: That would be great, Injy. Shall we go to the museum?

injy: I'm not sure. I think the museum's closed tomorrow.

Lina: OK. Shall we go to the shops, then?

Injy: I'd prefer to go somewhere outside. How about the park?

Lina: I like the park, but I think it would be nice to go on a ferry on the

river. Would you like to do that?

Injy: Yes, I'd love to! Why don't we meet by the bridge?



on Lesson 6 SB page 10

Visit El-Orman Garden!

- Learn about how Khedive Ismail⁽¹⁾ asked a famous French gardener(2) to plant a forest in the nineteenth century(3).
- · Find out how the Orman Garden became famous in 1910.

Check Vocabulary

قرن (۱۰۰ عام) (3) بستانی / جناینی (2) الخدیوی اسماعیل (1)







- · Learn how the gardens protect many important plants and trees.
- See plants, trees and flowers that grow numbers else⁽⁴⁾ in Egypt El-Dokki Street,

Giza.

Check Vocabulary

الرسان في مكافي آخر (١٠)

on Lesson 6 SB page 10

Hi Azza

I'm looking forward to "our trip" to the El Orman Garden The garden opens at 9 am, and it takes about an hour to get there by car. What time shall we come to get you? The online reviews are fantastic. The garden is very big and there's lots to see. Make sure "that you wear comfortable shoes."!

I'm sending you a map of the garden. You can see wild flowers^(*) and plants from all over the country. There is also a small lake and a museum. What would you like to see first?

We could bring some food with us or we could go to a nearby café for lunch. What would you prefer? There is also a lovely shop near the garden that sells pottery and jewellery.

See you Saturday.

Reem

Check Vocabulary

(i) sittig	(2) நோக் பெர	(1) Jaggill Blyss	(4) Apolii ülifide	co pa soly	حذاء مريح (از)	
الزبهور البرية. (7)	(B) plans	(9) 44JA	(10) 49630 - Jess	أواني فظرية (١١)	(12) Olympia	•

on Lesson 6 WB page 77

From : Munir To : Hazem

Dear Hazem

Thank you for asking me to visit the lake. I would love to go there! I will be ready at 7 am, so you can come to get me any time after that.



Check Vocabulary

Ti scimo

Yes. I have some comfortable shoes. I don't mind walking round the lake. I like walking in the country. To answer your question, perhaps we should take a boat on the lake first, before it is too hot.

My mother is going to make me some lunch to take with us, but she always makes lots. I'm sure there will be enough for us to share! (3)

See you on Saturday.

Yours, Munir

Check Vocabulary

يشارك 3 اربع 1

on Lesson 7 WB page 78

I'm Tarek and I live in a small village. On weekdays, there are two buses a day to the nearest city. The first bus is at 7 am and the second one leaves late in the afternoon. My father doesn't take the early bus because it is very slow. The traffic is always bad in the mornings. At the weekend, there is only one bus, which goes at 8 am. There is not much traffic then, so it arrives in the city at 8.30 am. There is a market in the city at this time, so I often take this bus with my mother.

Videoscript

Aswan is a beautiful city in the south of Egypt. The River Nile runs through the city and there are lots of things to see and do.

Many people visit the Aswan Botanical Garden when they are in the city because it is very peaceful here. The garden is on El Nabatat Island popposite the famous Elephantine Island on the River Nile.

It's open every day from 8 o'clock in the morning to five or six o'clock in the afternoon. To visit, you can go by ferry⁽⁴⁾ or even by felucca⁽⁵⁾.

Another place to visit in Aswan is the Nubian Museum⁽⁶⁾. It is between Al-Fanadek Street and El Sadat Road. Some visitors⁽⁷⁾ to Aswan take a taxi to visit the museum.

You can visit the museum every day. It opens in the morning at 9 o'clock and it closes at one o'clock for lunch. It opens again at five o'clock until nine or ten o'clock in the evening.

Check Vocabulary

زائرين (7) متحف النوبة (6) عن طريق الفلوكة (5) عن طريق المعدية (4) جزيرة مبله (3) جزيرة البياتات ي جمر ظر

People come here to learn all about the life, culture and history of the people in Nubia (9).

After they visit the museum, some people take a boat to visit a real Nubian village near Aswan.

What can people see and do in your town or city? Are there any botanical gardens or other interesting places to visit?

Check Vocabulary

أرض النوبة (9) ثقافة (8)

General Notes on Reading & Listening

1 indoor (adj) / indoors (adv) - outdoor (adj) / outdoors (adv) تستخدم كصفة و يأتي بعدها اسم

noun aul

ex.: - Handball and volleyball are indoor sports.

تستخدم كظرف (حال) و تأتى في نهاية الجملة (بعد الفعل)

بالداخل فى نهاية الحملة

ex.: - Football is played outdoors.

Waleed is playing chess indoors.

2 open

open (ed) (v) , (adj)

يفتح - مفتوح

ex.: - Sara opens her shop at 7 am. (فعل)

- Shops are usually open till 12 at night in summer. (مفقه)

تعبیرات وحروف جر هامة Prepositions & Repositions

think about يلتقى - يقابل ىفكر في meet up go on a ferry يتفق مع يذهب باستخدام المعدية agree with في النصر on the river يرفض باسلوب مهذب disagree politely لوجية الغذاء for lunch يلعب لعبة حاسوب play a computer game يفحص عمل check work يوافق على القيام بنشاط check work

give an answer reply to

السؤال. Thank you for asking. العطي إجابة پرد علی That sounds like a great idea.

هذه تبدو فكرة رائعة.

xercise on Vocabulary

Choose the co	rrect answer from	ila, b, cora.	
Key vocabulary			
		the trip. All his frier	
 a. suggestion 	b. problem	c. information	d. pool
2. I need comfor	table shoes today	because I'm going	to walk
a. indoors	b. outdoors	c. outdoor	d. indoor
3. My mother ha when she got		, which she go	ot from her mother
_	b. kitchens	c. rooms	d. countries
SB and WB Exercis	es	ب والتدريبات	تدريبات من كتاب الطاا
4. WB The childre	en played to	day because it was	very hot outside.
a. outdoor	b. outdoors	c. indoors	d. indoor
5. WB Hisham wa	s born in 1981, wh	nich was in the last	
a. decision	b. year	c. century	d. area
6. SB Be careful i	n that shop. It sell	s which brea	ks easily.
a. pottery	b. jewellery	c. buildings	d. chemicals
El-Moasser Exerci	ises		تدريبات كتاب المعاصر
7. We need to	to meet up nex	kt week.	
a. keep	b. arrange	c. bring	d. listen
8. My friend, Ali	me to his sist	er's wedding party	<i>1</i> .
a. invited	b. invented	c. deleted	d. replied
9. You should spea	ak to old people	•	
a. impolitely	b. politely	c. quickly	d. angrily
10. A/An is a	person who work	s in a garden as a	job.
a. passenger	b. guide	c. gardener	d. volunteer
11. My finalis	to join the Facult	ty of Arts.	
a. invitation		c. feeling	d. decision

Language Notes, Expressions & Prepositions

12. What time are we going to meet tomorrow?

a. out

b. up

c down

d. into

13. Thank you asking me to come to the party.

a. of

b. about

c. at

d for

14. Which computer game would you like to, Basim?

a. play

b. make

c. do

d. take

15. The decision my brother has wasn't easy.

a. done

b. made

c. given

d. sent

16. My mother found the bakery, so she bought fresh bread.

a. open

b. opened

c. closed

d closet

Vocabulary Study:

متضادات ومترادفات Synonyms and Antonyms المضاد Antonym /Opposite المرادف Synonym الكلمة Word داخلي inside outdoor خارجي outside داخل المنزل indoors فارج المنزل outdoors outside بطريقة غير مهذبة impolitely kindly - nicely politely بطريقة مهذبة ىنسى forget memorize remember يتذكر disagree/refuse يرفض accept / allow يوافق agree

Prefix & Suffix		مقاطع بادئة وناهية
Prefix / Suffix	الوظيفة Function يعطى عكس المعنى	Examples امثلة impolitely بطريقة غير مهذبة
- ern	يكون صفة	northern southern دنوبی eastern western

EXERCISE on Vocabulary Study

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The synonym of "politely" is

c. excitedly

d. kindly

a. hardly

b. impolitely

2. The word "outdoor" is the opposite of " d. indoors c. indoor b. outside a. outdoors 3. Memorize has the same meaning of " d. remember c. reply a. forgive b. forget 4. The noun "north" can be an adjective by adding d. -ed c. -ing b. -ern 5. To make the negative form of "politely", we add the prefix d. imc. emb. una. in-Language ۔ **هل يمكننا أن .. ؟** Shall we - Lal t ... ? Why don't you/we ـ هيا بنا ... Let's + inf..... المصدر - هل تور أن ... ؟ Would you like to To make ex. - Shall we go to the swimming pool? suggestions - Why don't we go to the park? لتقديم الاقتراحات - Let's go to the museum. - Would you like to meet up this evening? noun/inf. + ing? How about ماذا عن / ما رأيد فعي ؟ What ex. - What about going to the zoo? - How about the cinema? 'd prefer to Sub. dela ex. - I'd prefer to go to somewhere indoors. Sub. فاعل prefer To express preference ex. - I prefer going to somewhere indoors. للتعبير عن التقضيل Sub. dele + prefer

> اسم noun /inf. + ing

I prefer playing football to playing basketball.
 He prefers tea to coffee.

.... مصر الفعل .mf. + inf. مصر الفعل

ex. - It would be nice to visit our uncle's farm.

Stop here! on Language (Answered & Explained)

في هذا الجزء نقدم للطالب تدريب على القاعدة اللغوية مجاب عنه ومصحوب بشرح أسباب اختيار الاحانة الصحيحة.

0	Choose	the correct	answer from	a b cord
		And the second s	ALISHEL HOILI	a, b, c ul u.

- 1. A: don't we meet in front of the museum?
 - B: OK. That's a good idea.
 - a. What
- b. When
- c. Why
- d. Where

- 2. What about to the zoo?
 - a. go
- b. going
- c. goes
- d. went
- 3. Salma 'd prefer pizza with chicken.
 - a. to eat
- b. eating
- c. eats

- d. ate
- 4. It would be nice see this film. It's interesting.
 - a. to
- b. for
- c. at

d. with

No.		Answer + Ex	اللجابة والتوضيح planation
1	c	Why don't we ?	الجملة تعبر عن تقديم اقتراح لذا تكون الإجابة
2	b	(inf. + ing) وأ ليعما المحبتي (W	الجملة تعبر عن تقديم اقتراح والصيغة(Vhat about
3	a		صيغة الفعل ('d prefer') يتبعها to + inf. لهدي
4	a	to + inf. ويتبعها (It would b	الجملة تعبر عن التفضيل لذلك تستخدم الصيغة (e nice

Exercises on Language

1. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

SB & WB Exercises

تدريبات من كتاب الطالب والتدريبات

- 1. SB don't you come to my house?
 - a. Who
- b. What
- c. Why
- d. Where

2. W ab	out the park?		d. Where
a. How	b. Why	c. When	CI. WILEIE
3. St What tim	e shall wet	o get you ?	d. came
a. comes	b. come	c, coming	d. Carrie
4. W Why don'	t we by the	bridge ?	d. meets
a. meet	b. meeting	c. to meet	o, meets
5. 😘 What	Reem like to so	ee at the museum ?	d. be
a. can	b. would	c. shall	تدريبات كتاب المعاصر
El-Moasser Exer			حريبت عنب المهاطر
6. A : Would you	ı like some	juice ? B : Sure.	7 T. L.
a to drinking	b. to drink	c. drinks	d. drink
7. Why we	play football tog	ether? - That's a gre	at idea.
a. don't	b. didn't	c. haven't	d. mustn't
8. I'd prefer	tea without mil	k.	Dr. v Heady
a. drinks	b. to drinking	c. drinking	d. to drink
9. It would	nice to play som	ne sport.	7. 1
a. am	b. is	c. are	d. be
10. What about	a cup of gree	en tea with me today	y ?
a. have	b. having	c. to have	a. nau
2 Complete the se	ntences with the	correct form of the	word(s) in brackets:
			تدریبات من کتاب الطال
SB and WB Exercise			,
	en) about the mu		
		omewhere indoors.	
3. WB I think it wo	ould (is) nic	e to go on a ferry.	
El-Moasser Exerc	ises		تدريبات كتاب المعاصر
4. Where would y		ina) ?	
5. Let's (had			
6. They prefer			
7. Shall we	(playing) in the g	arden ?	

Skills Corner



كيفية التعامل مع معارات (القراءة - الكتابة - التحدث) في الورقة الامتحانية لكل درس على حده. التوريد من الشرح والتدريبات على مهارات (القراءة - الكتابة - التحدث)
| Master Your Term في ملحق (Master Your Term)

• Reading Corner

قم بقراءة Reading on lesson 6 SB page 10 من كتاب المعاصر صفحة ٥٥ ثم قم بالتدرب على إجابة بعض أسئلة قطعة الفحم طبقاً لمواصفات الورقة الامتحانية.

A. Answer the following questions:

- Giving the main idea إعطاء الفكرة الرئيسية
- 1. Give a suitable title for this passage.
 - A trip to El-Orman Garden.
- Extracting information استحراج المعلومات
- 2. What can Reem buy at a nearby shop?

B. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- تحمين معنى ممردة لعوية من النص Gusssing the meaning of vocabulary in context
- 3. The expression "looking forward to" in the text means
 - a. drive
- b. hope
- c. donate
- d. delete

2. Writing Corner

معارة الكتابة

A. Read the sentences

جمل تساعدك على كتابة فقرة إنشائية / رسالة بريد إلكتروني

رْيارة إلى حديقة الأورمان "A visit to the El-Orman Garden"

1. I like visiting the gardens.

- أحب زيارة الحدائق.
- 2. El-Orman Garden are very big and there's a lot to see.
 - إن حديقة الأورمان كبيرة جدًا وبها الكثير لتراه.
- 3. You can see wild flowers and plants from all over the country there.
 - ٣. يمكنك رؤية الزهور البرية والنباتات من كل أنحاء الريف هناك.
- 4. There is also a small lake and a museum.
 - ع. يوجد بها أيضًا بحيرة صغيرة ومتحف.

B. Building sentences

Read and complete:

What - bring - prefer - jewellery - exhibition - Why

- to eat pizza with mushrooms.
- in the museum. 2.1 saw a lot of
- about 3. In the museum, there is a great Egypt.
- food with us for the picnic. 4. We have to
- about drinking mango juice?

C. Practise by yourself

- Write a paragraph of about (110) words on :

"The El-Orman Garden"

peaking Corner

بدارة التحدث

تقديم اقتراحات :

ور رواسة القواعد والمفردات

اللغوية الخاصة بالدرسين

فو باللزوب على بناء الجملة

Making suggestions:

Suggestion

1. Would you like to meet up tomorrow?

هل تود أن نتقابل غذا ؟

2. Shall we go to the park, then ?

هل بمكننا الذهاب إلى الحديقة. حيثتد ؟

3. How/What about the museum?

ماذا عن المندف؟

4. Why don't you come to my house?

لما لا تأتي لمنزلي ؟

Response

الموامقة Agreeing الود ذلك. I'd love to.

الها فكرة جيدة. . It's/That's a good idea

عدم الموافقة Disagreeing

أنا لست متأكدا I'm not sure.

I'd prefer to go somewhere indoors.

أفطل الذهاب لمكان داخلي امكان مغلق

It would be nice to play computer games.

إنه من اللطيف أن ناعب العاب الكمبيوثر

General Exercises



LESSONS 5 & 6

				COLUMN TO SERVICE CO.		
•	Understand	Apply	• Create			
1	Complete th	e followi	ng dialogu	e:		
	A woman, at	the train s	tation, is as	king about the	e train to Ismailia	
	A woman	: What t	time does th	e next train to	Ismailia leave ?	
	A booking cle	erk : (1)				
	A woman	:(2)	D1000000000000000000000000000000000000	?		
	A booking cle	rk : It take	s 2 hours.			
	A woman	: Can I b	ook a ticket	, please ?		
	A booking cle	erk : (3)		. Single or retu	ırn ?	
-	A woman	: Single	, please. (4)		?	
	A booking cle	rk : It's sev	enty pound	s.		
	A woman	: (5)				
	A booking cle	erk : Thank	you. Here's	your ticket.		
2	Chaosatha		muss from	a b cord.		
Ĺ	Choose the					
-	1. 😘 We cou		2	for lunch.		
	a. entrance	b.	hall	c. library	d. café	
•	2. Shady bou	ght some p	ottery	a lovely shop		
	a. for	b.	with	c. from	d. of	
•	3. The metro i	s one of the	e most	means of tran	sport, so I often take	it
	a. harmful	b.	comfortable	e c. crowded	d. expensive	
0	4. Amr	a suggesti	on to have a	n ice cream an	d I agreed.	
	a. did	b.	went	c. made	d. brought	
•	5. A is a	period of	100 years.			
	a. decade	b.	center	c. centre	d. century	

6. about going to the museum?

b. When

a. What

d. Why

c. Where

- 2. WB Would you like to (meets) up tomorrow, Lina?
- 3. Wil'd (prefers) to go somewhere outside.
- 4. SS Shall we (went) to the park, then?
- Write an email of about (110) words:

مجاب عنه في نهاية الكتاب

To your friend Sara inviting her to the exhibition with you and your family. Your name is Alaa and your email address is alaa22@gmail.com. Your friend's email address is sara26@yahoo.com.

Self Assessment Activity

التقييم الذاتي

If you got , you need to revise the unit again on the next page. قم بتقييم بوسك بالعلامات الموضحة وإذا خصلت على 🜑 غير خيد قم بمراجعة الوجدة مرة أجرى من الصفحة التالية At the end of this unit, I will be able to في تهمية هذه فوجدة. ساكون قادرًا على أن العلم مفردات لغوية هامة Learn important vocabulary فالمنا لغوية هامة Learn important vocabulary peaceful especially monuments Science Museum platform aquarium comfortable Space Exhibition 2 Read and write sentences using present simple for scheduled events, prepositions of time and prepositions of place اقرأ ونختب جعل باستخدام الصغارع اليسيحا في المواقيد الزمنية وحروف الجر الخاصة بالوقت وحروف الجر الخاصة بالعكان The train arrives in Qena at 11 pm How long does it take to reach Aswan? On Fridays, I visit my grandparents. The sports center is on the corner of the road. أقدم اقتراحات 3 Make suggestions Would you like to visit Luxor? Shall we go to the aquarium? It would be nice to visit our uncle. Why don't we go to the sports centre? لمزيد من التدريبات

، جزء للمتابعة فى كراسة المعاصر Master your term

· جزء للمتابعة الشهرية بعد حُل ثلاث وحدات



SB page 11



WB page 78

Vocahiilary	vacin		
	arall y	Language	Speaking
restaurant	octoo		0
A Service in the		i. Present simple tense	I. ulving directions
מוכם ונוכנים וישונים ווישווים שיווים וישווים וישווים וישווים וישונים ו	מוכם ועכווי וי	io: Ilouid	1. Go straight on 30 metres then turn right
botanical gardens autu all	ددائة نباتية كا		
, , ,		- الليتكدم المضارع السيط في الجداول والمواعيد الزمنية.	2. Go past the botanical gardens, the
sports centre	مرکز ریاصی	We use the present simple of the second simple second of the second of t	aquarium is on the corner.
monuments	ומ	Jul scheduled events.	'n
peaceful	a)cS	* What time does the film start?	the left.
Space Exhibition	معرض الفضاء	Space Exhibition معرض الفضاء space Exhibition * It starts at 7 pm.	2. Discussing timetables and public
ferry	معدية	2. Prepositions of Time	transport
comfortable	مريح	حروف جر الخاصة بالوقت.	مناقشة جداول المواعيد والمواصلات العامة.
passengers 09	ركاب/مسافرون	ingite on the state of the stat	- What time does the next train leave?
railway	سكة دديد	- on Saturdays / Sundays mornings	* It leaves at 9 pm.
jewellery	مجوهرات	ு weekends / at night	3. Making suggestions Obluding
century	مَرن	on holidays / in the morning - مَرِن	an
pottery	أواني مخارية	at the weekends - at the weekends	- Shall we go to the zoo ?
look forward to	يتطاع إلى	3. Prepositions of Place	- Why don't we play football?
borrow di	يستعير/يستلف	حروف جر الخاصة بالمكان	
platform	رحيف قطار	- between / on the corner / next to /	
on the corner	على الناصية	opposite	
		- The bank is opposite the museum.	

Writing Skill

ممارة الكتابــة

معالجة جديدة "للفقرة الإنشائية والبريد الإلكتروني"

A Paragraph / An email on

Your city / What you do at the weekend / Travelling by train / A trip to a museum



Brainstorming

مجموعة أسئلة لاستثارة أفكار لكتابة الفقرة الإنشائية/ رسالة بريد الكتروني

- What things do you like in your city?
- What are your favourite activities at weekends?
- What kinds of museums do tourists prefer?

Vocabulary

مفردات لغوية مساعدة

Travelling	Ent ertainment places	Tourism
- journey	- restaurant	- exhibition
- tram	- museum	- monuments
- train	- library	- pottery
- metro	- café	- jewellery
- passengers	- aquarium	- objects
- ferry	- sports centre	

3

Expressions & Structures

تعبيرات وتراكيب مساعدة

- The library is	the bank.	*
- Let's in /	at / on	
- At the weekend, I		
- It would be nice t	o	,

_	
1	
1	raragraph
	AND DESCRIPTION OF THE PERSON

كتابة الفقرة الإنشائية

Write a paragraph of about (110) words or	1
---	---

"The city you live in"

Exam Language Bank

أقدم النقاط (موضح إحتيار) في كل وحدة والتي تستطيع من خلالها التعامل مَعَ تَدْرِينَاتَ الْوَحَدِةُ وَكُلِّ التَدْرِينَاتَ الْخَاصَةُ بَالْمِنْهُجُ



lo Vocabulary

_{غيران} بهوري سامة مُد تكون موضع اختيار .

botanical gardens	حدائق نباتية	peaceful	filling / who
sports centre	مركز رياضي	green valleys	elien and
library	مكتبة	tram	pla
restaurant	pcho	passengers	and compared
monuments	أثار	exhibition	(मेश्र) सम्बं
traffic	حركة العرور	pottery	مباعه انفخار - أواني فخارية

% Language

رض نغوية هامة قد تكون موضع اختيار:

- 1. The first metro train leaves at 8:20.
- 2. On Friday afternoon, I often go to Lake Timsah
- 3. What time does the film start(3)?
- 4. The chair is between the table and the door.

Check Language

- تعر ها معارع بسيط يغير عن ميعاد ثابت
- egunti piri gum (On) pilas
- السنفهام بكلمة إستفهام في زمن المضارع البسيط البسيط (3) (Q - word + do / does + subj. + mt. !!
- طاحره در من دروم الجر الخاصة بالمكان تستخدم بين شيئين. (4)

3 Speaking

اخدية مامة قد تكون موضع اختبار

Questions



Answers



- What type of energy do trams use?
 Trams use electricity.
- 2. Which platform does the train leave from?
- 3. What about spending the weekend in Alexandria?

- Platform 7.
- It's a great idea.

General Exercises

on unit

Understand

O Apply Create

1 Complete the following dialogue:

Nabil is talking to his mother about his first day at school. Mother: Hello, Nabil. How was your first day at school? Nabil : (1) , but many students were absent غائبين , but many students were absent Mother : (2) : Because of COVID 19. It's very dangerous. Nabil Mother : (3)? : Yes, I've washed my hands already.

Mother: What did your teachers advise you to do?

Nabil : (4) Mother: Do you have a mask?

Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

I am Samy and I live in Ismailia, which is between Port Said and Suez. The Suez Canal runs through the city before it reaches the sea. Ismailia is a part of history. In the past, people in Ismailia saved their city sacrifice themselves for their homes.

Ismailia is beautiful. There are attractive buildings, interesting monuments and lots of gardens. Ismailia is peaceful, but it isn't boring! There are lots of things to do here, especially at the weekend. I often go to Lake Timsah, which is near the city, with my family. It is a beautiful lake with beaches around it. We can play on the beach. We can catch fish. There are some interesting museums in Ismailia! My favourite place is the Natural Science Museum because I'm interested in animals. In this museum, you can enjoy and have a lot of scientific information about animals and plants. The weather in Ismailia is fine all the year. So, you can enjoy your stay here. The hotels are clean, comfortable and not expensive. It is a good place to go to at the weekend.

a American the following questions:		day Mantion
A Shirwin the following questions . Forest why temailia is a good p	lace to spend a holi	icay. michinan
Med Service		
> How are the buildings in Ismail		
3. Do you think your stay in Ismailia	will be comfortable	? Why / Why no
3. Do you think your stay in Ismaille	Will be com	
& Choose the correct answer from	a,b,cord:	
the main irlea of the passage is		4 Count
The Charland	C Distantia	d. Egypt
5. What does the underlined work	I I leiei to .	
3. The weekend	b. Lake Timsah	
	d. Ismailia	
6. People in Ismailia are		
a. friendly b. unhelpful	c. cruel	d interested
a mendly Little Little	b condi	
3 Choose the correct answer from	a, b, coru.	
1. Why don't you to my ho	use?	
a. borrow b. send	c spend	d. come
2. What will you do the weeke	nd?	
h in	C. OIL	d. down
a. of D. In 3. Alexandria is one of the most	cities in Egypt. I e	njoy visiting it.
3. Alexandria is one or the most a. attractive b. boring	c. crowded	d. exited
	you can borrow and	read books.
	c sports centre	d. airport
a. office b. library		
 5. When the place where you can see! 	b. botanical gard	en
a. café	D. DOLD SEE 3	
c.bank	d. aquarium	
6. The shows how to trave	el by metro.	d. restaurant
a. map b. station	c library	W ICHON
 7. To cross the canal, they used a 		d forms
a. car b. bus	c. train	d ferry
and Alabor.		

6	8. Please be	when you carry	these bags!	
-	a. careless		c. bored	d. careful
6		?		
		useum close		
-	c. the museun	n does close	d. does the m	useum closes
¢	10. We don't know	when the next b	us	
١	a. will arrive	b. arrives	c. arrived	d. is arriving
7	Complete the	sentences with	the correct form	of the word(s) in
0	brackets:	332 No.		
		do) the film you ar	e watching end?	
	2. The librarian is	s waiting for me to	leave. The library	(close) after 25
	minutes.	, wanting to the	•	
		asn't finished. It	(finish) at nin	e oʻclock.
	The control of the co	the first train, so		
		after an hour.		
		sentences with	these words:	
				ete
			tion - on - get - pa	
	Some people	e think that Sydne	y in Australia has t	the best transport
	in the world. W	hy? Because train	s, buses and ferrie	s travel to all
	(1)	of the city. If y	ou want to (2)	to
	somewhere qu	ickly, fast trains le	ave from Central (3) to
	many places (4)) t	ne airport.	
E	Choose the co	rrect word:		
	1 The train arriv	es / will arrive in l	Luxor at 23:15.	
I	2 44. C.46. au dèdi	" / doesn't take t	he early bus, beca	use it is very slow.
Ì	2. My lather did:	ren plaved indoor	s / outdoors today	y, because it was very
Ì	hot outside.	cii pia) ca		
		Lange Control	an)anda on t	مجاب عنه في نهاية الكتاب
7	Write a parag	raph of about (1	10) words on .	
-		"What you do of	one day of the w	eeK"

Stop here!

A	B B	
 The children played indoors today, Trams are electric, "Especially" means A ferry You can't hear any traffic here. 	 a. calm and quiet. b. It is a very peaceful city. c. takes people across water. d. so they are better for the environment. e. because it was very hot out f. more than usual. 	side.
Read and correct the u		
1. Salma usually visits he 2. The first metro train <u>le</u>	er grandparents in the weekend.	(
	pposite the aquarium and the hospital.	(
Use your brain, the	hink smart واختبر ذکانك	
all a a a a a constant a little a littl		
. I'd prefer somew	here indoors.	

c. on

c. flour

d. of

d. floats

4. I learned to swim the age of seven. b. at

b. floors

5. Bread and cakes are made of

a. flowers

UNIT 2

Let's go shopping

SB pages 12:21 WB pages 79:85



Objectives

· Reading:

An online support message: an advert for handicrafts; online reviews

· Writing:

Emails asking for and giving information about handcrafts

· Listening:

A radio advert; a conversation in a shop; a phone call making a complaint

Speaking:

Talking about things in the home; buying something in a shop; asking about shopping habits; describing a problem with technology; making a complaint

- · Language: both / and , either / or , neither / nor
- · Life skills: Self-management: Keeping calm;

· Critical thinking:

Evaluating the pros and cons of online shopping

العلامة الله تسبق أسئلة كتاب الطالب
 العلامة الله تسبق أسئلة كتاب التحريبات



• للمتابعة اليومية و الابحاث في Master your term • قاموس المعاصر اللغوى



1 & 2

SB pages 12:15 WB pages 79 & 80



Vocabulary

Key Vocabulary

coffee machine (n)	ماكينة صنع القهوة	discount (n)	خصم - تخفیض
kettle (n)	غلاية (كهربائية)		اتفاق - صفقة
microwave (n)	مايكروويڤ (فرن)		سماعة (مكبر صوت)
toaster (n)	محمصة خبز كهربائية		ذکی
advert (n)		shop (ped) (v), (n)	يتسوق - متجر
special offer (n)	عرض خاص	sale (n)	تخفيض - اوڪازيون

Key Vocabulary • (القانما: Key Vocabulary من المفردات الأكثر أهمية المطلوب من الطالب إتقانها.



- Master your Vocabulary يقضى على جميع مشاكل حفظ المفردات (ملحق Master).
 - Glossary لحصيلة أكبر (للمزيد) من المفردات اللغوية نهاية الكتاب.

Lesson (1)

SB pages 12 & 13 WB page 79

magazine (n)	مجلة	delivery (n)	خدمة توصيل البضائع
poster (n)	ملصق إعلانات	free (adj)	مجاني
website (n)	موقع على الإنترنت	item (n)	عنصر
oven (n)	فرن	useful (adj)	مفيد
boil (ed) (v)	يغلى	price (n)	- ئەن – سەر
quality (n)	جودة	fridge (n)	للاجة
normally (adv)	عادة	advertise (d) (v)	
city centre shop (n)	متجر وسط المدينة		علن طانح ونوشر
leather industry (n)		compare (d) (v)	طازج - منعش يقارن

Lesson 2 SB pages 14 & 15 WB page 80

customer (n)	زبون - عمیل	shopping centre (n)	cula Tieva
shop assistant (n)	عامل في محل تجاري	gum.e(-)	مرکز تجاری استبیان / دراس <mark>ة بحث</mark> یة
market (n)		column (n)	
		column (II)	عامود - خانة

hapartachapanana (11)	untre exten	table (n) iges	
cape Abarra (12)	ashe shee	Maditerranean Sea (n) success pade poet	
haterst (ranth)	હેલ વ [#	translata (m)	

Continuent	on or ti	regular Verbs	Baltitall He Beell Witer
by areases	FIRMH	Hales, see	P.P. Julia Agenta
PHILY	131161	beaught	bought
Nex	BAN	स्वात	ब्रह्म
ALCA.	HHV	Race	glvan
terli	HV	told	told
*****	de	(ame	come
xysecak	WARL	spake	spoken
understand	pana	understood	understood

هذه التعريفات مجمعة من خياب الطائب وكتاب التحريبات وهاموسر التعريفات (glossary) في نهاية ختاب التحريبات

Study these	e definitions	ادرس هذه التعريفات
coffee machine	you can make a hot drink with this	فأكينة صبغ القسوة
kettle	you can boll water with this	ague
toaster	you can make bread warm with this	محمصة خير كسريائية
microwave	you can cook things quickly with this	مايکروونگ (فری)

Colle	ecations			فللزمات لفظية
	a discount (Fuña) a	spend	money	ينفق نفود
have	much homework als using any	1	the bus	يستقل اللتوبيس
	money sgár ay s	,	the train	رسيفل القطار
offer	a deal gial / again grue	get	a drink	پچهل فلي فشروب
- to-	music پشغل موسیقی	,	a poster	يحصل علي ملصق
play	a sport acity quita			

Listening





on Lesson 1 SB page 13

Voice: Do you love music? Do you want the latest technology(1)? We have the best headphones(2) now at audioworld. We are selling them in red, which is our most popular colour, and also in black and white. This week you can buy them at the special price 4 of only 1500 Egyptian pounds. Visit our shop today!



Check Vocabulary

سعر خاص (4) محبوب - مشمور (3) سماعات الرأس (2) أحدث تكنولوجيا (1)

on Lesson 2 SB page 14

Shop Assistant : Hello, sir. Can I help you ?

: Yes, please, I'm looking for a new TV for my living room.

Shop Assistant: OK, no problem. You're lucky we have lots of deals 22 at

the moment! For example, both of these TVs have a big

discount(3)

: Great. Are they smart TVs? Customer

Shop Assistant: No, sorry. Neither of these

are smart TVs, but this one over there is and that is

also on special offer(4).

: Hmm, that one is a bit Customer

smaller than what I want. I want quite a big one. How

much is this bigger one ?

Shop Assistant: Oh, yes! That's a great TV. That's new in the shop this

week, so it doesn't have a discount. It is 8,000 pounds.

Check Vocabulary

عرض خاص (4) خصم - تخفيض (3) صفقات (2) يبحث عن (1)

Customer : That's a bit expensive for me. Is that your best price?

Shop Assistant: Yes, sorry, but I am offering a deal today. You can get either

a free speaker⁽⁵⁾ or get a free films deal with that one.

Customer : Oh, well that's great because I need a new speaker. I think

this one will look great in my living room. I'll take it!

Check Vocabulary

(5) Aultao Aclaw

General Notes on Reading & Listening

1 sale / on sale / for sale

* sale (n) (وكازيون (يبيع البطانع بأسعار مخفضة) وكازيون (يبيع البطانع بأسعار مخفضة) eX.: - There's a big sale now at JD Home Store.

* on sale معروطة للبيع بسعر مخفض (بطاعة) معروطة للبيع بسعر مخفض البياء - Smart TVs are on sale at this shop. You can buy them for lower prices.

* for sale للبيع (معروض للبيع)

ex.: - This house is for sale. His owner wants to sell it.

2 deal (v), (n)

* deal (dealt - dealt) (v) يتعامل

ex.: - The book deals with education.

* deal (n)

deal (n)

ex.: - She got a good deal on her new house.

تعبیرات وحروف جر هامهٔ Prepositions & Prepositions

start with	يبدأ بـ	on special offer في عرض خاص
deal of the day	صفقة اليوم	أشياء بالسعر المعتاد things are the usual price
at the best prices	بأفضل الأسعار	wait for deals or discounts
things for the house	أدوات منزلية	ينتظر العروض أو التخفيضات
ask about	پسأل عن	the difference between and
adverts from	إعلائات من	اللختلاف بين و

ask for information What type of ? ما نوع ... ؟ give ... information choose to + inf. يختار أن يقدم معلومات deal / discount on look for بيدث عن صفقة / تخفيض على tell ... about پخبر ... عن spend much money on ينفق أموال ڪثيرة علي ... shop online يتسوق عبر الانترنت watch films from the internet on the Mediterranean Sea بشاهد افلام من الانترنت على البحر الأبيض المتوسط

on Vocabulary

Nev vocabulary

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- 1103 10000011111			
	ke coffee with the		d. coffee machine
a. kettle	b. microwave	c. toaster	a, conee machine
		ee one when you l	The second secon
a. shop	b. offer	c. test	d. over
3. The new chem		on shampoo ar	
 a. discount 	b. deal	c. information	d. count
4. I want to buy a		music on my birth	
a. oven	b. microwave	c. speaker	d. website
5. This is fro	om a website abou	it the new capital.	
a. wave	b. shop	c. kettle	d. advert
SB and WB Exercise	S	ىب والتدريبات	دريبات من كتاب الطاا
6. WB You can ma	ke bread warm wi	th the	
a. kettle	b. microphone	c. toaster	d. speaker
7. WB Osama's fan	. (5)	TV. They can no	w watch films from
a. old	b. smart	c. free	d. fast
8. WB You can coo	k things quickly w	ith the	
a. microwave	b. kettle		
9. 533 You are a	Ask the custo	mer what they wa	ant to buy.
a. speaker	b. patient	c. shop assistant	d. programmer

○ (I-Mosss	er Exercise					***
10 They of	Her free	no shows	frortes involuta o		Jacanian.	JEE Object
a deliv	mry	CONTRACT :	rracks, inside (Shoppi	attro		
11 Alexan	dria is calle	d 'the bride	of the S	und.	d part	*
a Red	- w to comme	Moditorrae	orane s Han c Black	ea.		
12 We have	e a / me	offer Dor	man c mack		d Carl	hhean
a norm	al I	cases (36)	regular			
					d spec	rial
Language						
13 Mum at	ways prefe	rs to buy this	ngs the	house		
a for		- mad	con		d abou	ut
14 Can you	, me	information	about this ma	ichine !		
a make	. 6	give	c do		d have	
			special o	flors		
a of	b	for	c at		d on	
16 What's t	the o	f the day in (arrefour?			
a email	b	deal	Ctype		d mag	azine
Vocabul			3,60			
		The second secon				
Synonymes						-
Word	halfal	Symon	y'070 a signal	A	W CHEFFW	House
			trade			40000
cheap	رحيدل فلتهل	inexpensive		expen	sive	ولي ولام
free	لكف الني	unpaid - wi	thout money	paid		69810
ask	alta - Jim	inquire		give	reply	10 500
special	you gra	important	particular	unual	common	agila sage
Prefixes #	Suffixes				-	inte gentle
Seattle /	Prefix	F accord t	NOR WAR	£a	Ample	Mini
- ful		في تكفيه	pa as figur	useful		460
- 64		pane A	per so them			efet (efen g) (esen
Macro-		Miles	المعطى مشر	77:00,710 W	NAME OF TAXABLE	Assesso
H -		Residen	و الكانگي درادو	regul	er	SECTION AND

on Vocabulary Study

- - a. solve b. sail c. s
- d. soil
- 2. The word "free" can be the opposite of
 - a. voluntary
- b. paid
- c. chargeable
- d. changeable
- 3. To give the opposite of the word "expensive", we add the prefix
 - a. un-

- b. in-
- c. ir-
- d. il-

- 4. "Microbus" is a/an bus.
 - a. big

- b. expensive
- c. fast
- d. small
- 5. The word "inquire" gives the same meaning of
 - a. reply
- b. ask
- c. take
- d. give

Ш

Language

تذڪر Remember

ا هي الصفة؟ ؟ What's an adjective

An adjective is a word that describes a noun and precedes it or it follows verb to be.

الصفة هي كلمة تصف الاسم وتسبقه أو تأتي بعد (verb to be)

- ex. It is a small cat.
 - This bag is big.

المقارنة بين اثنين في صفة : : Comparative adjectives



Short adjectives

الصفات القصيرة

• هي الصفات التي تتكون من مقطع واحد مثل :

fast / big / sad / happy ... etc. Long

adjectives الصفات الطويلة

^{هى الص}فات التى تتكون من أكثر من مقطع مثل :

beautiful / dangerous ... etc.

🚺 تتحول الصفات القصيرة إلى صيغة المقارنة :

adj ain + er + than

fast → faster / old → older

ونضيف (than) بعد الصفة القصيرة.

نَضاف (٢) فقط لنهاية الصفة القصيرة (٢) المنتهية بـ (e) :

iarge → larger / close → closer

- للخير إذا كان مسبوقًا الخير إذا كان مسبوقًا بصوت متحرك قصير ثم يُضاف (er) لنهاية الصفة القصيرة :
- big → bigger thin → thinner
- -hot → hotter fit → fitter
- الصفات المنتهية بحرف (**y**) **مسبوقًا بحرف** ساكن تتحول (**y**) إلى (**ier**) :
- easy → easier
- happy -> happier
- lazy → lazier
- ex. Milk is healthier than pizza.

تتحول الصفات الطويلة إلى صيغة المقارنة
 كالتالي :

more اكثر / less اقل + adj. قفه + than

- beautiful
- more/less beautiful than

أكثر / أمّل جمالًا من

- ex. Kettles are more expensive than computers.
 - Reading is more interesting than video games.

المقارنة بين أكثر من اثنين (صيغة التفضيل): Superlative adjectives

Short adjectives الصفات القصيرة

- تتحول الصفات القصيرة إلى صيغة التفضيل كالتالى :
 - : (the adj. āào+est) 0
- fast -> the fastest
- old → the oldest

Long adjectives الصفات الطويلة

- تتحول الصفات الطويلة إلى صيغة التفضيل كالتالى :
- the most الأكثر the least + adj. صفة
- the most/the least **beautiful** الأكثر / الأقل جمالًا

- (the (e) صفة قصيرة منتمية بـ (the (e) م
 - large -> the largest
 - close → the closest
 - 😙 يضاعف الحرف الساكن اللَّذير إذا كان مسبوقًا بصوت متحرك قصير ثم يُضاف
 - : **the... + est**) إلى الصفة القصيرة :
 - bia → the biggest
 - thin → the thinnest
 - hot -> the hottest
 - fit → the fittest
 - 釪 الصفات المنتمية بحرف (🏏) مسبوقًا بحرف ساكن تتحول (**y**) إلى (**iest**) :
 - easy → the easiest
 - happy

 the happiest
 - lazy → the laziest
 - healthy

 the healthiest
- ex. This puzzle is the easiest one.

- the most/the least dangerous
 - الأكثر / الأقل خطورة
- ex. The most useful thing in the kitchen is the fridge.
 - Which item is the most expensive?
 - Visiting Luxor is the most exciting idea for me.

Irregular Comparative and Superlative Forms: صيغ المقارنة والتفضيل غير المنتظمة :

• هناك بعض الصفات غير المنتظمة (تحفظ كما هي) عند المقارنة بين اثنين أو المقارنة **بين أكثر من اثنين** :

Adj.

	-
bad	سيئ
far	بعيد
good	جيد
late	متأذر
little	قليل (الكمية)
many	كثير (العدد)
much	كثير (الكمية)

Comparative

worse than أسوأ من farther than أبعد من further than أبعد من better than أفضل من later than أكثر تأخرًا من الأخير/الثاني من latter than less than أقل من أكثر من more than

Superlative

الأسوأ the worst the farthest الأبعد الأبعد the furthest the best الأفضل الأكثر تأخرًا the latest الأخبر the last the least الأقل الأكثر the most

on Language (Answered & Explained)

فى هذا الجزء نقدم للطالب تدريب على القاعدة اللغوية مجاب عنه ومصحوب بشرح أسباب اختيار الإجابة الصحيحة.

(0)	Choose	the	correct	answer	from	a.I	0.0	ord
				The second secon		/ :	,, ,	. UI U

- 1. Kettles are expensive than tablets.
 - a less
- b. little
- c. the less
- d the least
- 2. Which book is theuseful? The science book.
 - a. more
- b. most
- c. less
- d. much

- 3. Adel is taller Sameh.
 - a. nor
- b, or
- c. as
- d, than

No.		الإجابة والتوضيح Answer + Explanation
1	a	عند المقارنة بين أثنين مع الصفات الطويلة مثل expensive نستخدم صيغة المقارنة الأتية less <u>(adj)</u> صفة than
2	b	عند المقارنة بين اكثر من اثنين مع الصفات الطويلة نستخدم صيغة التفضيل الأتية the most +
3	d	عند المقارنة بين اثنين مع الصفات القصيرة نستخدم صيغة المقارنة الأتية (adj + er) + than

Exercises on Language

1. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

SB and WB Exercises

تدريبات من كتاب الطالب والتدريبات

- 1. 533 The useful thing in my kitchen is the fridge.
 - a. more
- b. most
- c. as
- d. less
- 2. 58 It is to buy clothes in shops than online.
 - a. best
- b. good
- c. better
- d. the best
- 3. WB The second coffee machine is than the first one.
 - a. smaller
- b. smallest
- c. small
- d. the smallest
- 4. WB Which item do you think is the expensive?
 - a. little
- b. less
- c. least
- d. more

El-Moasser Exercises

5 Which place is the in Cairo to visit?

	a. nice	b. nicest	c. nicer	d. most nice
	6. The giraffe is ta	ller the can	nel.	
	a. then	b. than	c. this	d. that
	7. No one is	than Ahmed in t	he class.	V
	a. strong	b. strongest	c. as strong	d. stronger
	8. Shopping onling	ne is before		
	a. easy	b. as easy	c. easiest	d. easier than
2	. Complete the ser	ntences with the c	orrect form of the	e word(s) in brackets:
0	SB and WB Exercise	es	والتدريبات	تدريبات من كتاب الطالب
	1. 33 The superr	market is the	(busy) shop in r	ny town.
	2. WB Red is	(most) popular	colour for our to	asters this year.
		none is much		
				(worse) film I've ever
	El-Moasser Exerc	ises		تدريبات كتاب المعاصر
	5. Ayman's car is	(most) expe	ensive than his u	ncle's.
		(stronger) b		
		east) excitir		
		ah is the (better)		gland this year.
	2 both - eithe	er – neither – ne	one :	
	1) both and /	both of	ن	۱) کلا / کلتا / کلاً م
	• Use both (and	l) to mean this th	ing and another	thing.
	ن إلخ لتعطي	يئين او صفتين او فعلير	حدث عن شخصین او ش	تستخدم (both) عادة عند للت
				معنى هذا الشئ والشئ اللخر

ex. - Both the laptop and the microwave are in the sale. - Both of the sisters are good at maths.

- She is both polite and beautiful.

تدريبات كتاب المعاصر

لاحظ أنه : Note that

- ا. نُمِكِن أن تستخدم (both) كَصَفَةَ أو ضَمِيرِ :
- ex. We don't have enough money for both. (ضعير)
 - Both bags have flowers on them. (صنة)
 - يأتى بعد (both of) اسم جمع أو ضمير مفعول جمع (you us them) أو ضمائر اللشارة (these those)
- ex. I like both of them.
 - Both of those windows are broken.
 - ٣. يُمكن أن تستخدم ضمائر الجمع قبل (both) :
- ex. We should choose something that we both like.

2) either ... or ...

- ٢) اما ... أو
- Use either ... (or) to mean this thing or another thing. تستخدم للتحدث عن شخصين أو شيئين أو صفتين أو فعلين ... الخ . لتعطى معنى هذا الشئ أو اللذر
- ex. You can ask either Amany or Reda. They both are free now. (شخصین)
 - You can get either a free speaker or a free film. (شيئين)
 - On Saturday, Hany either visits his cousins or goes shopping with his mother. (فعلين)
 - He is either sleepy or sick. (صفتین)

لاحظ أنه : : Note that

- ا. تُستخدم (either of) وليس (either) قبل ضمائر المفعول الجمع (you them us)
 أو ضمائر اللشارة الجمع (these those).
- ex. Do either of you go shopping every day?
 - Either of these films are fine.
- عندما تُستخدم (... either ... or) لربط فاعلين فإن الفعل يكون مفرد أو جمع حسب الفاعل الثاني.
- ex. Either Omar or his sisters have my book.
 - Either my sisters or my brother is going to have a dog.

3) neither ... nor ...

- ٣) لا ... ولا ...
- Use neither ... (nor) to mean not this thing or another thing.
 - تستخدم للتحدث عن شخصين أو شيئين أو صفتين أو فعلين وتعطى معنى (النفي) ليس هذا ولا ذاك.

- ex. Neither Dareen nor Malak speaks French. (اسمین)
 - -This shop is neither interesting nor cheap. (صفتین)
 - You can neither smoke nor eat in this office. (فعلين)

لاحظ أنه : : Note that

(neither of) وليس (neither) قبل ضمائر المفعول الجمع (you – them - us)

- ex. Neither of them are the right colour!
 - Neither of those necklaces are cheap.

♦ عندما تُستخدم (... neither ... nor) لربط فاعلين فإن الفعل يكون مفرد أو جمع حسب الفاعل الثاني:

ex. - Neither my mother nor my sister is here.

- Neither my brother nor my parents are here.

4) none (of) ...

- Use none to mean no one or no item. نستخدم (none of) لتعنى لا احد أو لا شئ ويمكن ان يتبعها اسم جمع او ضمائر مفعول جمع أو مفات إشارة الجمع (these - those):
 - ex. None of us want to buy these phones.
 - None of them work.
 - None of my friends go shopping every day.

Stop here: on Language (Answered & Explained)

في هذا الجزء نقدم للطالب تدريب على القاعدة اللغوية مجاب عنه ومصحوب بشرح أسباب اختيار الإجابة الصحيحة.

- Ochoose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:
 - 1. Salma said she would phone me, but she emailed nor phoned. d. each
 - b. other c neither a both 2. Ali and Toka could get into the flat because of them had
 - a door key.
 - d. none a. neither c either b. both
 - 3. I can either play tennis watch TV. b. nor d. each c. every a. or

No.	ALL N	الإجابة والتوضيح Answer + Explanation
1	c	تستخده (neither) معرور (nor) للتعبير عن النفي
2	b	تستخدم (both) لان الجملة تشير إلى جمع (Ali and Toka) والجملة في
3	a	صيغة الإثبات تستخدم (or) لأن الجملة تعبر عن الاختيار لوجود (either)

Exercises on Language

1. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

	. Choose the come	ect answer from	a, b, c or d:	
0	SB and WB Exercises			تدريبات من كتاب الطاا
	1. SB the sm	nart TV nor the lar	TV cuito d	سريبات س عماد
	a. Both	b. Either	يناسب c. Neither	the customer. d. Other
	2. SB You can choo	ose soup or	r calad with	u. Other
	a. neither	b. either	c. both	neal. d. all
	3. WB My sister and	d I like plavi	ing tennis	u. ali
	a. neither	b. either	c. every	d. both
0	El-Moasser Exercise	es		تدريبات كتاب المعاصر
	4. The new workers	s are lazv.	f them work hard	,
	a. None	b. Both	c. Either	d. Neither
	5 Marwa and	d Ghada like ice ci		u. Neither
	a. Neither		c. Both	d. Nor
	6. You can either go	to school by bus	on foot.	
^	a. nor	b. and	c. or	d. but
2.	Complete the sente	ences with the cor	rect form of the w	ord(s) in brackets :
0	SB and WB Exercises			تدریبات من کتاب الط
	1. SB (Neither one to buy!	er) of those neckla	aces are nice. I can'	t decide which
	2. WB This shop is a different or	(either) intei ie.	resting nor cheap.	Let's go to
	3, SB (No) of	my friends go sho	opping every day.	
0	El-Moasser Exercise	es		تدريبات كتاب المعاص
	4. I want to buy bot	h a shirt (or		
	5. Do (neither	r) of you play foot	thall every day ?	
	6. None of (w	e) an on foot	crei y day i	
		c, go on loot.		

Corner



عيفية التعامل مع معارات (القراءة - الكتابة - التحدث) في الورقة الامتحانية لكل درس على حده. تنويه كلمزيد من الشرح والتدريبات على مهارات (القراءة - الكتابة - التحدث) Part 2 في ملحق (Master Your Term)

Reading Corner

هُم بقراءة listening on lesson 1 SB page 13 من كتاب المعاصر صفحة ٧٨ ثم قم بالتدرب على إجابة بعض أسئلة قطعة الفهم طبقاً لمواصفات الورقة الامتحانية.

Answer the following questions:

- Giving the main idea إعطاء الفكرة الرئيسية
 - 1. Give a suitable title for this text.
- Extracting information استخراج المعلومات
 - 2. The text is about
 - b. headphones c. microwaves a. speakers
- d. TVs

- 3. Their most popular colour is
 - a. green
- b. red
- c white
- d. yellow

Writing Corner

معارة الكتابة

A Read the sentences

جمل تساعدك على كتابة فقرة إنشالية | رسالة بريد الكتروني

أشياء تمتلكها في مطبخك. "Items you have in your kitchen"

There are many items you can use in the kitchen.

لوجد العديد من اللجهزة والأشياء التي يمكن أن تستخدم في المطبخ.

We can cook things quickly using the microwave.

٢. يمكن أن نطبخ الأشياء بسرعة باستخدام الميكروويف.

3. Also, we can keep things cold using the fridge.

اً أيضًا يمكننا حفظ الأشياء باردة باستخدام الثلاجة.

B. Building sentences

• Read and complete:

both - speakers - kettle - nor - deal

- 1. You can get a free drink. There's a good
- 2. I bought some for my phone to play music loudly.
- 3. Marwa and I like eating fish.
- 4. You can boil water using the

عر دراسة القواعد والمفردات اللغوية الخاصة بالدرسين فم بالتدريب على بناء الجملة

C. Practise by yourself

تدرب على كتابة فقرة إنشائية / رسالة بريد الكتروني

- Write a paragraph of about 110 words on :

"Things you and your friend like doing at the weekend"

Speaking Corner

معارة التحدث

Buying something in a shop:

شراء شۍء فۍ محل :

زبون / عميل Customer / Client

- 1. Which items do you sell?
- ا. ما اللجمزة التي تبيعونها ؟ 2. Which items do you think is the most expensive ?
 - أي الأجهزة تعتقد هي الأكثر ثمنًا / الأغلى ؟
- 3. Do you have a sale?
 - 🗗 ممل لديكم عرض على السلع ؟

بائع في محل Shop assistant

- We have all the kitchen items. - لدينا كل أجهزة الوطية.
- The microwave is the most expensive.
 - الميكروويف هو الأعلى ثمنًا.
- Yes, we have a big sale on toasters.
 - نعم، لدينا عرض كبير على أجهزة تحقيص الخبز

Talking about things in the home:

التحدث عن أشياء في المنزل :

Questions



Answers



- Which useful items do you have in your house?
 - ان اللجهزة مفيدة لديك بالمنزل ؟
- 2. Which items of them do you think is the most useful ?
 إلى اللحمرة تعتقد هي اللكثر نفعًا ؟
- 3. Which of the items do you think is the nicest to look at?
- ٣. أي الأجهزة تعتقد إنه من الأفضل النظر إليها ؟
- 4. Do you normally buy things that are the usual price, or wait for deals or discounts?
- ع. هل من المعتاد بالنسبة لك شراء الأشياء بالسعر
 المعتاد أو أنك تنتظر صفقات أو خصومات ؟

- We have kettle, coffee machine, microwave, toaster, ... etc.
- لدينا غلاية، ماكينة صنع القهوة، ميكروويه. محمصة خبز كهربائية الخ
- I think the microwave.
 - اعتقد أنه الميكرووية.
- I think the coffee machine.
- It's fantastic.
 - اعتقد أنها ماكينة صنع القهوة. إنها رائعة.
- I always wait for deals or discounts because they save a lot of money
- for me.
- أنا دائمًا أنتظر صفقات أو خصومات لأنها توفر الكثير من المال بالنسبة لي.

General Exercises



LESSONS 1 & 2

· Understand

-	-	
6.	27	

· Create

	.,,,	*	
Complete the fo	ollowing dialogu	ie:	
Aya is talking wi	th Sama who bou	ght a new mobi	le.
Aya : Hello, San	na. How are you ?		
Sama : (1)	l bough	it a new mobile p	ohone.
Aya : Congratu	lations ! (2)	?	
Sama : I bought	it yesterday.		
Aya : (3)	?		
Sama : I bought	it for 3000 LE.		
Aya : Where di	d you buy it ?		
Sama : (4)			
	day is next week. I e with me ?	will buy a new n	nobile phone, too. Will
Sama : (5)			
2 Choose the co	rrect answer from	ma,b,cord:	
1. My father likes	drinking his coffee	e while he is read	ding a/an
a. interview	b. magazine	c. idea	d. machine
2. Do you often b	ouy thingss	pecial offer?	
a. on	b. in	c. down	d. up
 3. When you war price and the 		g, you should be	e careful about the
a. ability	b. possibility	c. equality	d. quality
	ght some fo		can play my music

b. speakers

b. with

5. Start your morning a fresh cup of coffee, made at home.

c. necklaces

c. to

d. columns

d. on

a. adverts

a. from

6. A / An	is used to make ho	t drinks.			
a. coffee machine		b. fridge	b. fridge		
c. instrume	ent	d. office			
7. To boil wat	er, you need a				
a. fan	b. fridge	c. kettle	d. screen		
8. Rana is	than Heba.				
a. fastest	b. fast as	c. as fast	d. faster		
9Lam	a nor Soha can come	shopping today.	Both of them are busy		
a. Neither	b. Either	c. All	d. Each		
10. You can ge	t either free speaker	a free film.			
a. each	b. also	c. nor	d. or		
Complete t	the text with words	from the list.			
	The state of the s				
	discount - cheaper -	are - internet - si	mart		
There is a	big sale in the shop	ping mall in our a	rea. All the clothes		
are (1)	than usual this	s week! This micr	owave has a 25%		
(2)	It usually costs 1.	000 LE, but now	it is 750 LE. Osama's		
			y can watch films on		
the (4)			** U 000033960 0 203998		
Complete t	he sentences with	the correct forn	n of the word(s) in		
brackets:			(5) 111		
1(Eithe	er) Sama nor Toka spo	eaks German.			
2	her) Tarek and Abdalla				
	shirts are good, but		(bia) one.		
	g is (many) exp				
	, (a.i), exp				

3 & 4

SB pages 16:18 WB pages 81 & 82



Vocabulary

Key Vocabulary

امر دخول log (ged) in (v)	turn (ed) off (v)	رطفيء - دريفان
الْ استمارة - يعطى معلومات (v) fill (ed) in (v	charge (d) (v)	يشحب (بالكهرباء)
	password (n)	just dats
	handicraft (n)	درفة بدوية - عمل بدوى
traditional (adj) مليدي	artists (n)	مبانين

Key Vocabulary • صى المفردات الأكثر أهمية المطلوب من الطالب إتقائها.

• Master your Vocabulary يقضى على جميع مشاكل حفظ المفردا**ت (**ملحق Master).

• Glossary لحصيلة أكبر (للمزيد) من المفردات اللغوية نهاية الكتاب.

SB pages 16 & 17 WB page 81

حوار سفر	passport (n)	عدلسه	assistant (n)
بدس ايتوقع	guess (ed) (v)	يرسل بالبريد الالكتروني	email (ed) (v)
رکل - زاویهٔ	corner (n)	مرة أخرى - ثانية	again (adv)
بطارية	battery (n)	يسقط - يرمي	drop (ped) (v)
مجاة	suddenly (adv)	استمارة - نموذج	form (n)
فاعدة	rule (n)	وسط المدينة	town centre (n)

Lesson 4 SB page 18 WB page 82



statue (n)	تمثال	south (n)	ديوب
wooden (adj)	خشبی	style (n)	استوب - طريقة - طراز
carpet (n)	سجادة	jewellery (n)	W.paylic
quality (n)	جودة	decorated (adj)	فريد - مردره
village (n)	فريه	designs (n)	رسومات - بغوشات
shells (n)	صده - قوافع	soft (adj)	ULL I part
coast (n)	wick	colourful (adj)	فلون
Arabic (n), (adj)	النعة العربية - عربي (الجنسية)	instructions (n)	أطليقات

مواد خام plic مواد خام

wood	خشب	stone	כבָּגָ
leather	جلد مدبوغ	metal	معدن
wool	صوف	plastic	بلاستيك
glass	زجاج		

تصريف الأفعال غير المنتظمة Conjugation of Irregular Verbs

المضارع Present		الماضي Past	التصريف الثالث .P.P
send	يرسل	sent	sent
lose	يفقد - يخسر	lost	lost
find out	يكتشف	found out	found out
choose	يختار	chose	chosen
meet	يقابل	met	met
break	يكسر	broke	broken

مثلازمات لفظية Collocations

do	homework	یؤدی الواجب الم نزلی	earn	money	يجنى نقود
lose	homework	يفقد الواجب	have	a problem	لديه مشكلة
follow	a rule	يتبع قاعدة	get	information o	يحصل على معلوما

II Reading and Listening



on Lesson 3 SB page 16

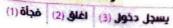


Hello. How can I help you, Aya?

Hi. I bought a laptop last week. Yesterday, when I was doing my homework, it suddenly "turned off.".

Now, I can't log in and I think I lost my work!

Check Vocabulary







Was the computer plugged in (4)?

Yes, it was plugged in. I was charging⁽⁵⁾ the battery⁽⁶⁾.





Did you turn on (7) the computer again?

Yes, but then it said my password (8) to log in was wrong.



One moment please, I just emailed⁽⁹⁾ you a form⁽¹⁰⁾ to fill in⁽¹¹⁾ to get a new password. Log in again with that information⁽¹²⁾. I hope that works⁽¹³⁾!



OK, thank you.



Check Vocabulary

متصل بالكمرباء (4)	يشدن (5)	بطارية (6)	يشغل جهاز (7)	كلمة السر (8)
يرسل بالبريد اللكتروني (9)	استمارة (10)	يملأ / يسجل معلومات (11)	معلومات (12)	اتمنی ان تنجح (13)

on Lesson 4 SB page 18

Egyptian Handicrafts(1)

The best quality (2) and prices!

These beautiful wooden (3) boxes can be used for jewellery (4). They are decorated (5) with shells in traditional designs (6). They are made by artists (7) near the coast.



The leather industry (8) is one of the oldest in Egypt and our bags are the best quality. The leather is very soft (9).



Check Vocabulary

درف بدوية (۱)	(2) 6393	خشیی (3)	مجوهرات (4)	مزین (5)
نقوشات / رسومات تقليدية (6)	فنانین (7)	صناعة الجلود (8)	(9) watal peti	ALLEY.

We sell many different types of pots in different colours for your home. The artists paint the pots with traditional Arabic designs.

Egypt has a long history of making beautiful carpets. These colourful, modern carpets will look amazing in any home.

Call or email us to find out about special offers (12).



Check Vocabulary

(10) أوفي (11) أوفي - يرسم (11) أوفي (10)

on Lesson 3 WB page 81

Congratulation (1) on buying a new computer ! Here are the instructions (2) for how to use it:

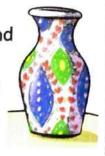
- First, plug in (3) the computer. To charge (4) the battery, leave it for three or four hours.
- Now, turn on the computer.
- When the computer is ready it will ask you to fill in some information.
- Write your name and choose a password that nobody can guess.
- 5. Now, you can log in to your computer and start using it.
- Don't forget to turn off your computer when you are not using it.

Check Vocabulary

يسجَل دخول (7) كلفة السر (6) جاهرَ (5) يشدن (4) قم بتوصيل الجهار بالكهرباء (3) تعليمات (2) تهالينا (1

on Lesson 4 WB page 82

The south (1) of Egypt is famous for (2) its beautiful handicrafts (3). People who live here sell carpets (4), baskets and colourful (5) pots. Some women in a village (6) near Aswan also make beautiful handicrafts from the leaves (7) of trees. In other parts of Egypt, people make handicrafts from wood (8) and leather (9). These handicrafts are very popular (10) with tourists, and help the Egyptians to earn money(11).



Check Vocabulary

جنوب (۱)	مشمور بـ (2)	حرف/أعمال يدوية (3)	سجاد (4)	ملون (5)	مَرية (6)
اوراق شجر (7)	خشب (8)	جلد (مصنع) (9)	محبوب (10)	يجنى المال (11)	1

deoscript

Ceramics(1) is the word we use to describe pots, vases(2), bowls(3) and tiles (4) that are made from clay (5). Clay is a type of mud (6) which you can use to make ceramics. This man is using clay to make a vase. We can then paint the ceramics to make them both more colourful and more beautiful.

The Ancient Egyptians made some of the earliest ceramics in the world. They used clay from both the River Nile in the south of Egypt and from the city of Qena(7).

The Ancient Egyptians used both kinds of clay to make some ceramics that you can still see today.

This vase is almost four thousand years old. It was made from Qena clay. Qena clay makes pots are whiter than those made from Nile clay.

This vase is even older. It is almost five thousand years old and it was made from clay from the Nile. Neither vase is painted. People probably used both of these vases to carry water.

This plate (8) Is from the nineteenth century (9). This plate is even older. It is from the eleventh century. Both plates are from Egypt and they are both painted beautifully.

Egyptian ceramics are very beautiful. Do you have any at home?

Check Vocabulary

اللواني الفخارية أو الخزفية 🕕	مزهریات (2)	أوعية عميقة (سلطانية) (١)	(4) bl lų	ملمال (5)	_
طمی / طین (۱۱)	مدينة قنا (7)	طبق (8)	القرن الناسع عشر 🕛		

General Notes on Reading & Listening

- ... اسم جمع + صفة تفضيل + one of the (be) ex.: - Aya is one of the tallest girls in school.
- 2 fill in fill with
 - * fill in يملئ (بيانات - استمارة)
 - ex.: Fill in this form, please. We want to know information about you. * fill ... with ... ىملأ ... بـ
 - ex.: Toka filled the bottle with cold water.
- 3 win / gain / earn
 - * win (won won)

- يفوز بـ (جائزة مباراة مسابقة ...)
- ex.: Hoda won a gold medal in judo.
- * gain (ed)

- پکسب / پکتسب (معلومات وزن خبرة ...)
- ex.: He is wise. He gained much experience in life.
- * earn (ed)

- رکسب (مال **-** معیشة ...)
- ex.: Mr Mohab has earned a lot of money in Saudi Arabia.
- 4 (be) used to / (be) used for
 - * (be) used to + (inf.)

- ىستخدم فى
- ex.: A microwave is used to heat cold food.
- * (be) used for (inf. + ing)

- يستخدم في
- ex.:- A microwave is used for heating cold food.

تعبیرات وحروف جر هامة Prepositions السيرات وحروف جر هامة

talk to بتحدث إلى (شخص) talk about ىتحدث عن (شيء) get a new password يحصل على كلمة سر جديدة send a form ريسل نموذج أو استمارة (**be**) made by a really cool new phone هاتف جدید رائع حقًا walk down the road feel very bad

walk along ... پوشی بامتداد run around a corner (الزاوية) يجرى حول الناصية (الزاوية) take ... to prison بسدن (شخص) مصنوع بواسطة come in many colours يأتي بعدة ألوان in traditional designs يمشي على الطريق به رسومات تقليدية in different colours پشعر بالسوء الشديد بالوان مختلفة

make beautiful handicrafts

يقوم بأعمال يجوية جميلة

(be) interested in (n./ inf. + ing) ఎρίσο popular with

sell in many shops

(be) famous for

يبيع في مطات مختلفة

J 190min

مشهور لدی / محبوب بـ

On Vocabulary

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

0	Key vocabulary			
	1. Some websites a	sk you to In	using your email.	■ Common a More
	a. log	b. plug	c. turn	d. make
	2. The battery is em	pty. I need to	It.	
	a. choose	b. charge	c. run into	d. make
	3. Don't forget to	your compute	er when you aren't	using it.
	a. turn on	b. turn out	c. turn into	d. turn off
	4. Aswan is famous		from leaves.	
	a. bowls	b. handicrafts	c. statues	d. batteries
1	SB and WB Exercises			تدریبات من کتاب الط
	5. SB I just emailed		in to get a new	password.
	a. fill	b. log	c. check	d. sell
	6. 11 lost some h			1
		b. broke	c. charged	d. ran
	a. put			
	7. WE The TV is not	b. passed	c loaged	d. charged
	a. plugged	b, passeu	thout the	-
	8. W You can't use	this computer wi	c password	d. passport
	a. address	and the same of th	c. password	
0	El-Moasser Exercis	05	J	تدريبات كتاب المعاص
	9. These beautiful l	handicrafts help th		
	a. do	b. earn	c. lose	d. have
	10. Can you tl	ne meaning of the	word?	
	a. guess	b. park	c. address	d. put
	11. The expensive b	elts are made of		
		b leather		d. metal

c. stone

c. found

d. decorated

b. leather

b. done

a. cotton

a, had

12. This vase is with shells.

Language Notes, Expressions & Prepositions

13. This icon is used for the website.

a, enter b. entered

c. enters

d. entering

14. Giza is famous the Pyramids and the Sphinx.

a. of

b. for

c. at

d. in

15. Sally is interested traditional art.

b. of

c. for

d. about

16. These shirts are sold different sizes and colours.

a. about

b. off

c. in

d. with

17. It's fantastic to walk the Nile.

a. along

b. round

c. around d. ahead

Vocabulary Study:

Synonyms and	Antony	ms	، ومتضادات	مترادفات
الكلمة Word		المرادف Synonyms الكلمة		الوضاد
يبدأ start turn on		begin	inish نھی	ینهی - ینا
		switch on	turn off – shut d فئ	own یغلق / یط
remember	يتذكر	recognise - recall	forget	ينسى
true	صحيح	right - correct	false - wrong	خاطئ
log in (لنظام الكثروني)	يسجل دخوا	start using the system / sign in	log out - sign ou ج (من نظام الڪترونی)	
colourful	ملون	bright	plain	سادة

Prefixes & Suffixes	نة وناهية	مقاطع بادأ	
Prefix / Suffix	الوظيفة Function	Examples	أمثلة
~ en	تحول إسم إلى صفة	wooden	خشبی
- ful	تحول إسم إلى صفة	colourful	ملون
- er	تحول فعل الى إسم فاعل	robber	لص
-al	تحول إسم إلى صفة	traditional	تقليدي

-Xercise on Vocabulary Study

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- - c. high b. low a. turned
- 2. "Plain" is the opposite of
 - b. ugly a. modern
- c. colourful
- - c. en b. - ion a. -ure
- 4. The word "traditional" is formed from the word " c. tradition

b. true

- a. trade 5. The word "rob" can be turned into a noun by adding
 - d. est c. -ist b. -ir

Language

زمن الماضي البسيط The Past Simple Tense

التكوين Formation

a. -er

Affirmative Statements

> الجمل الخبرية المثبتية

a) Regular verbs:

أ) الأفعال المنتظمة:

d. right

d. - in

d. try

d. beautiful

Subject Jelal

التحريف الثانى للفعل

b) Irregular verbs:

ب) الأفعال غير المنتظمة:

هناك أفعال غير منتظمة لا تتبع هذه القاعدة مثل :

الفعل	الماضي	الفعل	الماضي
cut	cut	put	put
eat	ate	drink	drank
swim	swam	go	went
sleep	slept	ride	rode

للحظ أن:

يتم استخدام (verb to be) في زمن الماضي كالأتي :

We / They / You ______ were / weren't

ex. - It was very exciting.

زمن الماضي المستمر The Past Continuous Tense

التكوين Formation

1) Affirmative statements:

- ex. I was eating my dinner.
 - They were studying maths.

2) Negative statements:

- ex. I was not eating my dinner.
 - They were not studying maths.

لاحظ الاختصارات الاتية :

was not —→ wasn't

were not —→ weren't

3) Interrogative:

٣) صيغة الاستفهام: * السؤال بـ (ممل) :

Yes / No question :

subject Were . Iclan

- ex. Was she holding a camera?
 - Yes, she was.
- No. she wasn't.
- Were they watching TV?
- Yes, they were.
- No, they weren't.

* Wh - question:

* السؤال بإستخدام كلمة إستفهام:

was subject الفاعل كلمة الاستفعام

- ex. What were you doing at 5 o'clock yesterday?
 - I was doing my homework.
- ex. What was she doing yesterday evening?
 - She was brushing her teeth.

الاستخدام (\$300)

- بستخدم زمن الماضي المستمر للتعبير عن حدث كان مستمرًا في وقت معين في الماضي.

ex. - I was watching TV at 6 o'clock yesterday.

- كما يستخدم زمن الماضي المستمر أيضًا للتعبير عن فعل كان مستمرًا في الماضي وقطعه حدث آخر قصير في زمن الماضي البسيط.

ex. - While I was doing my homework, the telephone rang.

لاحظ الأتي :

Past Continuous Tense Past Simple Tense While/As/Just as حانثا/اثناء زمن الماضى المستمر زمن الماضي البسيط

ex. - While we were waiting to go into the museum, I saw my friend Amir.



Stop here! on Language (Answered & Explained)

هذا الجزء نقدم للطالب تدريب على القاعدة اللغوية مجاب عنه ومصحوب بشرج أسباب اختيار الجابة الصحيحة.

• Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- 1. While Hany his car, he crashed into a tree.
 - a. drove
- b. drives
- c. was driving
- d. is driving
- 2. This morning, I to the town centre with my dad.
- b. went
- c. goes
- d. was going
- 3. I the glass while I was leaving the kitchen.
- b. dropping
- c. drop
- d. dropped

No.	The same	Answer + Explanation الإجابة والتوضيح
1	c	لبملة تعبر عن حدث كان مستمرًا في الماضي وقطعة حدث آخر و (While)
		تبعها زمن الماضي المستمر.
2	b	لجملة تعبر عن حدث تم وانتهى في الماضي لذا الاختيار يكون ماضي بسيط.
3	d	بسبق (while) جملة في زمن الماضي البسيط والجملة تعبر عن حدث قطع اَخر
		في الماضي لذا اللختيار يكون ماضي بسيط.

Exercises on Language

1. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

SB and WB Exercises

تدريبات من كتاب الطالب والتدريبات

- 1. SB We the bus to the shopping centre and I bought a really cool new phone!
 - a. take
- b. took
- c. takes
- d. taking
- 2. SB As I my friend the phone to look at, he dropped it.
 - a. gave
- b. giving
- c. was giving
- d. give

- 3. 55 The phone! My friend felt very sad.
 - a. breaks
- b. broken
- c. broke
- d. was breaking

2	El-Moasser Exercis	es		تدريبات كتاب المعاصر
	4. As Omar was run	him.		
	a. stop	b. stopping		d. stopped
	5. Yesterday, I	some of my frier	nds at school.	
	a. met	b. meet	c. was meeting	d. will meet
	6. I listened to mus	ic while we	to the sports cen	tre.
	a. walked	b. were walking		
	7. There an e	xciting match on	TV yesterday.	
	a. were	b. was	c. does	d. did
	8. Ivery sad	when my friend Al	li was taken to ho	spital.
	a. am	b. be	c. was	d. were
	9 I was read	ing a story, the ligl	nt went off.	
	a. While		c. Before	d. After
	10. While dow			
	a. walk	b. walked	c. walking	d. was walking
2	. Complete the sent	ences with the cor	rect form of the w	vord(s) in brackets:
0	SB and WB Exercises		لب والتدريبات	تدريبات من كتاب الطا
	 1. My friend fel 	t very bad and I	(be) sad as w	ell.
	2. SB I (show	v) my friends my n ad.	ew phone while	we were walking
	3. SB This morning		e town centre wi	th my mum
	4. 58 (Be) th			5
	+ 1/2 Chillipped Annual Control Control	- II 100		
	El-Moasser Exercise	es	Į.	تدريبات كتاب المعاصر
	5. Fady (be) r	m <mark>aking tea wh</mark> en A	Ayman called him	
	6. What (be)	you doing when H	lassan came hom	e ?
	7. While I was charg	ing my phone, my	father (con	ne) into my room.
	8. Israa (lose)	her keys while she	e was running.	
	9. Safaa (feel	ing) sad when Hal	a was ill.	
	10. Salma slept while	she (listene	ed) to music.	

Corner



_{يرقي}ة التعامل مع معارات (القراعة - الكتابة - التحدث) في الورقة الامتحالية لكل درس على حده. للمزيد من الشرح والتدريبات على مهارات (القراءة - الكتابة - التحدث) (Master Your Term) فعي ملدق Part 2

Reading Corner

من كتاب المعاصر صفحة ٩٦ و ٩٧ ثم قم Reading on lesson 4 SB page 18 قط قم يندرت على اجابة بعض أسئلة قطعة الفهم طبقاً لمواصفات الورقة الامتحانية

Answer the following questions:

- Siving the main idea الرئيسية
 - What is the main idea of the passage?
 - The Egyptian handicrafts.
- Extracting information استخراج المعلومات
 - 2. How were the wooden boxes decorated ?
- Critical thinking skill مهارة التفكير النقدى
 - 3. What do you think of the Egyptian handicrafts?

Writing Corner

محارة الكتابة

A. Read the sentences

هَلْ نَسَاعَدَكُ عَلَى كَتَابِةَ فَقَرَةَ إِنْشَالِيةَ / رَسَالَةَ بَرِيدَ الْكَتَرُونَي

"Handicrafts in the south of Egypt" الحرف اليدوية في جنوب مصر

The south of Egypt is famous for its beautiful handicrafts.

بشنهر جنوب الصعيد في مصر بالحرف اليدوية الجميلة

2. You can buy beautiful carpets, baskets and colourful pots.

بمخبك شراء سجاد جميل وسللت وأواني ملونة.

3. Women, there, are so clever.

ً النساء هناك ماهرات جدًا

4. Tourists like these handicrafts.

^{؛ بدب} السياح تلك المشغولات اليد**و**ية.

B. Building sentences

Read and complete:

leather - password - was - Plug - Log

- in the computer to charge the battery.
- بعد براسة القواص والمفردات اللغوية الخاصة بالبرسين

- 3. Hassan can't remember his described to the standard of the
- 4. As I having lunch, the telephone rang.

C. Writing a formal Email

كتابة رسالل البريد الإلكتروني الرسمية :

المزيد من الشرح (مهارات الكتابة) بمكتك الرجوع إلى ملحق (Master Your Term)

نموذج لرسالة البريد البلكتروني الرسمي "Model formal email"

Imagine that you work for a shop in another country. You want to buy some items from Egyptian handicrafts to sell. Send a formal email to Mr Ashraf, the manager of big handicraft business in Cairo. Mr Ashraf's email address is ashraf@elmoasser.com. Your name is Magdy and your email address is magdy@freebusiness.com.

From: magdy@freebusiness.com → "From" Line الراسل

To: ashraf@elmoasser.com > "To" line

Subject : Asking about some Egyptian handicrafts >> "Subject" Line

Dear Mr Ashraf, → Greeting àpuil

I am interested in buying some of your handicrafts to sell in my private shop in London. Can you send me a list of your handicraft products and their prices? I would like to know how long the delivery will take and how much will it cost. Do you have special offers? Also, I want to have an idea about the sizes and colours of your products.



Yours faithfully,

Magdy

Closing الخاتمة

· write	e an email of about (110) words to your friend Manar to tell her at
	"Your favourite Egyptian handicrafts"
	name is Safaa and your email address is safaaali@gmail.com. You d's email address is manarnour@gmail.com.

.83	

Describing a problem with technology: : وصف مشكلة مع التكنولوجيا

- 1. I bought a new mobile yesterday. ا. اشتريت هاتفًا جديدًا بالأمس.
- The mobile fell off while I was running. ٢. لقد سقط الهاتف بينما كنت أجرى.
- ع. تحطمت الشاشة وكنت حزينًا جدًا. . 3. The screen was damaged and I was very sad. "
- 4. I went to the shop to have another screen. ذهبت للمحل للحصول على شاشة أخرى..



◄ ليتعرف الطالب على مدى اتقانه لأهداف الوحدة.

♦ في حالة عدم إجتيازه يتم الانتقال إلى صفحة Review

لمراجعة الوحدة مرة اخري.

General Exercises

On

LESSONS 3 & 4

· Understand · Apply

· Create

Walaa is j	ohoning a sales assistar	it to buy a table	t online.			
Walaa			ou are advertising بعنن ?			
sales assis	tant: Yes, of course. (1)					
Walaa	Walaa : I want to know some information about them. (2)?					
sales assis	tant : The price ranges 29	from 5.000 to يترا	25.000 pounds.			
Walaa	: How can I see them	1?				
sales assist	tant : (3)					
Walaa	: OK. I have received tablet ?	your post. How	much is the second			
sales assist	ant: (4)					
Walaa	Walaa : That's good! I'll buy it. How can I get it?					
sales assist	ant : (5) please.	Give me your n	ame and address,			
2 Choose th	ne correct answer from	na, b, c or d:				
1 WB Nov	v my phone is not worki	ng!I need to	the battery.			
a. charg	A STATE OF THE PARTY OF THE PAR	c. do	d. make			
2. My uncl	e built a new factory to	carpets.				
a. make	b. give	c. do	d. buy			
3. Many co	mputers ask you to	in before you	can use them.			
a. put	b. log	c. enter	d, turn			
	carry that box ? It	's very heavy.	Jugad			

c. wooden

c. out

5. WB When you want to use a machine, first you need to turn it

b. wool

b. in

a. woolen

a. off

d. wood

d. on

6 Apply

6. We bought a	carpet made of b. wood	c gold	d. leather
7. This bag is m a. wood	h stone	c. glass	d. leather
8. While	to my favourite singer b. listens	, my mom was coo c. to listen	d, listening
9. While I	lunch, the bell range b. eats	c. ate	d. was eating
a. has Sama o	do	b. is Sama do d. was Sama	doing
1. When I went 2. What were ye 3. As the robbe stopped him	r (run) with th	ne lady's bag, son	ne police officers
4 WB Complete	the text with work ves - village - on - c	ds from the list	:
The south of who live here so women in a (3) from the (4)	f Egypt is famous for ell (2)	r its beautiful (1) baskets and colo swan also make b	. People urful pots. Some peautiful handicraft
	rrect word: use this computer was giving my frie		

6 Write an email of about (110) words to your friend John who lives in

Your name is Seif and your email address is seifsalah@almoasser.com.

Spain about tourist attractions in Egypt:

Your friend's email address is john17@gmail.com.

5&6

58 pages 19 & 20 WB pages 83 & 84



Vocabulary

Key Vocabulary

order (ed) (v), (n) يطلب - طلب تجاري	horrible (adj)	مربع - شنيع
Grade .		مقال نقدي - مراجعة
machine (n) aiusto	jewellery box (n)	صندوق مجوهرات (خلی)
email (ed) (v), (n)	call (ed) back (v)	المتهاد الإنصال
پرسل بالبرید الإلکترونی - رسالهٔ برید الکترونی	online shopping (n	التسوق عبر الانترنت (

تنويه 🔹 Key Vocabulary مى المفردات الأكثر أهمية المطلوب من الطالب إتقائها.

■ Master your Vocabulary يقضى على جميع مشاكل حفظ المفردات (ملحق Master). ■ Glossary لحصيلة أكبر (للمزيد) من المفردات اللغ**وية نماية الكتاب**.

Lesson 5	SB page 19

Lesson 5	3 page 19 WB page 83		duten
delivery company (n) role - play (ed) (v) customer (n) product (n) shop (ped) (v) , (n) seller (n)	تبادل ال أدوار زبون / ع ميل مُنتج يتسوق - محل	electronically (adv) explain (ed) (v) size (n) trusted (adj) sources (n) user (n)	الڪٽرونيَا دجم - مقاس موثوق به مصادر مستخدم

SB page 20 WB page 84 agree (d) (v) quick (adj) cross (n) , (adj) carpet (n) Alexandria Electrics شركة الاسكندرية للصناعات الكمربائية	mix (ed) up (v) describe (d) (v) points (n) pros and cons	بنوان (مقال - کتاب) خلط بصف قاط فزایا وعیوب بص
--	---	---

Conjugation of Irregular Verbs

تصريف الأفعال غير المنتظمة

Present		الماضي Past	التصريف الثالث .P.P
keep	يحفظ - يظل	kept	kept
sav	يقول	said	said

هذه التعريفات مجمعة من كتاب الطالب وكتاب التدريبات وقاموس التعريفات (glossary) في نهاية كتاب التدريبات.



ادرس هذه التعريفات Study these definitions something you make when you are unhappy about something شکوی complaint when a customer asks someone to send, bring or make طلب تجاری order something for them يعاود الاتصال return a phone call call back يرسل رسالة بالبريد الإلكتروني to send a message electronically

Collegations

email

متللزمات لفظية

	Collocations				10.0	
	make	a complaint	يقدم شكوي	get	angry	ثعطب
+		a complaint	605m JC 2U	keep	calm	بظل هادئ
	answer	a complaint	الرد على سدوي	Manh		

Listening and Reading





on Lesson 5 SB page 19

Hisham: Hello, Egyptian Handicrafts(1). How can I help you?

: Hello, I want to make a complaint (2).

Hisham: Oh, dear. What's the problem?

: I ordered (3) some pots three weeks ago for my shop. Your

website(4) says the delivery(5) takes five days, but I'm still waiting!

Check Vocabulary

خدمة التوصيل (5) موقع إلكتروني (4) قدم طلب (3) شكوى (2) أعمال يدوية (1)

Hisham: I'm very sorry about that. Can I take your name and the order number, please?

: Yes, it's Ali Ahmed, and the order number is 3-4-4-5-3-8. Ali

I emailed (6) you last week.

Hisham: Ah yes, Mr Ahmed. You ordered 50 pots for delivery to Kenya, is

that right?

: That's correct. Ali

Hisham: Hmm, yes the delivery company has your order. I'll call the delivery company and ask them what the problem is and I'll call

you back (7). Can I take your phone number please?

: Yes, it's 254 667578. Can you call me back today, please? Ali

Hisham: Of course.

: Thank you. Goodbye. Ali

Check Vocabulary

• سأعاود الاتصال بك (7) أرسل رسالة بريد الكتروني (6)

on Lesson 5 WB page 83

Mrs Nahla: Good afternoon. I want to make a complaint, please.

Assistant : Oh, dear. What's the problem?

Mrs Nahla: I ordered a new kettle from your website, but when the

delivery arrived this morning, it was a microwave!

Assistant: I'm very sorry about that. Can I take your name, please?

Mrs Nahla: Yes, it's Mrs Nahla.

Assistant: Ah, yes. I'll call the delivery

company and ask them to send

you the correct item.

Mrs Nahla: Can they take the microwave

when they come?

Assistant : Yes, of course.





on Lesson 6 SB page 20

*****Great Machine (1)

I bought this as a present (2) for my parents. They are very happy with it. It looks great in their kitchen and it is easy to use(3). It also makes a really delicious cup of coffee. The delivery(4) was quick, too!



* Don't buy this machine!

First, I waited two weeks for delivery and then when the machine arrived it was broken !

It looked good but it was very noisy(5) and the coffee was cold and horrible (6). I sent it back (7) and I will buy a different one.

Check Vocabulary

يعيدها (7) مربع - شنيع (6) صاخب (5) خدمة التوصيل (4) سهلة الاستخدام (3) مدية (1) ماكينة (1)

on Lesson 6 WB page 84

Review 1:

I bought this microwave as a present for my parents. They were not very happy with it. It looks good in the kitchen and the delivery was quick. However, when they used it, the food did not cook very well. It was horrible. I sent it back and will buy a different one.



Review 2:

I bought this speaker as a present for my cousin. She is very happy with it. It looks great and it is very easy to use. You can use it on your television or to play music. There is only one problem with it : her parents think it is too loud!



on Lesson 7 SB page 21

Yesterday, I went to the market and I bought some new things for my bedroom. While I was shopping, I saw my friend Lara. She helped me to choose a new carpet Today, my dad painted my bedroom. Now it was blue. It looked really good!

on Lesson 7 WB page 85

My older brother Karim is very excited because he has a new phone. First, he needed to charge the battery. To do this, he plugged in the phone and turned it on. Then he left it for a few hours. Next, he needed to fill in some information about himself. The phone asked for a password. Now, he can log in and use his phone. It's very nice!



Huda: Look at these two wooden boxes. Do you like

either of them, Lama?

Lama: Yes, I like both of them, but they are expensive.

Huda: What about these pots? I like the red one and

the blue one.

Lama: Sorry, I like neither the red one nor the blue

one, but the yellow one is nice.

Huda: We should choose something that we both

like. I think we should either buy the leather

bag or the carpet.

Lama: OK, let's buy the leather bag. The carpet is a bit big!





General Notes on Reading & Listening

order order

يأمر - بطلب

* order (ed) (v)

ex.: - She ordered him to clean his room.

 Lordered a coffee machine but I got the wrong item. أمر (تعليمات صادرة من مستوى أعلى) - طلب

* order (n)

ex.: - The officer gave orders to the soldiers to move on. - I called the delivery company because the order was late.

* in order في الترتيب Students to put the words in order,

🛂 complain - complaint

complain (ed) (v) (about - against)

9544

🕵 🔚 🚻 Hani complained about not having enough pocket money.

* complaint (n)

5950

ex.: - Hani made a complaint about not having enough pocket money.

8 get ≈ become

رصيح (عندما يتبع الفعل get صفة)

ex.: Roaa got angry when her father didn't buy her a new mobile.

تمبیرات وحروف جر هامة Prepositions & Prepositions

order an item	يطلب سلعة	work for	يعمل لصالح / لدى
I'm still waiting	لازلت منتظرًا	sorry about	اسف بشان
call back	يعيد الإتصال	think about	پفکر في
try not to get angry	يحاول ألا يغضب	unhappy about	غير سعيد بشان
explain the problem	يشرح المشكلة	Oh, dear!	
wait for	ينتظر	نبير عن الانزعاج أو الدهشة)	باه / پاسلام (تستخدم للته
ask for	يطلب	It doesn't work.	إنها لا تعمل.
as a present for	گهدیة ل	agree with	يتفق مع

EXERCISE on Vocabulary

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

Key vocabulary

- 1. The customer made a / an after receiving a wrong item.
 - a. text
- b. complaint
- c. interview
- d. topic
- You can food online on some apps.
 - a. cook
- b. order
- c. keep
- d. bake
- 3. The mixer خلاط is a for mixing foods.
 - a. kitchen
- b. pocket
- c. toy
- d. machine

4. City	life has pro	s and .		
a. co	oins	b. cons	c. oils	d. onions
5. My 9	grandma ke	eps her gold in a b	peautiful bo	DX.
a. je	wellery	b. match	c. recycle	d. tools
SB and	WB Exercises	į.	ب والتدريبات	تدريبات من كتاب الطال
	Online shop re you	oing can be done a from!	nytime, but you ne	eed to be careful
a. sh	ор	b. ask	c. complain	d. answer
7. WB T	o ba	ck is to return a ph	one call.	
a. ca	II	b. cool	c. carry	d. complain
8. W BT	o is t	o send a message	electronically.	
a. ad	dress	b. write	c. email	d. order
9. WBT	he toaster v	wasl sent i	t back and will bu	y a different one.
a. fin	e	b. quick	c. horrible	d. amazing
El-Moa	sser Exercis	es	a	تدريبات كتاب المعاصر
10. Try to	o you	r bag to help you	look for it.	
a. de	scribe	b. include	c. find	d. make
11. You s	should buy	items froms	sources.	
a. ho	rrible	b. terrible	c. trusted	d. wrong
12. Read	the text an	d give it a suitable		
a. ite	m	b. role	c. title	d. order
Langua	ge Notes, E	xpressions & Prep	oositions	
13. Try n	ot to	angry when you h	ear the news.	T. Ja
a. ge	t	b. make	c. find	d. do
14. These	e sentences	areup and	the teacher wants	s us to put them
in ord a. de	livered	b. mixed	c. turned	d. given
15. She is	s unhappy	the order as	c. back	e. d. in
a. on		b. about		23.5
	are you thi	nking , Leen b. for	c. with	d. from

Vocabulary Study:

Synonyms an	مترادفات ومتضادات				
Word &	iotsli	Antonym shall			
happy	view	glad	unhappy	حزبت	
seller	بانع	shop assistant	customer	June - Uguj	
positive	ایجابی	good - helpful - practical	negative	بيبلني	
beautiful	جميل	nice - pretty	horrible	مربع اشنيع	

Prefixes & Suffixes	Market West	يقاطع بادئة وناهية			
Prefix / Suffix	الوظيمة Function	Examples alloi			
un -	يندماا سقد يلحث	un happy نزین			
- ed	تكون صفة من فعل	trusted a ggige			
-t	تكون إسم من فعل	complaint شکوی			
- er	تكون اسم فاعل من فعل	user مستخدم seller عنانع			
- y	تكون صفة من اسم	noisy			

on Vocabulary Study

© Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. "Negative" is the	opposite of		
a. positive	b. boring	c. complex	d. pleased
2.1 bought this to	ster <mark>and it</mark> was "bea	utiful". "Beautiful"	can be replaced
by the word ver			
a. glad	b. easy	c. horrible	d. nice
3. The words "selle	r" and "customer" a	'e	
a. the same	b. synonyms	c. equals	d. opposite
4. Yon can make a	noun from the verb	"sell" by adding)*****(****; *
a al	b. – er	c y	d. – tion
5. The word "comp	olaint" is a/an	•	
a. verb	b. adjective	c. noun	d. adverb
6. You can make a	n adjective from the	noun "noise" by a	adding
a Iv	b y	c. – er	d ful

Skills Corner



كيفية التعامل مع معارات (القراءة - الكتابة - التحدث) في الورقة الامتحانية لكل درس على حده. للمزيد من الشرح والتدريبات على مهارات (القراءة - الكتابة - التحدث) Part 2 في ملحق (Master Your Term)

. Reading Corner

قم بقراءة Reading on lesson 7 WB page 85 من كتاب الطالب صفحة ١١٧ ثم قم بالتدرب على إجابة بعض أسئلة قطعة الفهم طبقًا لمواصفات الورقة الامتحانية.

Answer the following questions:

- فهم ما يشير إليه الضمير Onderstanding reference
 - 1. What does the pronoun "it" refer to?
 - It refers to Karim's phone.
- Extracting information استخراج المعلومات
 - 2. What should Karim do to charge the battery?
- مهارة التفكير النقدى Critical thinking skill -
 - 3. Why do you think Karim is very excited?

Writing Corner

معارة الكتابة

A. Read the sentences

جمل تساعدك على كتابة فقرة إنشالية / رسالة بريد الكتروني

"The coffee machine" الة صنع القهوة

- ا. آلة صنع القهوة هي جهازي المفضل. . The coffee machine is my favourite item.
- 2. I bought one as a present for my father.
- 3. It makes a really delicious cup of coffee. تقوم بصنع فنجان قهوة لذيذ فعلا. ٣

B. Building sentences

• Read and complete:

complaint - either - toaster - Positive - Negative

- people think only about the bad things.
- 2. I bought this _____ as a present for my mother.
- 3. You can buy the carpet or the chair.
- 4. You can make a when you are unhappy about something.

تنويه

بعر دراسة القواعد والمفردات اللغوية الخاصة بالدرسين قم بالتدريب على بناء الجملة

C. Writing a product Review

بتابة نموذج لتقييم مُنتج

رلوزيد من الشرح (مهارات الكتابة) يمكنك الرجوع إلى ملحق (Master Your Term)

Write a product review about a coffee machine advertised online.

This is a new type of coffee machines. It is produced by a good producer. It is made of good materials. It is safe and easy to use. It is available in two colours : red or black. However, the machine is expensive compared to other machines. It also uses much more electricity than similar products. If you don't mind paying more for the product and the electricity it will use, then you can buy this high-quality coffee machine.



D. Practise by yourself

ندرب على كتابة نموذج تقييم لمنتج

- Write a product review of about 110 words on :

"A microwave you bought online"

Speaking Corner

معارة التحدث

Discussing a complaint :

مناقشة شكوي :

Customer



Assistant



- 1. I want to make a complaint.
 - **أود أن أقدم شكوي.**
- 2. I ordered a phone two days ago from your website, but I received a different one
 - طلبت هاتفًا من موقعكم منذ يومين، لكن استلمت جمازا مختلفا.
- What's the problem?
- ما المشكلة ؟
- I'm very sorry about that. I'll give orders to the delivery to change it in 5 hours.
 - أنا أعتذر جدًا بشأن ذلك. سأعطى تعليماتي لخدمة التسليم أن يبدله خلال خمس ساعات.

General Exercises

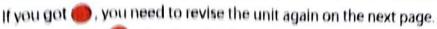
LESSONS 5 & 6 · Create

1	Comple	te the folio	owing dialogue	2						
	Tarek is	making a co	omplaint about	kettle that he	has bought.					
	Tarek	: Hello, can	I speak to the ma	anager, please?						
	Assistant	: Yes, of co	urse. (1)	?						
	Tarek	: I have box	ught a kettle and	I want to make	a complaint.					
	Assistant	t : (2)	?							
	Tarek	Tarek : it doesn't work well.								
	Assistant : Did you read the instructions well ?									
	Tarek : (3)									
	Assistant	: Why?								
	Tarek	:(4)								
	Assistant	: Sorry, give	e me your details	and I will send y	ou one.					
	Tarek	: (5)								
2	Choose	the correct	answer from a	, b , c or d :						
	1	shopping h	as positive and ne	egative sides.						
	a. Offli	ne	b. Online	c. Logging	d. Logged					
	2. I want	to a c	omplaint about t	بمعاز that device .						
	a. mak	e	b. do	c. get	d. order					
•	3. Rashw	an is really g	good at ne	w lessons.						
	a. expl	aining	b. killing	c. complaining	d. shopping					
)	4. Don't b	oe late. I'll w	ait you.							
	a. of		b. on	c. for	d. in					
	5. You sh	ould try to b	e moreab	out your study.						
	a. nega	ative	b. positive	c. terrible	d. nervous					

-	6. WB A/Ani something.	s something you	make when you	are unhappy about
	a. website	b. audience	c. evidence	d. complaint
•	7. W When a custo		ne to send or m	ake something for
	a. deliver	b. complain	c. order	d. offer
0	8. I don't want to be	7.5	e T-shirt	of them are the righ
Ĭ	colour!	ay the areas or an		
	a. Either	b. Neither	c. Both	d. And
0	9. WB This shop is no	either interesting.	cheap. Let's	go to a different one
1	a. or	b. and	c. but	d. nor
0	10. W B Alexan	dria and Port Saic	are on the Med	terranean Sea.
	a. Either	b. Neither	c.Too	d. Both
3	SS Complete the	text with these	words:	
		say - be - calm -	angry - do	
	If you need to n	nake a complaint	, try not to get a	ngry! Keep
	(1), explai	n the problem ar	nd (2) w	hat you want the
	other person to (3).			
	to help you.			
		-f-b	ande on t	مجاب عند في أنواية الكتاب
4	SB Write a review			
	"Some	ething you or you	r family bought o	nline"
				-

Self Assessment Activity

التقييم الذاتى



قَمَ بَنَقْيِرِ مَ نَفْسَكُ بَالْعَلَامَاتِ الْمُوضِحَةُ وَإِذَا خَصَلَتَ عَلَى 🌑 غَيْرَ جَيْدٍ . قُمَ بمراجعة الوحدة مرة أخرى في الصفحة النائية.

في نماية مذه الوحدة. ساكون قادرًا على أن أن أن الله At the end of this unit, I will be able to

ممتار

ويدجدا

عتا ختد

Talk about buying things in a How much is the toaster? Is there a sale on some item	
While I was playing football	, I broke my arm.
Both Heba and Shimaa visit	ed Aswan.
Neither Ali nor Hassan playe	ed tennis.
tead and write sentences using while. while.	ng both , either , neither and ther, either, both اقرأ الجمل مستخدمًا روابط
necklace	complaint
mlcrowave	decorate
toaster	password
kettle	assistant

. جزء للمتابعة في كراسة المعاصر Master your term

، جُزء للمتابعة الشَّهرية بعد كل ثلاث وحدات

لمزيد من التدريبات



on unit 2

SB page 21

WB page 85

												,	90 h	ug					ge 8	5
Speaking	1- Talking about things	in the home	الحديث عن أشياء في المنزل : A • What is the most		home?	B: The fridge is the most expensive one.	2- Buying things in a shop		شراء اشیاء فی محل : ? محسمتنه مط عز طعیت سمل • ۸	B: It is 3000 LE.	A: What is the discount on	the laptops ? B : 30 %.	3- Making a complaint		تقديم شكوى :	- Assistant: What's the problem? - You : My laptop suddenly	turned off.	stant	- Tou : Tes, it was plugged in.	 Assistant: I sent you some steps to follow.
Language	1-both / either / neither / none	رمعني كلّا من تستخده للبط س; شبئين. Both *	=	بععنى إما أو للاختيار بين شيئين Either *	- You can buy either the shirt or the		بىعىي -لا ولا وسسحدم مى اليمى	عانا الكانا عالما الما الما الما الما معاون / مساعد	laptop.	2- Using past simple and past cont.	with [As - While]	As / While past past coop	While Calmanage reading a ctory	* While Sallila Was reading a story,	ner mother called her.					
Vocabulary	ألة صنع المُصوة الله عنا	غلاية كهربية	محمص خبز کھربی	فرن کهربی (مایکرویف) * Either	عرض خاص	эğс	وجبة خفيفة	معاون / مساعد	يوصل بالمقبس الكهربي	Slop w	يزين / يزخرف	ç6cō	algo	أعمال يدوية	خدمة توصيل	Φιτο	يشدن	شكوى	ابداني	
Voc	coffee machine	kettle	toaster	microwave	special offer	necklace	snack	assistant	plug in	password	decorate	quality	colourful	handicrafts	delivery	present	charge	complaint	positive	

Writing Skill

ممسارة الكتابسة

"معالجة جديدة للفقرة الإنشائية والبريد الإلكترولي"

A paragraph / An email on

Shopping centres / Egyptian handicrafts / Online shopping / The best items of technology



Brainstorming

مجموعة أسئلة لاستثارة أفكار لكتابة الفقرة الإنشائية / رسائل البريد الإلكتروني

- What should shopping centres do to encourage customers?
- What is the most important and oldest industry in Egypt?
- Which items are made by artists in Egypt?
- How can we encourage the Egyptian handicrafts?



Vocabulary

مفردات لغوية مساعدة

Media	Shopping	Arts			
- magazines	- special offer	- decorate			
- websites	- market	- designs			
- emails	- sale	- traditional			
- posters	- discount	- carpets			
- adverts	- prices	- artists			



Expressions & Structures

تعبيرات وتراكيب مساعدة

* What is the item in your	* It's easy to
house ?	
* Neither Heba Ali visited	* While I, Ali called me.
the High Dam.	



Paragraph / Email

كتابة الفقرة الإنشائية / رسالة بريد إلكتروني

"Online shopping"	

Exam Language Bank

أهم النقاط (موضعُ إختيار) في كُلُ وحدة والتي تستطيعُ من خلالها التعامل مع تحريبات الوحدة و كُلُ التدريبات الخاصة بالمنهم



l Vocabulary

يغردان نغوية هامة قد تكون موضع اختبار

kettle	غلابة (كهربائية)	handicraft	dgir Jan
magazine	مجلة	decorate	Jų ji
industry	âctio	leather	alq
special deal	صفقة / عرض خاص	traditional	تقليدى
discount	خصم	delivery	توصيل / تسليم
charge	يشدن	complaint	3954
password	كلمة السر	customer	ربون / عميل

2 Language

فواعد لغوية هامة قد تكون موضع اختبار

- 1. The lion is more dangerous than the dog.
- 2. The kettle is cheaper than the computer.
- 3. Both Ashraf and Ayman visited Alexandria.
- 4. Neither Heba nor Marwa did the homework.
- 5. While 15: I was driving home, I saw and accident.

Check Language

- مقارنة بين اثنين في الصفات طويلة المقطع
- مقارنة بين اثنين في الصفات قصيرة المقطع
- رابط إصافة بمعنى كلا من (يوجد بالجملة فاعلين

وطائف لغوية هامة قد تكون موضع اختبار

- رابط بعمني لا ولا
 - الرابط "while" التي يتبعها ماضي مستمر ثم ماض بسيط

3. Speaking

Questions



Answers



- 1. What do you want to buy?
- 2. What's your problem?
- 3. What is the most useful item in your house?

- I want to buy a microwave.
- My computer turned off suddenly.
- The fridge is the most important item.

General Exercises

on unit 2

Linderstand

@ Apply

· Creat

Complete the following dialogue :

Janet wants to make a complaint about the coffee machine she has bought.

Janet: I went to the mail yesterday and bought a coffee machine.

Leila: (1) ?

Janet: Yes, it didn't work.

Leila: Did you plug it in?

Janet: (2)

Leila: (3) ?

Janet: It was on sale.

Leila: Did you buy it from a trusted shop?

Leila: As some people generally sell things for less price and less quality.

Janet: So what must I do?

Leila: (5)

2 Read the following, then answer the questions:

Buying and selling is part of everyday activities. People used to do this long ago. But shopping habits changed a lot. In the past you could deal directly with a person. You could talk to the seller and even ask for advice about the best quality and price. When there was a problem, you could go to the shop and explain it. At that time you could solve any problem at once.

Buying and selling today depend a lot on online activities. First, you must log on the internet and choose price, the quality and time of delivery. You must provide correct and clear information to get your product. When there is a problem, you must fill in a form describing it clearly. An online assistant will contact you. But it may take a long time to get a reply. The biggest problem is that some companies can't be reached easily because they may be far away from you or you don't know the exact address. To buy online, you must be careful about your personal information. You must keep it secret and deal with trusted online companies.

Type Chapters and comparation for		application and the second and the second	
a. Answer the foll			
 Explain why to online? Give 		blem when you buy	/ something
2. Are there any		abits today ? Name t	wo habit,
3. How can you something o		sonal information wi	nen you buy
b. Choose the co			
4. The best title	for the passage is		
a. shopping	b. buying	c. selling	d. Internet
5. Some compa	anies can't be read	hed easily because	from you.
a. they are p		b. their products	
c. they are fa		d. they are usual	y closed
	ed "it" refers to th	e	
	b. product	c. correct price	d. good quality
Choose the cor	rect answer from	na,b,cord:	
1. Neither Mark	his brother is	very tall.	
a. and	b. both	c. nor	d. or
2. I bought an elec	tric to make	tea easily.	
a. toaster	b. coffee machi		d. tool
3. I made a/an	to buy a new	aptop online.	
a. order	b. complaint	c. present	d. design
4. Wa This microv	vave has a 25 %	anaran	

b. speaker

5. You must the machine in before it works.

b. work

c. deal

c. prepare

d. website

d. plug

a. discount

a. turn

🍦 6. You can cook	trast if you use a	. It takes a few m	Inutes			
a. kettle	b. toaster	c. fridge	d microwave			
7. He bought a new phone which helps him a lot in his work.						
a. fresh	b. usual	C. Smart	d. fast			
8. W3 To	8. W To is to send a message electronically.					
a. order	b. email	c. complain	d. call			
9, 🜃 Ald	exandria Electrics no	or Sound and Vision	sell clothes			
a. Either	b. Neither	c. Too	d. Both			
10. When the ph	one rang, la	film.				
a. watch	b. watching	c. was watching	d. watched			
Complete the	e sentences with t	hese words :				
	charge - travel -	nice – invited – sleep				
Last Eriday I	Contract of the Contract of th					
		. I (1) n				
		e. We have (2)				
		ose either to (3)				
		phone went off bec	ause I forgot to			
(4)	it before I went ou	it.				
Complete the	sentences with the c	orrect form of the w	ord(s) in brackets:			
1. I moved to a	new house which is	(wide) than m	nine.			
2. My brother g	ot(good)mar	ks than I did.				
3. As I (sle	eep), the robber stol	e my wallet.				
4. They (e	ither) run nor play.	They just stay at hom	ie.			
Choose the correct word:						
1. WB My sister and I either / both like playing tennis.						
2. I need to charge / log the battery of my phone.						
WB Write a re	view of about (11	0) words on :	مجاب عنه في نهاية الكتاب			
"The t	"The best and worst items of technology in your house"					

Stop here!

A		The assets	8
 You can cook things My phone is not we now! The south of Egypt famous To "email" means Neither Sami nor A 	t is d.	to send a me with a micro shop online. for its beauti	ful handicrafts.
1. You can choose neitle 2. These beautiful wood 3. Yesterday, I go to the	her rice or sa d boxes can	alad with your me	
4. Either the speakers a 5. Hello! I want to make			e. (
	e a compla i	<u>n</u> .	e. ()) ما تعلمته واختبر ذکائك
5. Hello! I want to make	e a complai hink sma	n. irt	(
5. Hello! I want to make	hink sma	n. ort , b, c or d :	(
5. Hello! I want to make Use your brain, to	hink sma wer from a der owner w	n. ort , b, c or d :	(
5. Hello! I want to make Use your brain, to Choose the correct ans 1. This car is	hink sma wer from a der owner w	n. rt , b, c or d : vants to sell it.) في ما تعلمته واختبر ذكا نك
5. Hello! I want to make Use your brain, to Choose the correct ans This car is sale. Hello. b. at	hink sma wer from a der owner w t the film.	n. rt , b, c or d : vants to sell it.) في ما تعلمته واختبر ذكا نك
5. Hello! I want to make Use your brain, to Choose the correct ans I. This car is sale. He alon book at the correct ans Soha fell asleep along a while book are	hink sma wer from a der owner w t the film.	n. b, c or d: vants to sell it. c. of c. during) و ما تعلمته واختبر ذكائك d. for
5. Hello! I want to make Use your brain, to Choose the correct ans This car is sale. Ha. on b. at Soha fell asleep a. while b. or A kettle is used	hink sma wer from a der owner w t the film.	n. thickness of the control of the) و ما تعلمته واختبر ذكائك d. for
Choose the correct ans 1. This car is sale. Ha. on b. at 2. Soha fell asleep a. while b. or b. A kettle is used b. to b. to c. Amr much exper	the film. vater. boil	n. tt b, c or d: vants to sell it. c. of c. during c. boils s life. He is a hard	d. for d. when d. boiling -working man.
**Use your brain, to make the correct ans the	think sma wer from a der owner we the film. n vater. boil rience in his	n. b, c or d: vants to sell it. c. of c. during c. boils life. He is a hard c. gained	d. for d. when d. boiling -working man. d. lost
Choose the correct ans This car is sale. Had on both as the sale of the correct ans Soha fell asleep a. while b. on a b. at a boil b. to a b. at a b.	think smale wer from a der owner we the film. In water. In boil rience in his arned ompany that	n. b, c or d: vants to sell it. c. of c. during c. boils life. He is a hard c. gained	d. for d. when d. boiling -working man. d. lost

TINO 259

My community

SB pages 22:31 WB pages 86:92



Objectives

· Reading:

An article about a plan to help poor people; a community social network page; David Copperfield; an online message about a community project

· Writing:

An article about how to help poor people; a social network massage about a community problem; a survey about your community

· Listening:

A conversation about a community survey; a discussion at a community meeting; people greeting and introducing each other

· Speaking:

Describing communities and community problems; using formal and informal introductions and greetings

· Language:

Adjectives ending in - ing or -ed

· Life Skills:

Participation: responsible behaviour; Respect for diversity

العلامة 50 تسبق أسئلة كتاب الطالب
 العلامة 70 تسبق أسئلة كتاب التدريبات



• للمتابعة اليو**مية و الابحاث في Master your term** • قاموس المعا**صر اللغو**ى



1 & 2

SB pages 22:25 WB pages 86 & 87



Vocabulary

Key Vocabulary

community (n)	مجتمع	heroes (n)	ابطال
headings (n)	عناوين رئيسية	aim to	بهدف إلى
survey (n)	دراسة إستطلاعية	encourage (d) (v)	يشجع
leisure activities (n)	أنشطة ترفيهية	neighbourhood (n)	ى - مجاورة
sports activities (n)	أنشطة رياضية	community events (n	لأحداث المجتمعية
local facilities (n)	مرافق محلية	disappointed (adj)	عديط - خانب الأمل
equal opportunities (n)	فرص متكافئة	initiative (n)	ببادرة
education (n)		rural areas	ساطق ريفية

■ Key Vocabulary هي المفردات الأكثر أهمية المطلوب من الطالب إتقائها.



• Master your Vocabulary يقضى على جميع مشاكل حفظ المف<mark>ردات (ملحق Master).</mark>

■ Glossary لحصيلة أكبر (للمزيد) من المفردات اللغوية نهاية الكتاب.

Lesson (1)

SB pages 22 & 23 WB page 86

community projects	مشاريع مجتمعية	pavement (n)	رصيف شارع
local shops	أسواق محلية	young people (n)	الشياب
streetlight (n)	مصباح الشارع	driving (n)	القيادة
meeting (n)	اجتماع - لقاء	works of art (n)	اعمال منية
elderly (adj)	متقدم في السن	transport (n)	النقل (المواصلات)
disabled people (n) ما	اللشخاص دوى الإعاقة ا	deliver (ed) (v)	يوضل - يُسلم

Lesson 2	SB pages 24 & 25	WB page 87
----------	------------------	------------

health (n)	الصحة	surprise (d) (v) , (n)	بدهش - پفاجيء
decent life	حياة كريمة	object (n)	× will
job opportunities	فرص عمل	effect (n)	نائير
in addition (adv)	بالإضافة إلى	situation (n)	موقف

businesses (n)	مشاريع تجارية	expect (ed) (v)	يتوقع
solve (d) (v)	يحل (مشكلة مثلًا)		مهرجان - احتفال
plan (ned) (v) (n)	يخطط - خطة	washing machine (n)	

تصريف الأفعال غير المنتظمة Conjugation of Irregular Verbs

			معريف المصال عير المستس
Present	المضارع	الماضي Past	التصريف الثالث .P.P
think	يعتقد - يفكر	thought	thought
put up	يشيد - يقيم	put up	put up
know	يعرف	knew	known

هذه التعريفات مجمعة من <mark>كتاب الطالب وكتاب التدريبات وقاموس</mark> التعريفات (glossary) في نهاية كتاب التدريبات.

تنویه

Study these definitions

ادرس هذه التعريفات

having a good effect on a person, place or situation

general what you feel when you do not expect something strange or unusual

to try to make people do something by giving support and advice

having a good effect on a person, place or situation

what you feel when you do not expect something strange or unusual

to try to make people do something by giving support and advice

neighbourhood a small area of a town and the people who live there

حی - مجاورة

Col	ocations		بة	متللزمات لفظ
have	a good effect on له تأثیر جید علی	build	new sports centre مرکز ریاضی جدید new streetlights پ / پثبت اضواء جدیدة للشوارع	
make	a difference يحدث تغيير sentences about يكون جمل عن	put up		
	a problem يعرض مشكنة	plant	flowers in	يزرع زهور في
show	new works of art	stop	people from	يمنع الناس من
	يعرض أعمال فنية جديدة	play	chess	يلعب شطرنج
send	lots of text messages يرسل الكثير من الرسائل النصية			

الكلمات /f/ أحيانًا لا ينطق وأحيانًا ينطق في بعض الكلمات /f/

Silent gh		Sounds like /f/	
daughter		cough	الحس - بحي
neighbourhood	حی - جوار	laugh	بضك
streetlight	مصباح الشارع		بفاح
right	صحيح	rough	قاس - خشن

II Listening and Reading





on Lesson 1 SB page 23









Fareed: I think the best thing about our community(1) is the facilities(2). We have some great shops and places to go to, like the library.

Salah: Yes, I think we have a very strong community. We have lots of community projects where we can volunteer to help people, especially the elderly.

Fareed: Yes, we're starting a project next month where young people are going to help the elderly learn more about technology.

Salah : We have really good leisure activities(3) here too - sports facilities and the children's playground, for example. There are lots of places where families can enjoy being outside together.

Fareed: That's right, but I think we could improve(4) our equal opportunities. Our pavements, for example, are not accessible (5) for all and make it difficult for disabled people to use them.

Check Vocabulary

متاح / يمكن الوصول إليه (4) يحسن (4) أنشطة (3) مرافق (2)

Salah : You're right. They're discussing this problem at the next

community meeting, actually

Fareed : We should go. Salah : Good idea!





. on Lesson 1 WB page 86

Hive in a great community. There are lots of sports activities for young people, such as volleyball and tennis clubs. There are also many local facilities(2) for people of all ages(3), including a great theatre and a history museum. Our roads have wide pavements 41, so it is not a problem for disabled people(5) to travel around. I help at one of the community projects , too. We help the elderly to learn about the latest technology. My grandmother sends lots of text messages now!

Check Vocabulary

() bushy blanch	(2) figlian Attyo	من كل الشقات العمرية 🔞	(4) δέχμε δέκη)
athail agi gribbili	(f) fistup chegyika	(7) Chiết (Bank) (1)	(i) dytai Jilanj

on Lesson 2 SB page 24

The Decent Life Initiative

The Decent Life Initiative is an exciting plan that is really making a difference to about 32 million people who live in rural areas(3) in Egypt. The initiative aims to 4 improve the quality(5) of public services(6). It provides more health care(7), better education(8) and better job opportunities (9). Since 2019, the Decent Life initiative has helped people in 377 villages to have clean water. It has also helped to repair their houses and it has sent doctors to the villages to deliver medicine and help people who are ill.



Check Vocabulary

مبادرة دياة كريمة (١)	(2) ládika / tájtó úsag	(3) higher de la	العدف في (دا	(1) 4190	
(6) dolc cito25	رعاية صحية (١٦)	(8) pyleš	क्षाया असी. (१)	10 gloss -	30%

It has also improved facilities for disabled people, and is helping more 'children to have

a better education by building schools in the villages. In addition, young people will also be encouraged⁽¹¹⁾ to find out about the interesting new businesses⁽¹²⁾ the Decent Life Initiative is opening, which can give them work

The Decent Life Initiative will continue to help people in poor neighbourhoods⁽¹³⁾ around the country. It plans to help to find work for more than five million young people. That really is an amazing plan!

Check Vocabulary

أحياء مجاورة (13) مشاريع تجارية (12) يشجع (11)



- 1 include / contain
 - * include (d) (v)

يتضمن - يشتمل على

ex.: - Don't include fat in your diet. It's unhealthy.

* contain (ed) (v)

بحتوى على

ex.: - This pot contains too much oil.

- 2 throw (threw thrown)
 - * throw away

پرمی - پتخلص من

ex.: - She threw away all her old clothes.

* throw into

پرمی فی

ex.: - She threw her old doll into the rubbish bin.

3 everyone

کل شخص

everyone أن الجملة الثانية. - Everyone is going to the stadium. They want to support their team. في الجملة الثانية.

- 4 between amongst
 - * between ... and ...

بین (اثنین)

ex.: - Baher is standing between Ali and Tamer.

* among (amongst)

بين (أكثر من اثنين)

ex.: - I like living amongst my family and relatives.

5 because

لأن (تعبر عن السبب)

* because + قاملة جملة

ex.: - 553 I was really surprised because I found the questions difficult.

• because of + (n./inf. + ing)

ex .: - I cancelled the journey because of the bad weather.

- I didn't go to school because of being ill.

6 the police

الشرطة

للحظ أن : كلمة (police) تعامل دائمًا معاملة الجمع ويأتي قبلها (The)

ex.: - WB The police are stopping people from driving too fast.

تعبیرات وحروف جر هامة Prepositions & Prepositions

find out about deliver ... to ... يُسلم ... إلى a group of بجعله اکثر امانا make ... safer مجموعة من ... یشجع / بحث ... علی ... encourage ... to ... علی امشروع start a project discuss a problem يناقش مشكلة يتوقع شيئا غريبًا expect something strange improve the town's facilities من المعالمة في المعالمة ال live in people of all ages الأعمار من جميع الأعمار يطور / يُحسن مرافق المدينة travel around hear about مندوار LILL ROLL find work for have a better education by يحصل على تعليم أفضل بواسطة decide to بقرر أن give support and advice give work پومر فرص عمل لـ يقدم الدعم والمشورة

EXERCISE on Vocabulary

- Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:
- Key vocabulary
 - 1. A/Anis a small area and the people who live in it.
 - a. facility
- b. community
- c. opportunity
- d. survey
- 2. There are many local for the elderly and disabled people in our country.
 - a. differencesb. problems
- c. facilities
- d. streetlights

16. Ten children

two girls were killed in a car accident near Assiut.

a. containing

b. including

c. having

d. doing

Vocabulary Study:

Synonyms and Antonym	15	مترادفات ومتضادات	
الكلمة Word	المرادف Synonym	المغاد Antonym	
متقدم في السن elderly	old	صغير السن young	
امن safe	protected	dangerous خطير	
غريب strange	abnormal	ordinary / normal	
		عادی - مألوف	
فریب near	close - nearby	far - remote عيد / بان	
واسع - عريض wide	large - broad	ميق narrow	
محيط - خائب الأمل disappointed	upset	راض - قانع content	
يوصل - يسلم deliver	carry / bring	باخذ / بستام take / receive	
ielsure مرميه	relaxation	ضغط / توثر pressure / stress	

Prefixes & Suffix	es	-0 · or 1	مقاطع بادئة وناهية
الوطيفة Function الوطيفة		Examples autoi	
un –	تعطى عكس المعس	unusual	غير عادي
dis –	نعطي عكس المعنى	disabled	من ذوى الإعاقة
– ly	تكؤن الظرف	recently loudly	حدیثًا / مؤخرًا بصوت عال
– ing	تكؤن الصمة	amazing	مدهش
- y	تكؤن الصمة	healthy	مدن

EXERCISES on Vocabulary Study

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- 1. "Near" and "close" are
 - a. synonyms b. antonyms
- c. different
- d. opposite

- 2. The antonym of "strange" is
 - a. normal
- b. abnormal
- c. unusual
- d. difficult

- " has the same meaning of "upset".
- b. Disappointed c. Narrow
- d. Light
- 4. To give the opposite of the word "usual" we add the prefix
 - a. ir-

- b. in-
- c. un-
- d. im-
- 5. The noun "health" can be an adjective by adding
 - a. -ly
- b. -ed
- c. -ing
- d.-y

Language

تذڪر Remember

The Present Continuous Tense:

أمن المضارع المستمر:

Formation التكوين



He / She / It / فاعل مفرد غائب We / You / They / فاعل جمع

am IS are

inf. المصدر ing

- ex. We are learning English now.
 - I am reading a story at the moment.
 - Look! He is playing tennis.



He / She / It / فاعل مفرد غانب We / You / They / فاعل جمع

an are

eX.

- She isn't listening to music now.



ex. - When are you having a party?

am

are /

B) Wh question:

word

كلمة الاستفهام

ب) السؤال باستخدام كلمة استفهام

subject + (inf. | lng)

الفاعل

الاستفسام

Key words الكلمات الدالة

• غالبًا تأتى مع الزمن لتعبر عن حدث يقع أثناء الكلام : now Take care! الان في تلك اللحظة at the moment احذر ! Look! انظر! still at present مازال في الوقت الحاضر

انصت ! | Look out ! / Watch out انصت ! | Look out انصت !

ex.: - Listen! She's singing.

- He is working now.

Usage الاستخدام

We use the present continuous to talk about finished future plans (at a specific time or place) and arrangements.

﴾ نستخدم زمن المضارع المستمر للتحدث عن خطط وترتيبات منتهية ف**ي المست**قبل (في وقت أو مكان معين / محدد).

ex.: - We're starting a project next month.

They're discussing this problem at the next community meeting.

◄ ويمكن استخدام هذه التعبيرات للتعبير على ذلك :

arranged - made arrangements - prepared - made preparations :

ex. - I'm taking Salma on a trip tomorrow. Everything is arranged.

Advanced Notes ملاحظات للمستويات العليا من التفكير

- للحظ أن المناسبات الاجتماعية مثل الحفلات وأعياد الميلاد وغيرها تستلزم ترتيبات، لذا يستخدم معها المضارع المستمر:
- ex. My brother is getting married next Thursday.
 - لاحظ كذلك أن الأنشطة التي ستقوم بها المؤسسات مستقبلاً تستلزم ترتيبات ، لذا يستخدم معما المضارع المستمر :
- ex. My class are going on a school trip next week.
 - إذا منعك شيء من القيام بشيء آخر في المستقبل القريب فان ما يمنعك يكون مرتبًا له وبالتالي نستخدم المضارع المستمر :
- ex. I can't go out with you tonight because I'm meeting my uncle

There are many adjectives that we have in English that end in inigial ed 🔸 स्वरक्षः संबन्धः स्वः सन्तर्वतः तः, सार्वतः साहित्या(हतः ।।इ., ।।इतः, । (gril) lg (ba) :

(i) An adjective that ends in - (ing) is used to describe a noun.

🌬 #عظهٔ الالی تتفامی بـ (pnt -) استخدم لوصف اسم

ex.: - The film was boring.

per plant per

- The new businesses are interesting.

• تستخو ارضا الصفة المنتمرية بـ (ing.) لوصف الأشخاص

ex .: - Wael is amazing. We are proud of him. வ அருக் யக இர முக்கி நீத

(II) An adjective that ends in (- ed) is used to describe a feeling.

🧚 اتضفاۃ التی تنتمی ہے (bo -) تستخدم لوصف شعور۔

ex.: - Villages are excited to hear about the plan. Young people will be interested in the new businesses,

on Language (Answered & Explained)

مُى هذا الجزء نقدم للطالب تدريب على القاعدة اللفوية مجاب عله ومصحوب بشرج أسباب اختيار الإجابة الصحيحة.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- 1. The film was I got bored , so I stopped watching it.
 - a. bored
- b. bore
- c. boring
- d. boredom
- 2. She was _____ to hear that the museum was closed.
 - a. disappoint
- b. disappointed c. disappointing d. disappoints
- 3. The school up new lights in the playground next week.
 - a. puts
- b. is putting
- c. going to put d. put
- 4. Samy his birthday party next October. a. has
 - b. had
- c. is having d. having

No.	الإجابة والتوظيح Answer + Explanation	
1	C	الصفة (boring) تصف القيام
2	b	الصمة (disappointed) تصف الشعور
3	b	الجملة تعبر عن أحداث بها ترتيب مسبق لذا نستخدم زمن المضارع المستمر
4	c	الجملة تعبر عن أحداث بها ترتيب مسبق لذا نستخدم زمن المضارع المستمر

Exercises on Language

1. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

SB and WB Exercises		_{ثدا} یبات من کتاب الطالب والتدریبات			
1. 😘 The plan is					
a. exciting	b. excited		d. excites		
2. WB The town					
		c. is building			
		e park next month			
a. plant	b. are planting	c. planted	d. plants		
4. WB Today's math	ns lesson was very	· · · · · · · ·			
a. interest	b. interested	c. interests	d. interesting		
El-Moasser Exercis	es	J	ندريبات كتاب المعاصر		
5. I was very					
a. surprise	b. surprising	c. surprises	d. surprised		
6. This new city is		nany great building	as here		
a. amaze	b. amazement	c. amazed	d amazing		
7. Saima din	ner now. She can'	t help you with you	ur homework		
a. is cooking	D. COOKS	C. was cooking	d. has cooked		
o. i was, so j	stopped watching	g that match			
a. bore	b. boring	c hored	d. boredom		
2.11d33d11 WdS	when he knew t	that the match wa	s cancelled.		
a. disappoint		b. disappointed			
c. disappointing		d. disappointme	nt		
2. Complete the sent	ences with the co	rrect form of the w	ord(s) in brackets		
SB and WB Exercises					
		ائب والتدريبات	تدريبات من كتاب الط		
2 56 Wael is	(interest) to near	that the communit	y centre was closing.		
	2. 53 Wael is (interest). He lives on a boat. 3. 53 That is a very				
1 Watharkill	(interest)	building, said the a	rchitect.		
Sinc children	are very (e)	kcite) because they	have a new tov		
El-Moasser Exercise	es				
5. My mother	(prepare) now fo	or tomove	تدريبات كتاب المعاص		
5. My mother (prepare) now for tomorrow's party. 6. I was (amazing) when I saw the number of people in the stadium.					
	9/ Wileli I SaW I	the number of peo	ple in the stadium.		

- 7. The trip to the High Dam was very (excited).
- 8. Ayman booked a ticket. He (travels) to Alexandria tomorrow.
- 9, It was (bored) to watch the same film twice.
- 10. What (they do) for the meeting next Sunday?

Skills Corner



كيفية التعامل مع معارات (القراءة - الكتابة - التحدث) في الورقة الامتحانية لكل درس على حده. تنويه للمزيد من الشرح والتدريبات على مهارات (القراءة - الكتابة - التحدث)

(Master Your Term) في ملحق (Master Your Term)

. Reading Corner

قم بقراءة Reading on lesson 2 SB page 24 من كتاب المعاصر صفحة ١٣٧ ثم قم بالتدرب على إجابة بعض أسئلة قطعة الفهم طبقاً لمواصفات الورقة الامتدانية.

Answer the following questions:

- Extracting information استذراج المعلومات
- 1. How many people has the Decent Life Initiative made a difference to ?
 - About 32 million people.
- مهارة التفكير النقدى Critical thinking skill
- 2. Why do you think the Decent Life Initiative is important?
- Understanding reference مَا يَشْيِر إليه الصَّمِير
- 3. What does the pronoun "It" in the last paragraph refer to?

2. Writing Corner

معارة الكتابة

A. Read the sentences

جمل تساعدك على كتابة فقرة إنشالية | رسالة بريد إلكتروني

مبادرة حياة كريمة "The Decent Life Initiative"

- The Decent Life Initiative is really making a difference to about 32 million people in villages.
 - ا. تحدث مبادرة حياة كريمة فارقًا حقيقيًا لحوالى ٣٢ مليون شخص يعيشون في القرى.
- Since 2019 the Decent Life Initiative has helped people in 377 villages to have clean water.
 - ٢. منذ عام ٢٠١٩، لقد ساعدت مبادرة حياة كريمة الأشخاص الذين يعيشون في ٣٧٧ قرية ليحصلوا على مياه نظيفة.
- ع. لقد ساعدت الأشخاص على إصلاح منازلهم. . 3. It has helped to repair their houses.
- 4. It has also sent doctors to the villages to deliver medicine and help ill people. ٤. لقد أرسلت أيضًا أطباء إلى القرى لتسليم الدواء ومساعدة المرض.

B. Building sentences

Read and complete:

encourage - amazed - amazing - safer - pavements

- 1. I think we should make our streets
- 2. Posters are made to people to throw away their rubbish.
- 3. The museum is ! There are so many old things there.
- 4. Our roads have wide

C. Writing a short article

بعد دراسة القواعد والمفردات اللغوية الخاصة بالدرسين قم بالتدريب على بناء الجملة

عتابة المقال القصير

للوزيد من الشرح (ممارات الكتابة) يمكنك الرجوع إلى ملحق (Master Your Term)

نموذج مقال قصير Model short article

Write a short article of 110 words for a website about how you could be a community hero.

"How you could be a community hero"

My name is Mohammed Ayman. I am 15 years old. There is a serious community problem which I want to solve. This problem is related to the school. A lot of students do not like the time they spend at متعلقة بـ school. In this short article, I'm going to discuss the reasons and the solutions of this problem.

Students do not like school because they feel bored and exhausted. They move from one subject to another. They are taught in traditional ways. They do not have the chance to develop their talents. They are only listeners. To solve this problem, we need to adopt new learning strategies. We must plan how to make learning useful and enjoyable at the same time. Students need to be positive and show their abilities through different activities. To conclude, learning at school must be interesting. All students must feel that they are part of the system, not only listeners.

D. Practise by yourself

تدرب على كتابة مقال قصير

- Write a short article for a website of about (110) words on: "Sports facilities in your town"

Speaking Corner

معارة التحدث

A community survey :

دراسة استطلاعية محتمعية :

Questions



Answers



- 1. What things could people do to make a difference to poor people in your community?
 - ما الأشياء التي يمكن للناس القيام بها لأحداث فارق للفقراء في مجتمعك المحلى ؟
- 2. How could they do this? - كيف يمكن أن يقوموا بذلك ؟



- People in the local community could do many things: they can donate food, clothing, old furniture... etc...
 - في المجتمع المحلى يمكن أن يتبرع الناس باشياء عديدة مثل الطعام، المليس، الأثاث القديم... وهكذا.
- They could start local charities to help people and make poster's to encourage them to do good things. - يمكن أن يقوموا بتأسيس جمعيات محلية
- لمساعدة الناس وإعداد ملصقات تشجع الناس للقيام بسلوكيات جيدة.

B. Discussion about community:

مناقشة عن المجتمع :

Questions





- 1. What do you think are the best things about your own community? - في (اعتقادك)، **ما هي أفضل الأشباء** في مجتمعك ؟
- 2. Are there any facilities for the elderly and disabled people? - هل هناك أي مرافق لكيار السن وذوي الاحتياجات الخاصة (أصحاب الهمم) ؟
- 3. Are people doing anything to improve the facilities? What? - هل يقوم الأشخاص بأي شيء لتحسين المرافق ؟ ماذا يقومون به ؟

Answers

- I like the sports facilities. Also I like our streets which are safer than before.
- أحب المرافق الرياضية واحب ايضا شوارعنا التي أكثر امانًا من ذي قبل.
- Yes, there are many facilities made especially for them. - نعم. هناك الكثير من المرافق خاصة بهم.
- Yes. They keep them clean. - نعم. فهم يحافظون عليها نظيفة.

General Exercises



LESSONS 1 & 2

Understand

Apply

· Create

1	Complete the fo	llowing dialogu	e :	
		a abarity and ask	s his friend, Hamdi a	bout his opinion,
	Magdi : Good eve	ning, Hamdi. I war	nt to ask you for adv	ice. Are you free?
	Hamdi : (1)	. What d	o you want ?	
	Mandi alwant to	do voluntary worl	(, (2)	?
	Hamdi : You shou	ld join a charity.		
1	Magdi :(3)	there and fill in	a form to join them	ı .
	Hamdi : You can g	o there and min	our neighbourhoo	od ?
			our neighbourhoo	
	Hamdi : (4)			
	Magdi : Can you			
	Hamdi : (5)			
2	Choose the corre	ect answer from	a, b, c or d:	
	1. Good people of	tena differe	nce in their neighb	ourhood.
	a. make	b. do	c. encourage	d. get
•	2. The initiative ha	s helped more chi	ldren to have a bett	erby
	building schools			
	a. health		b. education	
	c. situation		d. neighbourho	ood
•	3. It's better to buy	your needs from	shops to enc	ourage them.
	a. local	b. strange	c. foreign	d. remote
•	4. I that he'll	come early as usu	ıal.	
	a. respect	b. expect	c. except	d. accept
•	5. Young people h	elp to food t	to the poor in our co	ommunity.
	a. put	b. deliver	c. diver	d. plan
6. What fact mightyou about the Decent Life Initia				ative ?
	a. expect	b. solve	c. plan	d. surprise

7. WB I live in a great		e are lots of sports	for	
young people ther a. theatres	b. volunteers	c. lines	d. activities	
8. They their fl	at next weekend.			
a. were going to pa		b. are painting		
c. were painting		d. are painted		
9. SB We a pro	oiect next week.	•		
a. are starting	, · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	b. start	b. start	
c. started		d. going to start		
10. WB The walk over	the mountains wa	Name and the second		
a. tire	b. tired	c. tiring	d. tires	
Complete the sent brackets :	tences with the	correct form of th	e word(s) in	
1. The players	(play) an importa	nt match next wee	k.	
2. Rania (clear	i) her room tomoi	row. It's arranged		
3. I was really		to the second se	our exam.	
4. It is a very (6				
4 Complete the sen	tences with thes	se words :		
•		avements - commu	inity	
I live in a great (1) young people, such local (2) fo a history museum. O problem for (4)	as volleyball and or people of all ago Our roads have wid	es, including a grea de (3), so	are also many t theatre and	
5 Write a short	article for a web	site of about (11	0) words on:	
			مجاب عنه في نهاية الكتاب	
"What you	ı can do to help pe	eople in your comm	unity"	

***************************************	*************			

3&4

5B pages 26 : 28 WB pages 88 & 89



Vocabulary

Key Vocabulary

ا المحن - نزیل (lodger (n) bench (n) مقعد (ثابت) greet (ed) (v)

رسن المعاملة - عطف / طيبة (kindness (n ساكن - نزيل عتابة ورسوم على الجدران (graffiti (n مقعد (ثابت)

Forms of Communication

أشكال الاتصال / التواصل

social network services
ددمات شبکة التواصل الاجتماعی

local newspaper

community centre

noticeboard

social network services

مرکز خدمة محلیة

posters

leaflets

leaflets

local radio station

posters

تنويع = Key Vocabulary هي المفردات الأكثر أهمية المطلوب من الطالب إتقائها.

■ Master your Vocabulary يقضى على جميع مشا<mark>كل حفظ المفردات (ملحق Master).</mark>

Glossary لحصيلة أكبر (للمزيد) من المفردات اللغوية نهاية الكتاب.

Lesson (3)

SB pages 26 & 27 WB page 88

communicate (d) (v)	يتصل - يتواصل	business (n)	أعمال تجارية
matters (n)	شؤون - أمور - قضايا	experience (n)	خبرة - تجربة حياتية
message of thanks	رسالة شكر	darkness (n)	الظلام
food market (n)	سوق المواد الغذائية	weakness (n)	ضعف
pleased (adj)	مسرور	illness (n)	مرضى
visitors (n)	زوار - ضيوف	topic (n)	موضوع
sweetness (n)	حلاوة - عذوبة	respect (ed) (v)	يحترم
calligraphy (n)	فن الخط	relax (ed) (v)	يسترخى
leaf (n)	ورق شجر	media (n)	وسائل الإعلام
salty (adj)	مالح	play (ed) (v), (n)	يعزف / يلعب / يمثل - مسرحية
pleasant (adj)	لطيف - ممتع		

Lesson (4)	98 page 28 WB page 89		
tenant (n)	مستاجر	healthy meal (n)	وجبة صحية
factory (n)	ocis	imagine (d) (v)	يتخيل
furniture (n)	آثاث (عمش)		

Conjugation of Irregular		regular Verbs	تصريف الأفعال غير المنتظمة
Present		الماض Past	التصريف الثالث .P.P
read	يفرأ	read	read
come	باتى	came	come
pay	يدفع	paid	paid
sell	Sin	sold	sold

Study these definitions

ادرس هذه التعريفات

المجاء said hello المجاء said hello المجاء someone who pays to live in another person's house المجاء المجاء gave money for work someone has done المستأجر someone pays to live in a house

II Listening and Reading













: Thank you all for coming along to the meeting⁽¹⁾. I'm going to show you a page on the whiteboard. Can you all see it clearly?

Teen girl: What is the page from? Is it a website(2)?

Check Vocabulary

موقع الكتروني (2) الجنماع

Man

: Yes, it's a website for the local(3) community to share ideas,

called a social network service page. We're going to start one.

too. Is anyone interested in helping?

Woman

: It's a very good way to communicate(4) with everyone - after all not everyone can come to meetings. And it's much quicker and cheaper than delivering leaflets(5).

Teen boy: How do we start?

Check Vocabulary

منشور - ځتب (5) پتواصل (4) مخلی (3)



on Lesson 3 SB page 26

Community Matters (1)

- The kindness (2) of strangers Thanks to the kind person who helped my elderly neighbour⁽³⁾ last week. He felt unwell, and someone kindly helped him to a bench to sit on for a rest.
- We need more trees! A few of us are going to plant some trees along the streets. It will help with pollution and also encourage more visitors (4) to our town. Who is interested in joining our project?
- Computer repairs Hi neighbours- I have experience in repairing(5) computers and mobile phones. Give me a call if you need help!
- Let's help those in need! Please donate (6) food to people who don't have enough. Volunteers (7) are also wanted to help deliver boxes.
- Art class The community centre is going to be closed (8) on Saturday next week, from 4 pm - 7 pm, for an art class.
- Graffiti I was disappointed to see the graffiti(9) on the walls of the town hall. This is a historic(10) building! What are we going to do about it?

Check Vocabulary

تاریخی (10) ختابة ورسوم علی الجدران (9) مفلق (8) متطوعین (7) یتبرع (6) اصلاح (5) زوار (4) جار (3) عطف - طیبة (2) شؤون - امور (1)

on Lesson 4 SB page 28

David Copperfield

by Charles Dickens

I was working in the factory(1) when one day, my manager greeted(2) me. "You have a visitor(3)", he said, "This is Mr Micawber".

"Pleased to meet you(4), David," said the man. "I'd like you to be my lodger(5)".

He took me to his house after work. It was as poor and old as he was. He lived there with his thin wife, their baby and two small children.



"I never thought that we'd need a lodger," said Mrs Micawber. "But we don't have enough money, you see".

I was ten years old and I had no help from my family, but my money from the factory paid for my food and room.

The Micawbers were very kind, but they were even poorer than me. One day, Mrs Micawber said, "We have nothing to eat in the house!" I tried to give her some money.

"I can't take this", she said. "But we have some things that we can sell. Can you help us?"

So, I sold some of their old books and furniture(6). I gave the money to Mrs Micawber, and she was able to cook us all a healthy meal(7).

Check Vocabulary

وجبة صحية (7) اثاث (6) ساكن - نزيل (5) مسرور بمقابلتك (4) زائر (3) القي التحية (2) مصنع (1)



1 lodger / tenant

- A lodger is a person who pays rent to live in somebody's house.

الساكن / النزيل هو شخص يدفع إيجارًا ليعيش في منزل شخص ما.

- A tenant is a person who pays rent for the use of a room, building. land, etc. to the person who owns it.
- المستأحر هو شخص يدفع إيجارًا لاستخدام حجرة، مبنى أو أرض ... إلخ للشخص الذي يمتلكه.

2 thanks to / thanks for

Thanks to

يفضل / يسبب

ex.: - Thanks to your help, I succeeded in my exams.

شکرا له / علی

 Thanks for (n/inf. + ing) Thanks for helping me/ your help. I won't forget it forever.

3 help

· help ... with ...

ىساغد ... في ...

ex.:- I helped my little sister with her homework.

* help ... (inf. مصدر) / (to + inf. المصدر) ex.:- I help my little sister do (to do) her homework.

4 experience / experiment

* experience (n)

خبرة (اسم لا نُعد)

::- Mr Badawi has got a lot of experience.

experiences (n)

تجارب حياتية

::- I've a lot of experiences in my life.

تجربة معملية

 experiment (n) ::- In science lessons, we do experiments.

5 historic / historical

historic

تاريخي (له أهمية في التاريخ) مثلا مكان أثري

✓.:- This building is historic. It was built 300 years ago.

historical = related to history

تاریخی (متعلق بالتاریخ)

ex.:- This book is historical. It is about Mohammed Ali.

تمبیرات وحروف جر هامة Prepositions & Repositions

in need پتوامل مع communicate with forms of communication

في احتياج

move to

ينتقل إلى

أشكال الاتصال / التواصل

covered in

فغظی ہے ...

social networking sites

مواقع التواصل اللجنماعي

graffiti on the walls

رسوم (جرافيتي) على الأسوار

felt unwell	شعر بأنه ليس على ما يرا	no fac
sit on a bench	يجلس على مقعد ثابت	impro
for a rest	للراحة	pleas
help with	پساعد في	
have experience in	لديه / له خبرة في ١	say he
give me a call	يتصل بي (تليفونيًا)	show
(be) closed on Sat	urday	for sa
	ىكون مغلق يوم السبت	donat

میلات د no facilities for	لا توجد مرافق / تسم
improve the situation	يحسن الموقف
pleased to meet you	مسرور بمقابلتك
pay for	يدفع من أجل
say hello	يردب ب
show kindness	يظهر العطف
for sale	للبيع
donate food to people	يتبرع بطعام للناس

xercise on Vocabulary

Ohoose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

Key vocabulary 1. I read an interesting about the new museum. d. leaflet a leaf b. meeting c. station 2. They put somein the park, for people to sit on for a rest. a. tables b. benches c. beds d. games 3. I listen to many local radio on my phone. a. decisions b. situations c noticeboards d stations a. newspapers b. neighbours c. benches d. leaflets 5. Tourists are always pleased by the of the Egyptians. a. weakness b. darkness c. kindness d. illness SB and WB Exercises تدريبات من كتاب الطالب والتدريبات 6. 1 was disappointed to see the on the walls of the town hall. a. leaflet c. network b. graffiti d. service 7. WB When we arrived at my grandparents' house, they came outside to us. c. plant a. greet b. need d. bleed 8. WB It was sunny, so we were surprised by the of the forest. c. illness a. darkness b. kindness d. weakness 9. WB The teacher will put a message about the new art class on the c. noticeboard d. note a. park b. bank

El-Moasser Exercis	ies		_{كال} يبات كتاب المعاصر
10. After finishing s	chool, he started	his own	
270	b. business		d. darkness
11you are ri	ch, what will you	buy?	
 a. Include 	b. Imagine	c. Find	d. Pay
12. When you meet to meet you".	someone for the	e first time, you o	can say "
a. Afraid	b. Pleased	c. Local	d. Terrible
Language Notes,	Expressions & Pr	epositions	
13. Thanks m	y elder brother, I d	could achieve my	goal and be a surgeon
a. for	b. with	c. about	d. to
14. My neighbour's	house is covered	dpainting	and writings.
a. in	b. of	c. about	d. at
15 me a call	if you need help.	C.	
a. Talk	b. Do	c. Give	d. Send
16. There is a lot of	buildings i	in Egypt.	
a. history	b. historian	c. historic	d. historical
17. He is very old. S	ure, he has a lot	of	
a. experiments	b. experiences	c. experts	d. darkness
West Sulpress			
Vocabulary S	Marie Control of the		
Synonyms and Ar	itonyms		فترادفات ومتضادات

الكلمة Word المرادف Synonym Antonym skiedi kind friendly unkind غير طيب - قاس well fit/good سليم - معاف الا - unwell لیس علی ما پرام - مریض keep in mind يتذكر remember forget ينسي pleasant nice / good سار - لطيف unpleasant غير سار - مزعج greet welcome = say hello to يردب ignore يتجاهل fail miss / fall يفشل يجتاز pass

succeed

ينجح

noisy الصوت	صاذب / عالي	loud	quiet	هادئ
			silent	طامت
poor	فقير	needy	rich / wealthy	غنى

Prefixes & Suffixes	STATE OF THE STATE OF		مقاطع بادئة وناهية
Prefix / Suffix	الوظيفة Function	امثلة Examples	
– ness	تكۇن اسم	weakness kindness darkness	ضعف حسن المعاملة - الطيبة ظلام
- y	تكۇن صفة	tidy happy angry	مرتب سعید غاضب
– er	تكوِّن اسم الفاعل (الشخص)	stranger	غريب
un –	تعطى عكس المعنى	unpleasant unwell	غیر سار لیس علی ما پرام

Exercise on Vocabulary Study

0	Choose	the correct	answer	from a,	b,	c or d	:
---	--------	-------------	--------	---------	----	--------	---

1. The opposite of	of"ill" is		
a. will	b. well	c. wall	d. wheel
2. "Kind" has the	same meaning of	: u	
a. unkind	b. afraid	c. frightened	d. friendly
3. "" means	to say hello to so	meone.	
a. Greet	b. Great	c. Grow	d. Cover
4. We add (-ness)	to the word "wea	k" to form a / an	*****
a. verb	b. noun	c. adjective	d. adverb
5. The prefix "	" gives the opp	osite of "pleasant".	
a. un-	b. ir-	c. im-	d. in-

III Language

تدهر Remember

Future with (Be going to): (Be going to) المستقبل باستخدام

Formation التكوين

الاستخدام عووي

1) Future plans:

١) الخطط المستقبلية التي تم التخطيط لها بالفعل

وللتعبير عن الخطط تستخدم تعبيرات مثل:

لديه خطط have plans

ينطط make plans

ex.:- I am going to travel to Hurghada this summer. This is my plan.

2) Intentions:

٢) النوايا

التعبير عن النوايا تستخدم تعبيرات مثل: لديه نوايا have intentions

ينوى intend

قصدی هو ga قصدی

ex.:- We're going to travel by train. We have intended.

- I am going to build a house by the Nile. It's my intention.

3) Decisions:

۲) القرارات (المدروسة بتأنى)

وللتعبير عن القرارات تستخدم :

هذا قرار ... This is ... decision لقد قررت

قراری مو ga قراری

ex.:- I'm going to buy a new car. This is my decision.

4) Predictions with evidence:

٤) التنبؤات المبنية على دليل مادى (يوجد بالمضارع ما يجعل من الممكن حدوث الشيء مستقبلًا)

ex.:- It's going to rain. I can see the dark clouds in the sky.

5) Actions which are about to happen:

٥) يستخدم أيضًا مع الأحداث على وشك الوقوع ومع بعض العبارات التحذيرية مثل :

(Look out!/Be careful!/Watch out!)

ex .: - Look out! He is going to crash his car.

on Language (Answered & Explained)

في هذا الجزء نقدم للطالب تدريب على القاعدة اللغوية مجاب عنه ومصحوب بشرح أسباب اختيار اللجابة الصحيحة.

• Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- 1. I'm going to _____ to Alexandria next weekend.
 - a. travelling b. travelled c. travel d. travels
- 2. She _____ buy a new car. She has decided that.
 - a. going to b. is going to c. go to d. going
- 3. There are a lot of dark clouds. It
 - b. is raining c. is going to rain d. rains a. will rain

No.		الإجابة والتوضيح Answer + Explanation
1	C	(going to) يتبعها فعل في المصدر (inf.)
2	b	الجملة تعبر عن نية لعمل شيء مستقبلًا لذا نستخدم (is going to)
3	C	الجملة تعبر عن تنبؤ مبنى على دليل مادى (لحدوث شيء في المستقبل)

Exercises on Language

1. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

SB and WB Exercises

تدريبات من كتاب الطالب والتدريبات

- 1. 53 We the walls, which are covered in graffiti and old posters.
 - a. are painted

b. are going to paint

C paint

2. 53 What are we about it?

- a. going to do b. do
- c. will do

d. paints

d. did

3. WB What is going next Saturday?

a. to happen

a. cleaning

El-Moasser Exercises

lesson for me.

b. happened

b. cleans

4. WB Volunteers are going to up the park at 9 a.m.

5. The manager a meeting next Sunday, it's planned.

31 1110 1110			
a. is going to hole	d	b. will hold	
c. held		d. is holding	
6. Heba intends to	stay at home. She	go out.	
a. won't	b. isn't going to	c. didn't	d. doesn't
7. Ahmed decided	to start his own bu		
a. will open	b. opens	c. is going to open	d. opening
8. They aren't going	g to their tin	ne watching TV.	
a. wasted	b. waste	c. wasting	d. wastes
9. Nour goin	g to sleep early.		
a. doesn't	b. isn't	c. hasn't	d. never
2. Complete the se	ntences with the	correct form of	the word(s) in
brackets:			
SB and WB Exercises		الب والتدريبات	تدريبات من كتاب الط
1. SB The street	(going) be cl	osed on Saturday.	
2. 😘 How are you	going to (er	ncouraged) people	to help you do this?
3. WB A famous are at 4 pm.	chitect is going to	(talked) at t	he new museum
at 4 pm.		•	
	eare's play King Lear		t the theatre at 6 pm.
	Of Miles	(going be) a	
4. WB The Shakespe	ies	(going be) a	t the theatre at 6 pm.
4. WB The Shakespo	ses (will) rain.	(going be) a	t the theatre at 6 pm. تدریبات کتاب المعاصر
4. WB The Shakespool El-Moasser Exercise 5. It's cloudy. It 6. What are you go	ies (will) rain. Ding to(doir	(going be) a	t the theatre at 6 pm تدریبات کتاب المعاصر exam ?
4. WB The Shakespool El-Moasser Exercise 5. It's cloudy. It 6. What are you go 7. My father	ies (will) rain. Ding to (doin (won't) stay in Ca	going be) a (going be) a (g) for tomorrow's	t the theatre at 6 pm تدریبات کتاب المعاصر exam ? t's his plan.

d. happening

_{ثدا}یبات کتاب المعاصر

d. clean

c. happens

c. cleaned

ills Corner



كيفية التعامل مع معارات (القراعة - الكتابة - التحدث) في الورقة الامتحانية لكل درس على _{حده.} للمزيد من الشرم والتدريبات على مهارات (القراءة - الكتابة - التحدث) المريد من الشرم والتدريبات على مهارات (القراءة - الكتابة - التحدث) Part 2 في ملحق (Master Your Term)

. Reading Corner

مَم بِمَراءَة Reading on lesson 4 SB page 28 من كتاب المعاصر صفحة ١٥٥ ثم مَم بالتدرب على إجابة بعض أسئلة قطعة الفهم طبقاً لمواصفات الورقة الامتحانية.

Answer the following questions:

- Extracting information استخراج المعلومات
- 1. How could David help Mrs Micawber?
 - He sold some of their old books and furniture and gave her the money.
- Critical thinking skill : مهارة التفكير النقدى
- 2. What do you think of David's life with the Micawbers?
- Giving the main idea إعطاء الفكرة الرئيسية
- Give a suitable title to the passage.

2. Writing Corner

معارة الكتابة

A. Read the sentences

جمل تساعدك على كتابة فقرة إنشائية | رسالة بريد إلكتروني

قضايا مجتمعية "Community matters"

- 1. Helping an elderly neighbour is an act of kindness.
 - ١. مساعدة جار متقدم في السن هو أحد أنواع العطف.
- 2. You can help your local community by planting some trees along the streets. أيمكنك مساعدة مجتمعك المحلى بزراعة بعض الأشجار في الشوارع.
- 3. Donating food to people who don't have enough is great work. ٣. التبرع بالطعام للناس الذين ليس **لديهم ما يكفى ه**و عمل عظيم.

B. Building sentences

• Read and complete:

Will - graffiti - is going to - Volunteers - lodger

- 1. I was disappointed to see the on the walls.
- 2. It's dark. It rain.
- are people who work for no money.
- 4. The new is very kind. His room is opposite mine.

C. Writing a friendly letter:

عالة الحطاب الودي :

ame Lobil

يد من الشرح المحارات الكتابقا يمكنك الرجوع إلى ملحق (Master Your Term)

نهوذج للخطاب الودي "Model friendly letter"

Write a letter of about 110 words to your British friend Ann inviting her to visit Egypt. Tell her about the tourist attractions she will enjoy in Egypt.

Your name is Sama and you live at 22 Tahrir Street, Edfu, Aswan.

22 Tahrir St. Edfu, Aswan Address + Date 4

Greeting

Dear Ann.

How are you? I hope you and your family are happy and in good health. I write this letter to invite you to visit me here in Egypt. I'm sure you will enjoy every minute you will spend with us.

The weather in Egypt is wonderful. It is sunny and warm. You can visit a lot of tourist attractions. In Cairo, you can visit the Egyptian Museum. In Giza, you can visit the Pyramids and the zoo. If you visit Aswan, you will enjoy visiting Abu Simbel Temples, the High Dam and the Plants' Island. In Luxor, you will visit El-Karnak Temple and the Valley of the Kings. I hope you will accept my invitation. I'm looking forward to your reply.





D. Practise by yourself

- Write a letter of about 110 words to your friend Adam telling him about how we can communicate with other people in our community.
- Your name is Omar and you live at 155 Talat Harb, Downtown, Cairo.

3. Speaking Corner

معارة التددث

Communication in the comunity:

التواصل في المجتمع :

Questions







- Do you communicate with other people in your community?
- هل تتواصل مع الأشخاص الأخرين في مجتمعك ؟
- 2. Which form of communication could you use?
- أي من وس**ائل التواص**ل استطعت استخدامها ؟

- Yes, I do.

- نعم، أقوم بذلك.

- Social network service.
 - خدمة شبكة التواصل الاجتماعي.

التحدث عن المشكلات المجتمعية : : Talking about community problems

Questions



Answers



- What are the problems in your community?
 - ما هي ال<mark>مشكلات في مجتمعك ؟</mark>
- 2. What are you going to do to improve the situation ?
 عاذا سوف تفعل لتحسن الموقف الحالى ؟
- 3. How are you going to encourage people to help you do this?
 عيف ستقوم بتشجيع الأشخاص لمساعدتك
 في فعل هذا؟

- Graffiti on the walls of the historic buildings and not enough leisure activities for young people.
 - الكتابة على جدران المبانى التاريخية وعدم
 وجود أنشطة ترفيهية كافية للشباب.
- I'm going to clean the graffiti off the walls and start a new sports club.
 - سوف أنظف الجدران من الكتابة التي عليها وسأبدء العمل على نادى رياضي جديد.
- I'm going to make posters and write a post on social network service page.
 - سوف أصنع منصقات وساكتب منشور على صفحة خدمات شبكة التواصل اللجتماعي.

General Exercises



LESSONS 3 & 4

• Understand

· Apply

• Create

4				
	Complete the fo	ollowing dialog	ie:	
i			out a novel she ha	is read.
1	Maya : What are			
	Soha :(1)			
		That's great . (2)	?	
		reading it last wee		
	Maya : (3)			
4	Soha : The write	r is called Charles	Dickens.	
	Maya : What's th	e title of the nove	1?	
	Soha : (4)			
	Maya : Oliver Tw	ist! Is it an excitin	g novel ?	
	Soha : (5)			
2	Choose the cor	rect answer from	na,b,cord:	
•	1. The girl gave tl	ne thief her bag	fear.	
	a. for	b. in	c. about	d. of
•	2. My father is bu	sy today because	he has a lot of	
			c. neighbours	
•		their new		•
	a. to	b. off	c. with	d. up
•	Deaf people al	ways communica	teeach oth	er in sign language
	a. on	b. form	c. with	d. for
•	5. We will remove	e the on the	wall of the impor	tant buildings. The
	are very bad.			-
	a. ideas	b. volunteers	c. bricks	d. graffiti
•	6. To keep in	means to reme	mber.	
	a. minutes	b. fear	c. mend	d. mind
		with other pe	ople in your comr	nunity?
	a. collect	b. encourage	c. correct	d. communicate

ò	8. Randa a new gold ring nex	it week.	
	a. is bought	b. is going to be b	ought
	c. is going to buy	d. bought	
	9. What are those dark clouds? I thi	nk it	
	a. rains	b. is going to rain	
	c. will rain	d. is raining	
	0. 😘 We are going our own	social network serv	ice.
	a. to start b. to starting	c. start	d. starting
3	Complete the sentences with th	e correct form of	the word(s) in
0	brackets:		
	1(Be) you going to buy that	flat ?	
	2. What time is she going to (ng ?
	3. SS What are we (go to) do		
	(')	101	
	4. Marwa (going) meet her fri	end, Ola at the club	. It's her decision.
1			. It's her decision.
4	Complete the sentences with th	ese words:	. It's her decision.
4		ese words:	. It's her decision.
4	Streets - interested - po	ollution - plant - go are going to (1)	some trees
4	Complete the sentences with the streets - interested - possible with the stree	ollution - plant - go are going to (1) ce (3) and	some trees also encourage
41	Complete the sentences with the streets - interested - possible with the stree	ollution - plant - go are going to (1) ce (3) and	some trees also encourage
4	Complete the sentences with the streets - interested - possible with the stree	ollution - plant - go are going to (1) ce (3) and	some trees also encourage
4	Complete the sentences with the streets - interested - possible with the stree	ollution - plant - go are going to (1) ce (3) and	some trees also encourage
5	We need more trees! A few of us along the (2)	are going to (1)	some trees also encourage
5	Complete the sentences with the streets - interested - per streets - intere	ese words: ollution - plant - go are going to (1) ce (3)	some trees also encourage
•	We need more trees! A few of us along the (2)	are going to (1)	some trees also encourage liness. at 9 am.
•	We need more trees! A few of us along the (2)	are going to (1)	some trees also encourage liness. at 9 am.
•	We need more trees! A few of us along the (2)	are going to (1)	some trees also encourage liness. at 9 am. lyman who lives

5 & 6

SB pages 29 & 30 WB pages 90 & 91



Vocabulary

Key Vocabulary

happiness (n)	هادة - ابتهاج	tourist attraction (n)	بامل جذب سیاحی
however (adv)	ومع ذلك	furthermore (adv)	ىلوة على ذلك
firstly (adv)	أولًا	in addition (adv)	الإضافة إلى ذلك
summarise (d) (v)	يلخص - يوجز	conclude (d) (v)	ختم - پنھی

تنويه 🔹 Key Vocabulary هي المفردات الأكثر أهمية المطلوب م<mark>ن الطالب إتقانها.</mark>

- Master your Vocabulary يقضى على جميع مشاكل ح<mark>فظ المفردات (ملحق Master).</mark>
 - Glossary لحصيلة أكبر (للمزيد) من المفردات اللغوية نهاية الكتاب.

Lesson (5) SB page 29 WB page 90

introduce (d) (v)	يقدم	adult (n), (adj)	بالغ - راشد
greetings (n)	تحيات	introductions (n)	مُقدمات
language (n)	قفا	daughter (n)	ابنة
situation (n)	موقف (حیاتی)	repair (ed) (v) (n)	بملح - إصلاح

Lesson 6 SB page 30 WB page 91

Marie Sandard			
invite (d) (v)	يدعو	conclusion (n)	خاتمة
extra (adj)	إضافي	contact (ed) (v)	يتصل
contrast (n)	تباین - تناقض	windsurfing (n)	رياضة ركوب الأمواج
builder (n)	عامل بناء	result (n)	نتيجة
anymore (adv)	على الإطلاق - أبدًا	بيوان) Heisa (n)	هیسا (جزیرة نوبیة فی اس

Conjugation of Irregular Verbs

Conjugation of Ir	صريف الأفعال غ ير المنتظمة	
المضارع Present	الماضي Past	التصريف الثالث . P.P
يقابل meet	met	met
pecome معنو	became	become

say	يقول	said	said
write	بكتب	wrote	written
choose	يختار	chose	chosen

III Listening and Reading



on Lesson 5 SB page 29









Narrator: One

Fares: Hi, there, Omar!

Omar : Hello, Fares!

Fares : Do you know my cousin, Adam?

Omar : No, I don't.

Fares : Adam, meet(1) Omar. Omar, meet Adam.

Omar : Nice to meet you, Adam!

Adam : Nice to meet you, too.

Narrator: Two

Samira: Hi, there Ola!

Ola : Hello, Samira! Have you met Randa?

She's just started working at our office.

Samira: No, we haven't met. It's a pleasure(2) to meet you

Randa : Pleased to meet you, too, Samira!

Check Vocabulary

بکل سرور (2) یقابل (۱)

Narrator: Three

Sara

: Good morning. I'd like to introduce(*) myself. I'm Sara, _{I'n,}

your new neighbour.

Lamar

: Pleased to meet you, Saral I'm Lamar, and this my

mother, Mrs Mansour.

Sara

: Pleased to meet you both.

Mrs Mansour : It's a pleasure to meet you, too, Sara.

Welcome to our neighbourhood!

Check Vocabulary

يقدم / تعرف (١)

on Lesson 5 WB page 90

Mrs Laila: Good morning, class. I'd like to introduce

myself. I'm your new teacher, Mrs Laila.

Class

: Good morning, Mrs Laila.

Ь

Father

: Heba, I'd like you to meet our new

neighbour, Mr Baher.

Heba

: Pleased(1) to meet you, Mr Baher.

Father

: This is my daughter(2), Heba.

Mr Baher: Pleased to meet you too, Heba.



Hamdi

: Hi Basel. Do you know my friend, Imad?

Basel

: No, I don't.

Hamdi

: Basel, meet Imad. We're in the same football team.

Basel

: Nice to meet you(3), Imad.

Imad

: Nice to meet you, too.

Check Vocabulary

• سعدت بلقائك (3) ابله (2) مسرور (1)



on Lesson 6 SB page 10

Firstly(1), let me say how much we all love our Children's Library, However, It new needs some work. The children don't like it anymore because it looks old and needs painting. We want to encourage children to use the library again

At our community meeting, we decided to improve the building. We want to invite you to help us. We got some Ideas from the Mashrou

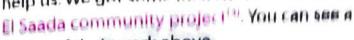


photo of their work above,

Every year, a group of people go to Heisa, near Aswan, to paint the houses in "colours of happiness". We are going to do the same thing here! It will make our library look exciting. Furthermoreth, the library will become a tourist attraction(5).

To conclude (6), we are looking for volunteers to help us plan and complete the project. If you are interested⁽¹⁾, please contact met



Chark	Vocabulary
CHECK	a water and and the fact the last

Check Vocabi	mary .	(3) Ajenījak A kemil gajdin	
(1) tígi	A DESCRIPTION OF THE PROPERTY AND ADDRESS OF THE PROPERTY ADDRESS OF THE PROPERTY AND ADDRESS OF THE PROPERTY ADDRESS OF THE P	The state of the s	
(17 ang)	عامل جذب سياحي (5)	وطي الختام (م)	(7) <u>pima</u>
علاوة على ذلك (4)	(a) Carlin chan Store	1111	

on Lesson 6 WB page 91

Firstly, let me say how proud(1) we are of the castle^{1/1} in our town. However, it now needs some work. People love walking on top of the castle walls, but some of them are dangerous. Also, some people leave rubbish inside the castle.

At our community meeting(3), we decided to improve the castle. We

are going to get some builders to repair the walls. Furthermore, children at the school are going to help clean up the rubbish.

To conclude, we think that the castle is going to look amazing and will become a tourist attraction.

Check Vocabulary

ALL MAN	a constitution	THE PARTY OF THE P	1	
(1) 1456	(2) delà	الله مجنوعي (3)	(4) alloy	

on Lesson 7 WB page 92

One day, I saw a message on the noticeboard (1) by the front door (2) to our flats. It said that Mr Maher, who is very elderly, needed a new bench. The one he sits on outside his flat is broken. So, I encouraged all my neighbours (3) to help to buy him a new one. Some men delivered it this morning. Mr Maher was very surprised when it arrived! Mr Maher was very pleased by our kindness. Our neighbourhood is very friendly (4) and we like to help each other.

Check Vocabulary

ودود (4) الجيران (3) الباب الأمامي (2) لوحة إعلانات (1)

on Lesson 7 SB page 31

I'd like to say thank you to the young woman who helped me yesterday. I was walking along(1) the pavement when I suddenly felt very tired. I'm elderly, you see. A young woman saw me and greeted me warmly(2). She encouraged me to sit down on a bench and have a rest (3).



It was so wonderful⁽⁴⁾ to be treated with such kindness. That's why⁽⁵⁾ I'm so happy to live in this neighbourhood. Our community is so kind and helpful!

Check Vocabulary

ولهذا السبب (5) الله (4) تاذذ قسط من الراحة (3) البود / بدف: (2) المشي على امتداد (1)

ideoscript

Narrator: There are many amazing projects that help communities in Egypt. Some of these projects help people, such as this one which helps people to get fresh water, and some help the environment, like these volunteers taking rubbish from rivers.

Bassita is a company that organises community projects. For example, the VeryNile projects helps to clean the River Nile. They take lots of rubbish, such as plastic, from the river. They then recycle the plastic.

Some of the plastic they collect is going to become shopping bags. Another project provides clean water for many people.

The Makhad Trust helps people in the Sinai Peninsula.

They teach people to keep bees. These bees are going to make honey, which we use for food. The Makhad Trust also creates gardens so people can grow their own food.

Are there any community projects where you live ? What do they do to help your community?



1 as / like

• as + aفيفو

تَدَلَ عَلَى أَنَ الْفَاعَلَ يَقُومُ بَهَذُهُ الْوَظَّيْفَةُ.

ex.:- Haleem works as a doctor.

• like + قطيفة

تدل عني أن الفاعل لا يعمل تلك الوظيفة ولكن طريقة الأداء تشبه تلك الطريقة المتبعة في

ex.:- Haleem works like a doctor. He always checks before saying a word.

2 in addition to / in addition / furthermore / however

بالإضافة ل * in addition to ... (n. سر / inf. + ing) ex.:- In addition to being a trader تاجر , he works as a primary school

teacher. بالإضافة

ex.:- He works as a primary school teacher. In addition, he is a trader. * in addition + Jelå + Jeå علاوة على ذلك

furthermore

للحظ : تُستخدم Furthermore لإضافة معلومات أكثر عن موضوع ما ويتبعها جملة

ex.: [53] - It will make our library look exciting. Furthermore, the library will become a tourist attraction.

however = but

ومع ذلك - برغم ذلك - ولين

تستخدم للتعبير عن التناقض أو إعطاء معلومات متناقضة

ex.: - He is strong, but he can't carry the box.

- He is strong. However, he can't carry the box.
- He is strong, however, he can't carry the box.
- 3 formal / informal

* formal language

رغة رسمية

ريدة : أن اللغة الرسمية تستخدم مع أشخاص لا نعرفهم.

* informal language

قفة غير رسمية

🚌 : أن اللغة الغير رسمية تستخدم مع الأسرة والأصدقاء.

هناك بعض التعبيرات يستخدمها كاتب الرسالة / المقال لبدء أو إنهاء الرسا**لة / المقال**

* Firstly, ... = To start with, ...

أولًا ... / لنبدأ بـ ...

* To conclude, ...

للختام ... / واختم بـ ...

* To summarise, = To sum up

اختصارًا / باللختصار

نهبیرات وحروف جر هامة Prepositions & Prepositions نهبیرات وحروف جر هامة

introduce ... to ... يقدم ... إلى ... give reasons for يعطي أسباب لـ ...

Nice to meet you! امن اللطيف أن أقابلك!

match ... with ... بوطل ... بـ ...

a friend of yours / mine ... etc.

صديق لك / لي ... الخ

in the same football team

في ن**فس فريق كرة القدم**

look old سدو قديمًا / عجوزا at our community meeting

... invite ... to أَفَى لَقَاءَ مَجَتَمَعَى

decide to يقرر أن look like يشبه

please contact me من فضلك اتصل بي the problem with ... العشكلة في ... answer to ... اجابة لـ احل لـ ... write a conclusion بكتب ملخصا / الخلاصة add extra information

بضيف مزيد من المعلومات

give contrasting information

يعطى معلومات متناقضة

clean up ينظف

work on a project يعمل على إنجاز مشروع

يدعو ... إلى ...

the front door الباب الأمامي

Exercise on Vocabulary

Ochoose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

Key vocabulary			
1, enter the	website. Secondly	y, fill in the form.	
a Furthermore	b. Firstly	c. However	d. Then
2. To, we are	looking for build	ers to help us com	plete the building.
a. contact	b. greet	c. introduce	d. conclude
3 is the state	e of feeling or sho	wing pleasure.	
a Weakness	b. Happiness	c. Illness	d. Darkness
4. She was ill.	, she went to the	club this morning	J.
a. However		b. Furthermore	
c. In addition		d. In addition to	
		الب والتدريبات	تدریبات من کتاب الط
SB and WB Exercises 5. WB I'd like to	muself I'm VOI		
	l- maint	Introduce	- J
a. meet 6. WB You usually t	p. pairit	ne with people you	do not know.
		(III I Julica 2. C	
a. formal 7. \$\infty\$ When you w	b. Informal	you can use the ex	pression "To
7. SB When you w	rite a / all	,	
summarise".	la grooting	c. conclusion	d. contrasting
a. introduction 8. SB Usela	b. greening	family and friends	.
	b. informal	c. foreign	d. sign
a. formal		j	تدريبات كتاب المعاص
El-Moasser Exercis	es	mo a tourist	for Egypt.
9. I think the new n	nuseum will beco	c attraction	d. reason
a. reaction	b. result	then it is windy.	
a. reaction 10 can be pra	ectised on water w	c. Volleyball	d. Running
a. Windsurfing 11. If you are interes	b. Swimming	me, pleaser	ne.
11. If you are interes	ted to come	c. communicate	d. summarise
a introduce	b. contact		

Language Notes, Expressions & Prepositions

12. Shireen is a friend of

a.I

b. me c. my d. mine

13. conclude, good always wins.

a. With

b. At

c.In

d. To

14. What's the problem your bike, Basim?

a. with

b for

c. of

d. by

15. Noha works a volunteer in a community charity.

a. like

b. as

C. SO

d. such

16. He's so hungry. He is eating a horse.

b. so

c. that

d. like

Vocabulary Study:

Synonyms and Antonyms مترادفات ومتضادات Word قماحا المرادف Synonym الوطاد Antonym formal official رسمي informal غير رسمي suitable مناسب - ملائم appropriate unsuitable عير ملائم عني مناسب - غير ملائم correct right صحيح غير صحيح/ خطأ incorrect/ wrong improve develop یحسن / یطور damage يتلف - تدمر joy / pleasure سعادة - ابتهاج sadness حزن helpful عداسه - مساعد useful helpless علم - ضعيف useless غير مفيد

Prefixes & Suffixes		ä	مقاطع بادئة وناهي
Prefix / Suffix	الوظيفة Function		
in –	تكوِّن العكس	informal	غیر رسمی
- lv	تكوِّن الظرف	firstly	اولا
,	تحون العرب	warmly	بدفء - بود

Exercise on Vocabulary Study

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- 1."Right" is the synonym of ".....".
 - a. correct
- b. light
- c. left
- d. formal

2. The opposite of official is" a, informal b. suitable 3. The adjective "warm" can be an adverb by adding " a.-ed b.-Ing

6.166

6. HALL

0.44

4 MIGHE

4. To give the opposite of the word "formal" we add the prefix".

a, in-

b.im-

E. 1492-

0.00

5. The word "Firstly" is a / an

a. verb

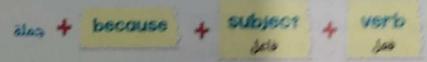
b. adverb

c. pronoun d. adjective

Language

because

(Limit (je jijći klas (msez golišni) (št



Heba doesn't like long bus journeys because she gets bored.

2 50

(bagist ije yeli blag (maeş galilmi) dilla

Soha stayed up late, so she couldn't get up early.

Which:

طمير وصل پستخدم لربط جملتين القاعل أو المقعول بها غير عامل:

ex. - The Egyptian football team beat Brazil 3 - 0 which was a surprising result!

© Complete the following sentences with the correct form of the words in brackets:

1. WB Dareen is really enjoying the book (so) it is very exciting.

2. WB Heba thought that Injy was ill (because) she was surprised to see her at school.

- 3. WB Kamal swam all along the beach (where) was very tiring.
- 4. I lived in the house (who) was built by my granddad.

Skills Corner



ىيفية التعامل مع معارات (القراءة - الكتابة - التحدث) في الورقة الامتحانية لكل درس على حده. نتويم للمزيد من الشرح والتدريبات على مهارات (القراءة - الكتابة - التحدث) Part 2 في ملحق (Master Your Term)

• Reading Corner

فَم بقراءة Reading on lesson 6 SB page 30 من كتاب المعاصر صفحة ١٧١ ثم ق**م بالتدرب** على إجابة بعض أسئلة قطعة الفهم طبقاً لمواصفات الورقة الامتحانية.

Answer the following questions:

- Extracting information استخراج المعلومات
- 1. Where is the writer sending the message to?
 - To a community network page.
- Critical thinking skill : مهارة التفكير النقدى
- 2. Why do you think they painted the building?
- إعطاء الفكرة الرئيسية Giving the main idea
- 3. What is the main idea of the passage?

2. Writing Corner

معارة الكتابة

A. Read the sentences

بمل تساعدك على كتابة فقرة إنشالية / ر**سالة بريد إلكتروني**

صفحة خدمة التواصل اللجتماعي "Social network services page"

- The library needs painting. We want to encourage children to use the library again.
 - الهكتبة في حاجة للدهان. نحن نريد أن نشجع الأطفال على استخدا**م المكتبة مرة أخرى.**
- 2. At our community meeting, we decided to improve the building. في اجتماع الجماعة قررنا ان نطور المبنى.
- 3. We got some ideas from the Mashrou El Saada Community. أ. حصلنا على بعض الافكار من جمعية مشروع السعادة.

B. Building sentences

Read and complete:

conclude - project - cleans - clean - informal

- 1. We usually uselanguage with friends.
- 2. We are going to up the rubbish.

3. What is your about?

4. To, we are looking for volunteers to help us.

بعد دراسة القواعد والمفردات اللغوية الخاصة بالدرسين قم بالتربب على بناء الجملة

C. Practise by yourself

تحرب على كتابة فقرة إنشائية / رسالة بريد إلكتروني.

- Write an email of about (110) words to your friend Manar to tell her about your: "Community project"

Your name is Heba and your email address is heba@gmail.com. Your friend's email address is manar@gmail.com.

Speaking Corner

معارة التحدث

Using formal and informal greetings:

استخدام التحيات في اللغة الرسمية وغير الرسمية :

اللغة الرسمية Formal Language

- Hello
- How are you?
- Pleased to meet you. انه من اللطيف مقابلتك Nice to meet you.
- I'd like to introduce myself.

. See you later - أود أن أقدم نفسي.

- Goodbye. . Bye - مع السلامة.
- اسم الصديق. I'd like you to meet أود أن تقارل اسم الشخص.

Informal Language مُرس بيضة الغير رسمية

- limi Hi/Hey - املا/ مرحنا
- ? How is it going کیف حالك ؟ كيف تسير الأمور
 - سعدت بمقابلتك.
 - How is your day? کیف پسپر پومك ؟
 - أراك للحقا.
 - مع السلامة.
 - اسم الصديق This is -هذا

General Exercises



LESSONS 5 & 6

Understand
 Apply

• Create

	Comple	te the fo	llowing dialogu	e:		
i	Ayman i	s introducing his brother Omar to his friend Mustafa.				
			Mustafa. This is my			
				How do y	ou do, Omar ?	
	Ayman	: Where a	are you going?			
	Mustafa	: (3)				
	Ayman	: We are	going to the supe	ermarket, too.		
	Mustafa	: (4)	?			
	Ayman	: To buy	some groceries ಖ	بق		
	Mustafa	; (5)	?			
	Ayman	: Of cour	se, you can join u	s.		
2	Choose	the corre	ect answer from	a,b,cord:		
•	1. When	I met my	teacher, he	me warmly.		
	a. told		b. spoke	c. greeted	d. shouted	
•	2. 55 We use "To conclude" to write a/an at the end of the topic					
	a. intr	oduction	b. conclusion	c. greeting	d. result	
•	3. We ca	n use "	" when we leav	e someone.		
	a. Plea	sed	b. Bye	c. Good evening	d. Hi	
•	4. You ca	n use "Go	od morning" as a	anin the m	orning.	
	a. con	clusion	b. introduction	c. greeting	d. reason	

5. I can't find my English book. I will look it in the living room.

6. My mother asked me not to the same thing when I make

c. after

c. have

d. up

d. forgive

b. for

a mistake I should not repeat my mistakes.

b. make

180

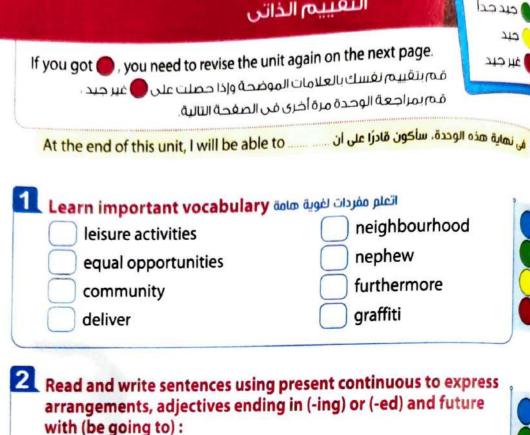
a. at

a. do

Self Assessment Activity

التقييم الذاتي

ممتاز



اقرأ واكتب جمل باستخدام زمن المضارع المستمر للتعبير عن ترتيبات مستقبلية والصفات المنتهية بــ (ing) و (ed) والمستقبل القريب باستخدام (be going to) We are starting a project next month. The film was very boring. I was very surprised by the great result. The teacher is going to explain this lesson tomorrow.

3 Talk about my community: اتحدث عن مجتمعي What are the best things about your community? Are there any facilities for the disabled people in your town? How can you improve the facilities for them? What are the worst problems in your town?

، جزء للمتابعة في كراسة المعاصر Master your term جزء للمتابعة الشهرية بعد كل ثلاث وحدات

لمزيد من التدريبات



on unit 3

SB	page	31
	F-9-	

1 WB page 92

Vocabulary	Language	Speaking
sports activities वंक्रंग्रे	1. Adjectives ending in - (ing) or - (ed)	1. Describing communities
ocios community		- وصف المجتمعات
تسهیلات facilities	- الصفات الفينهية بـ (gni) نستخدم لوصف ر	
النقل والمواصلات transport	JEM .	
opportunities மு	- The film was boring.	(A) - Which people have made a difference in
اختلاف difference	- الصفات المنتهية بـ (ed) تستخدم لوصف	your community?
deliver	mag	- Doctors helped us in coronavirus
encourage encourage	-I was bored.	.جائحة ڤيروس كورونا pandamic
ی - مجاورة pourhood		(B) - How do you communicate with other
يقوم بدراسة بحثية do a survey	2. Future with (be going to)	people in your community?
مقعد (ثابت) bench	 تستخدم هذه الصيغة للتعبير عن الخطط 	- Through social networking sites.
وسوم على الحائط graffiti	المستقبلية والنوايا والتنبؤات المبنية على دليل ال	2. Describing communities problems:
جمعية خيرية charity	مادي	- وصف المشكلات المحتوعية
_ بردب - پُدین greet	- What are you going to do tomorrow?	D
volunteers oid	- She's going to visit her aunt next week.	
- rumiting / rumicing endlode	- There are a lot of dark clouds in the sky Lack of facilities	
orid disappointed		لجدران slls
مندهش aurprised	0	

Writing Skill

ممارة الكتابــــة معالجة جديدة للفقرة الإلشائية والبريد الإلكتروس"

A Paragraph / An email on

The Decent life initiative / A community project / Sports facilities in your town / Community matters/problems



Brainstorming

_{مجمو}عة أسئلة لاستثارة أفكار لكتابة الفقرة الإنشائية / رسالة بريد إلكتروني

- What services can you give to your community?
- How can we encourage young people to do sports?
- What are the community problems you want to solve?



مفردات لغوية مساعدة

- community
- local shops
- good transport
- opportunities
- encourage
- neighbourhood
- handball

- proud of
- kindness
- volunteers
- posters
- charity
- message of thanks



Expressions & Structures

نعبيرات وتراكيب مساعدة

- I felt when I came first.
- We are to play football in the evening.
- We encouraged people to throw their rubbish.
- I'm very proud of



Paragraph / Email

^{كتابة} الفقرة الإنشائية / رسالة بريد إلكتروني

Write a	paragraph of about (110) word	son:
WIIICE C	"Services and facilities in you	ır community"

Exam Language Bank

أهم النقاط (موضح إختبار) في كل وحدة والتي تستطيخ من خلالها التعامل مع تدريبات الوحدة و كل التدريبات الخاصة بانمنهم



Vocabulary

مفردات لغوية قد تكون موضع اختبار

community	مجتمع	sports activities	أنشطة رياضية
facilities	تسميلات	graffiti	رسوم على الحائط
opportunities	فرص	charity	جمعية خيرية
deliver	يُسلم / يوصل	greet	يُحيى
encourage	يشجع	volunteers	متطوعين
transport	نقل	disappointed	محبط

26 Language

- قواعد لغوية هامة قد تكون موضع اختبار :
- They are starting⁽¹⁾ to paint the wall tomorrow morning.
- Ghada is going to⁽²⁾ visit her aunt next week.
- 3. I'm interested(3) in music.
- 4. This story is very exciting(4).

Check Language

- مضارع مستمر يعبر عن ترتيبات في المستقبل (١)
- مستقبل قريب (خطط) في المستقبل باستخدام (going to) (2)
- صفة منتهية بـ (ed) تصف المشاعر (3)
- صفة منتمية بـ (ing) تصف اشياء (4)

3. Speaking

وظائف لغوية هامة قد تكون موضع اختبار :

Questions



Answers



- Which people can make a difference in your community?
- 2. What is the best way to communicate with other people in your community?
- Young people can make a difference in our community.
- The best way is using social network services.

General Exercises

Understand

Apply

Create

Complete the following dialogue:

Ashraf is meeting a tourist in the Egyptian Museum.

Ashraf: Welcome to Egypt. How do you do?

Tourist : Hello, (1)

Ashraf : (2)?

Tourist: I'm from Italy.

Ashraf : (3) ?

Tourist: I will stay for a week.

Ashraf: Is this your first visit?

Ashraf: What's your opinion about the Egyptian people?

Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

Firstly, we all love our Children's Library. However, it now needs some work. The children don't like it anymore because it looks old and needs painting. We want to encourage children to use the library again.

At our community meeting, we decided to improve the building. We want to invite people to help us. We got some ideas from the Mashrou El-Saada community project. There are many photos of this project. Every year, a group of people go to Heisa, near Aswan, to paint the houses in colours of happiness. We are going to do the same thing here! It will make our library look exciting. Furthermore, the library will become a tourist attraction.

To conclude, we are looking for volunteers to help us plan and complete the project.

a. Answer the following questions:

Explain why the children's library need some work. Give two reasons.

El Saada ?			e houses in Mashrou
3. In your poir	nt of view, are libra	ries important ? \	5 5
	orrect answer fron		
4. The passage	e is about		
a. Renewin	g the children's libr	ary	
b. voluntar	y work	c. our commu	nity
d. Mashrou	El Saada		
5. The underli	ned pronoun " <u>it</u> " re	fers to	
a. project	b. community	c. painting	d. library
6. Which of th	e following was me	entioned in the p	assage
a. the idea	to make the library	attractive	
b. asking fo	or volunteers to help	p them	
c. painting	houses in colours o	f happiness	
d. the locat	ion of the library		
Choose the co	rrect answer from	a, b, c or d:	
1. We should take	e part in our comm	unity	
a. messages	b. shops	c. events	d. accidents
2. All people sho	ud have opp	ortunities.	
a. different	b. difficult	c. remote	d. equal
3. It was very	to sit under that	tree drinking so	me tea.
a. pleasant	b. pleased	c. violent	d. disappointed
4. We all often lis	ten to our local rad	io daily.	
a. pavement	b. platform	c. station	d. road
5. Si Your broth	er or sister's son is)		
a. cousin	b. nephew	c. uncle	d. parent
	not at school today		
a. good	b. careful	c. ill	d. well

to learn how many people didn't have enough 7. Still I was very d. boring c. bored b. surprising a. surprised deliver the new washing machine? 8. What time b. are they going to a. they are going to d. they were going to c. were they going to 9. Amira intends to fix her broken laptop next week. This means that b. she fixed it a. she is going to fix it d. she fixes it c she was fixing it 10. 53 The community centre _____ closed on Saturday next week. b. is going to a. is going d. is going to being c. is going to be

- Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:
 - 1. When (they going) go shopping?
 - 2. Where (you go) to watch the match tomorrow?
 - 3. Adham (go) to take an English course next summer.
 - 4. I (not going) travel to Luxor this week.
- Complete the sentences with these words:

elderly - repeated - bench - greeted - along

I'd like to say thank you to the young woman who helped me yesterday. I was walking (1) the pavement when I suddenly felt very tired. I'm (2) , you see. A young woman saw me and (3) me warmly. She encouraged me to sit down on a (4) and have a rest.

- 6 Choose the correct word :
 - 1. WB Today's maths lesson was very interested / interesting. I learnt a lot.
- 2. What are you going to do / doing to improve the park?
- WB Write a story of about (110) words on:

مجاب عنه في نهاية الكتاب

"A person who made a difference in your community"

Stop here!

A	В
 There are lots of sport activities This museum is amazing. I don't like the sweeth of chocolate. We use formal languages. Kamal swam all along the beach. 	b. I prefer salty food. c. with people we do not know. d. which was very tiring.
. We were disappointed t	
I. I read an interesting lea s I. The park is going to bei I. You can use "Furthermo	about a new museum. (
. I read an interesting lea t . The park is going to bei	re" to write a conclusion.
I read an interesting lead. The park is going to being. You can use "Furthermouse your brain, this hoose the correct answer. That's rubbish. You can the	about a new museum. (
I read an interesting lead. The park is going to being. You can use "Furthermo". You can use "Furthermo". That's rubbish. You can that up b. out	about a new museum. (
Li read an interesting lead. The park is going to being. You can use "Furthermo". You can use "Furthermo". That's rubbish. You can the aup b. out Everyone is happy so	about a new museum. (

Review A

SB pages 32 & 33 WB pages 93 & 94





on Lesson 1 SB page 32

Narrator 1

Voice: From the bus station, go straight on and walk past the monument.

Then, turn right and it is opposite the museum.

Narrator 2

Voice: From the bus station, go straight on and then take the second road on the left. It's on the left, opposite the nature reserve.

Narrator 3

Voice: From the supermarket, walk past the bus station and turn right.

Go straight on and it's on the corner, opposite the café.

Narrator 4

Voice: From the restaurant, walk past the monument then turn right at the monument. Then take the first road on the left. It's on the left, next to the car park.



on Lesson 1 SB page 32

Museum of Natural Science

Last year, there was an amazing exhibition of sea animals at the Museum of Natural Science. While visitors were walking around the exhibition, they could also watch videos and listen to the sounds of the sea. Next year, another exhibition will tell visitors about animal life in the desert.



Many people think that the desert doesn't have much life in it. This exhibition will show that lots of animals live there, if you know where to look! The exhibition opens on the 5th of March. Tickets will be on sale now from the museum or online.

on Lesson 2 SB page 33

I'm really excited about this week as I'm going to start my new volunteering job! My basketball team are going to play basketball with some disabled children and teach them about the game. I love children (I have three younger brothers and sisters) so I think it will be really fun. I'm happy I can volunteer with my friends, too. I think it is important that people help their community.

My friend and I are looking for some volunteer work. We want to help elderly people or young children. We both like little children! We are going to ask at local community centres about reading to elderly people and local schools about helping young children to read. We read a lot in our spare time but we want to do something useful for other people.





on Lesson 1 WB page 93

Good morning, everyone. I'd like to introduce⁽¹⁾ myself. I'm Judy and I work for See the best of Cairo. Today, you're going to visit two places. They are not the most famous ones, but we think they are the best! Why? Because they are neither full of tourists nor expensive, but they have some very interesting things to see.



Check Vocabulary



Firstly, in the morning, we're taking you to the Egyptian Railways Museum⁽²⁾. It opens at 9 a m. Here you'll find trains but also some offer historical(3) forms of transport, including planes. The museum is next to Cairo train station(4). Then, at about 2 p m, we're going to the House of Gamal Al-Din Al-Dahabi. This is one of the oldest houses in the city, built in the seventeenth century(5). It has beautiful windows, doors and even a fountain 6. We know you won't be bored in either of these places !

Check Vocabulary

نافورة (6) قرن (5) محطة قطار (4) تاريخي (3) متحف سكك حديد مصر (2)



on Lesson 2 WB page 94

: Good afternoon, I'd like to make Man

a complaint(1).

Assistant: What's the problem?

: I ordered something from your

website(2), but it hasn't arrived.

Assistant: I'm very sorry about that. What did

you order?

Man : A black kettle(3).

Assistant: A black kettle? Why don't you come

to our shop?

We have one here. You don't have to pay (4) anything more.

: Thank you. Where is your shop? Man

Assistant: It's next to the museum. From the station, turn right and walk

past⁽⁵⁾ the clothes shop. We are on the left.

: What time do you open ? Man

Assistant: We open from 8 am to 4 pm every day except (6) Friday.

Check Vocabulary

عدا - باستثناء (6) يمشي مازًا بـ (5) يدفع (4) غلاية مياه (3) موقع إلكتروني (2) شكوى (1)





Mini-Test on Unit 1

قم بمراجعة الوحدة مرة أخرى في نهاية كل وحدة.

त्रं ट्रांट 7 مَّم بتقييم نفسك بالعلامات الموضحة وإذا حصلت على 🔵 غير جيد If you got 🔵 , you need to revise the unit again at the end of each unit.

Complete the following dialogue:	3. The journey to Luxor was	y to Luxor		. I enjoyed
Ahmed is talking to a clerk in the train station.	a lot.			
Ahmed: Where does the train to Aswan leave from?	a. boring		b. comfortable	table
Clerk : (1).	c. hard		d. ugly	
Ahmed: Platform five! (2)	4. You can see beautiful fish at the	e beautiful	fish at the	
Clerk : The next train leaves in 5 minutes.	a. cinema	a. cinema b. bank	C. aquariu	c. aquariumd. museum
Ahmed: (3)?	5. I need to	S	some money from	from
Clerk : It takes 7 hours to reach Aswan.	the bank.			
Ahmed: Are there any other trains to Aswan?	a lend	b borrow c give	QVIV	tio
Clerk : (4)	5		,	5
Ahmed: What time does this one leave?	6. How	l go fro	I go from Cairo to Qena?	Qena?
Clerk :(5)	a. does	p. do	c. done	c. done d. doing

3. Write a paragraph of about (110) words on : "Your journey to Luxor by train"

in the Egyptian

b. pyramids

d. canals

. monuments

a. animals

Museum.

2. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

Tourists can see a lot of

b. platform c. library d. office does the train leave from? a. ticket 2. Which

If you got 🔴 , you need to revise the unit again at the end of each unit. قم بمراجعة الوحدة مرة أخرى في نهاية كل وحدة. قم يتقييم نفسك بالعلامات الموضحة وإذا حصلت على 🔵 غير جيد



. Complete the following dialogue: Unit 2 Mini-Test on

Assistant: How can I help you, sir? Ayman is making a complaint.

Assistant: Was it logged in before turning off? Ayman : My computer suddenly (1).

Ayman : Yes, (2)

Assistant: (3)

Ayman : Yes, I turned it on again but it said my Ayman : Yes, I was charging it. Assistant: (4)

Assistant: I'll send you some steps to follow. password was wrong. Ayman : (5) 2. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: You can make hot drinks using a b. coffee machine a. toaster

... All the clothes are

cheaper than usual. This shop has a

b. sell

a. sail

d. microwave

c. fridge

4. When you are unhappy about something, you people think only about bad things. a. Healthy b. Negative c. Positive d. Clever b. discount 3. What is the _____ on clothes ? c. dear d. fire can make a b. deal c. complaint a. mistake a. dial

3. Complete the sentences with the correct

c. decorated a. damaqed

6. We the flat for my sister's birthday.

b. burnt d. took

1. Your mobile is _____ (cheap) than mine. (form of the word(s) in brackets:

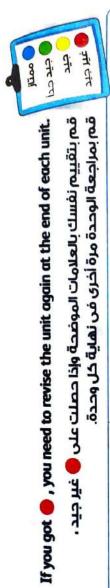
(Either) Ahmed and Alaa are happy. (2. Neither Heba (or) Sara visited Luxor. (

4. The phone (break) while I was running.

194



قم بتقييم نفسك بالعلامات الموضحة وإذا حصلت على قم بمراجعة الوحدة مرة أخرى في نهاية كل وحدة. غير جيد،



	1	
	п	
	1	
	ı	
	1	
	П	
	ı	
	П	
	1	
	1	
	1	
	1	
	1	
	П	
	ı	
	1	
	1	
	١	
	1	
	1	
	1	П
	ı	
	1	
	1	
10.00	ĸ.	
9.0		
-		
		ı
3		ı
		
-		
_		
_		
<u> </u>		
<u> </u>		
<u> </u>		
<u>،</u>		
n		
n uc		
O uo		
O uo		
n uo		
ton		
ston U		
ston U		
ston		
est on U		
est on n		
rest on U		
Test on U		
-Teston U		
-Teston U		
i-Teston U		
ir-Teston U		
ni-Teston U		
mi-Test on U		
imi-Teston U		

2. Complete the sentences with the correct	form of the word(s) in brackets:	1. The children are very (exciting) as they	have a new toy.	2. Heba is (interesting) in reading	adventure stories.	o visit their aunt next	4. When are you(go) to revise for the exam?		3. Write an email of about (110) words:	" to your friend Yassir about what you are going	to do next week. Your name is Ali and your emai	address is ali@gmail.com.Your friend's	email address is yassir@gmail.com."					
Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:	1. Young people can practise manyat		b. sports activities	d. shops	2 people are those who can't walk and	bled c. Blind d. Story	days can their ners.	lage c. deliver d. discover	me to do sports.	b. encourages	d. laughs	g regularly a great		s c. puts d. gives	My plan is to have a trip next Sunday. I	K	b. 'm going to travel	Journal Heart
the correct	g people can	sports centres.	a. recipes	c. pavements	people a	use wheelchairs. a. Deaf b. Disabled	3. Many shops nowadays products to customers	a. prepare b. damage	4. My father always	a. delivers	c. coughs	5. Walking or running regularly	difference to your health.	a. makes b. takes	olan is to have	to Luxor.	a. am travelling	levert o



Have you ever travelled by plane?

SB pages 34:43 WB pages 95:101



Objectives

· Reading :

A report about experiences; texts about life experiences; The Adventures of Tom Sawyer and The Adventures of Huckleberry Finn; a text about someone's life

· Writing:

A story about something that happened in your life; a timeline of a person's life events; a biography of a person

· Listening:

An interview about someone's life; an account of something bad that happened to someone

· Speaking:

Talking about experiences; asking and answering questions about experiences; telling a story

· Language :

The present perfect with ever, never, for and since

· Life Skills :

Communication

- العلامة 🖽 تسبق استله ختاب الطالب - العلامة 💯 تسبق أستله ختاب التحريبات



- للمثابعة اليومية و الابحاث في Master your term . - قاموس المعاصر الأغرب



1 & 2

SB pages 34 : 37 WB pages 95 & 96



Vocabulary

Key Vocabulary

snorkel (led) (v)		competition (n)	مسابقة
ستخدام أنبوب التنفس	يغطس تحت سطح الماء با	orphanage (n)	دار الايتام
experience (n)	خبرة - تجربة حياتية	marriage (n)	زواج

= Key Vocabulary هي المفردات الأكثر أهمية المطلوب من الطالب إتقائها.

■ Master your Vocabulary يقضي على جميع مشاكل حفظ المفردات (ملحق Master).

= Glossary لحصيلة أكبر (للمزيد) م<mark>ن المفردات اللغوية نهاية الكتاب.</mark>

SB pages 34 & 35 WB page 95

Chinese food (n)	طعام صینی	beach restaurant	مطعم داخل شاطئ
football match (n)	مباراة كرة قدم	graph (n)	رسم بیانی
adventure (n)	مغامرة	report (n)	تقرير
tent (n)	خيمة	half (n)	$(\frac{1}{2})$ نصف
camel (n)	جمل	wedding party (n)	حفل زفاف
list (n)	قائمة		

255011 2 B pages 36 & 37 WB page 96

move (d) (v)	ينتقل - ينقل	headache (n)	صداع (ألم في الرأس)
period (n)	مدة - حقبة	flat (n)	ääŵ
point (n)	نقطة / حد	history (n)	تاريخ

Conjugation of I	Les man	J., 0
Present المضارع	الماضي Past	التصريف الثالث .P.P
ride يرکب	rode	ridden
do/does ၂டம்.	did	done

drink	drank يشرب	drunk
forget	forgot پنسی	forgotten
swim	swam يسبح	swum
win	won يفوز	won
read	read يقرا	read

هذه التعريفات مجمعة من كتاب الطالب وكتاب التدريبات وقاموس التعريفات (glossary) في نهاية كتاب التدريبات.



Study this definition

ادر**س هذا التعريف**

experience

something that happens in your life

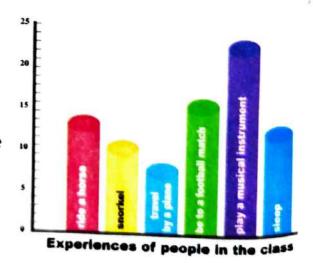
سة / تحربة حياتية

Reading and Listening



on Lesson 1 SB page 35

I asked the people in my class about their experiences(1). Most people in the class have played a musical(2) instrument. Not many people have ridden a horse or slept in a tent(3). Even fewer people have snorkeiled (4). Most people in the class have never travelled by plane⁽⁵⁾, but Hazem has travelled by plane three times! l also asked, 'Have you ever been



to a football match ?' About half the people in the class haven't been to a football match and about half the class (7) have.

Check Vocabulary

توارب (حياتية) (۱)	الة موسيقية (2)	ذيمة (١)	رغطس تجت سطح الماء باستخدام أنيوب التنمس (4)
يسافو في طائرة (5)	مياراة كرة فدم (٥)		نصف الفصل (٦)



. on Lesson 2 SB page 36

: Grandma, how long have you lived in this house ? Talia

Grandmother: Oh, I've lived here since I got married to your grandfather.

: Really ? How long have you been

married to grandad?

Grandmother: We've been married for fifty years!

Talia : That's a long time!

Grandmother: Yes, it is! And we've known each

other since we were ten years old.

Talia : That's like Mum and Dad. They've

known each other for a long time,

too. And I've lived in the same house since I was born.

Grandmother: Yes, your mum and dad have lived in that house since

2008. Before that, they lived with me here for five years.

Talia : Did they ? I didn't know that!

Grandmother: You've never asked me about it before!



on Lesson 2 WB page 96

Judy: Dad, how long have you worked at the bank?

Dad : I've worked there since we moved to Cairo.

Judy : How long have you lived in Calro?

Dad : We've been in Cairo since you were

born, but we lived in a different flat then.

Judy: How long have you lived in this flat?

Dad : Well, we've lived here for ten years.

Judy : So, my brother Imad has always lived here?

Dad : Yes, he's nine now, so he's lived here for

all of his life.



Videoscript

Tourist have come to Egypt for hundreds of years to see the worders of the ancient world, such as the pyramids, temples and other monuments, it is a wonderful experience for them. Tourists have also come to experience the wonderful natural world, such as the desert and the Red Sea.

There are lots of activities⁽²⁾ to do by the Red Sea. Some people love relaxing on the beach, while others like doing something more exciting, like snorkelling.

Egypt to swim in the Red Sea for a long time. Dahab has been a popular destination since the 1960s. This is because the water here is among the best in the world for snorkelling. There are beautiful coral reefs and there are some amazing sea animals, such as this dugong and these lionfish. Have you ever been to Dahab? Have you ever been snorkelling?

Check Vocabulary

وجهة النظر (3) انشطة (2) عجائب (1)

Skills corner

تدرب على المهارات طبقاً للورقة الامتحانية كل درس على حده :

- * معارة القراءة : تدرب على اسئلة قطعة (استخراج معلومات اعطاء الفكرة الرئيسية – فهم ما يشير اليه الضمير – تخمين معنى مفردة لغوية فى النص – معارة التفكير النقدي.
- * معارة الكتابة ، تدرب على كيفية الكتابة مع مراعاة (التنظيم التهجى ترابط الافكار – علامات الترقيم – القواعد اللغوية – اختيار المفردات اللغوية).
 - * معارة التحدث ، تدرب على اتقان الوظائف اللغوية للتعامل مع سؤال المحادثة فى الامتحان.

المعاصر في اللغة الالجليزية امنح ثقتك لمن يستحق

General Notes on Reading & Listening

- wait for wait to
 - * wait for

ينتظر (شخص - اتوبيس - قطار ...)

ex.: - I'm waiting for the six o'clock train.

- I waited for you, but you were late.
- * wait to + (inf.)

ينتظر (يترعها مصدر الفعل)

ex.: - I've been waiting to know who won the match.

since

تستخدم بمعنى (منذ) ويتبعها (بداية مدة) أو جملة في زمن الماضي البسيط

- I've waited for the bus since six o'clock.

ویمکن استخدام (since) بمعنی because

ex.: - Wafaa got sick since she 'd eaten badly cooked food.

- experience / experiences
 - * experience

خبرة (اسم لا يُعد)

ex.: - Mr Baleegh has years of experience in teaching English.

* (an) experience — ▶ experiences

تجرية (حياتية) (اسم يعد)

- ex.: Seeing a lion out of its cage was an experience I can't forget.
 - I've passed many bad experiences in my life.

mportant Expressions & Prepositions வேல் அவ்வும் பியும்

swim in a pool	يسبح في حمام السباحة	get married	Jues
do the housework	يقوم باداء أعمال المنزل	It's important to + (in	
make the food for			ريا رامين
make a kite	يصنع طائرة ورقية	more than 20 years	tôte r ·
travel by plane	يسافر بطائرة	the longest marriage	
ride a horse	یرکب حصان	about an hour	delin olga
snorkel in the sea	- 1	on business	Jac (aty) Ga
	يغطس في البحر (بانبوب	finish on time	رئنس في الوقت المددد

at the bank يجرب طعام صيني try Chinese food sleep in a tent ينام في خيمة about half the people in the class حوالي نصف الاشخاص في الفصل / الطلاب have a headache make a cake يصنع کيك (تورتة) write a list of يكتب قائمة لـ يصل في الوقت المحدد arrive on time يشرب فنجان من القهوة drink a cup of coffee

في البنك رسفر جوا travelling by air لنقطة زمنية for a point in time لمدة من الزمن for a period of time all of his life لديه صداع طوال حياته ہدُمب إلى مزرعة go to a farm يتسلق جبل climb a mountain play a musical instrument رعزف على آلة موسيقية

on Vocabulary

Key vocabulary

• Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. In summer, I really enjoy in the sea. d. flying b. snorkelling c. hiding a. winning 2. My wife and I have lived in that flat since our c. birth d. marriage a. death b. university 3. A/An is a home for children whose parents are dead. d. aquarium a. marriage b. orphanage c. airport 4. My daughter is good at painting. She always wins art d. situations a. inventions b. competitions c. invitations 5. Today, all students in my class are talking about their a. respect b. expects c. experiences d. experts لدريبات من كتاب الطالب والتدريبات SB and WB Exercises 6. 53 Fady has had a/an for about an hour. His head still hurts. b. stomachache c. nosebleed a headache d earache 7. Most people in the class have never by plane. b. drawn c. travelled a known d thrown 8. WB Have they the food for the wedding party? b. written c. made d drunk a. won

d. out

تدريبات كتاب المعاصر El-Moasser Exercises g. Adel was excited. He had a lot of in the Red Sea coast. d. adventures b. discussions c. problems a. meals 10. When I was at the Pyramids, I saw many tourists riding d. planes c. camels b. cars a. taxis 11. I slept in a when I was in Siwa Oasis. d. cabin c. box b. tent a. tank Language Notes, Expressions & Prepositions Heba was absent from school for a of time. c. point d. stop period b. sign 3. She is going to married in spring. d. stay b. fly a. get 14. I'm waiting for the train for half an hour. d. until c. about b. from 15. It's important healthy. d. staying c. stays b. to stay a. stay

Vocabulary Study:

a. in

16. Who are you waiting?

b. for

Synonyms ar	nd Antony	ms	ت ضادات	مترادفات وم
Word	الكلمة	المرادف Synonym	Antonyn	المضاد 🐧
fewer	اقل (عددُا)	smaller	more	اكثر (عددًا)
important	مام	essential - serious	unimportant	غير هام
longest	الأطول	tallest	shortest	الأقصر
different	مختلف	unlike	the same	نفس الشئ

c. to

Prefixes & Suffixes äumuig		مقاطع بادئة وناهية
Prefix/suffix	الوظيفة function	example بالله
- ese	تكون صفة من الاسم	Chinese
- ache	تعطى معنى ألم في اجزاء الجسم	headache

TRICISE on Vocabulary Study

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- 1. The antonym of the word "different" is the
 - a. difficult
- b. similar
- c. easy
- d. same
- 2. Hania is the shortest girl, but Mai is the
 - a. short
- b. taller
- c. tallest
- d. shorter
- 3. The suffix "........" means pain in your body.
 - 3 050
- b. ache
- c. er
- d. ed
- 4. We add "ese" to China to make it a/an
 - a. verb
- b. adverb c. adjective
- d. pronoun



من المضارع التام The Present Perfect Tense

التكوين Formation

Affirmative statement :

الجملة الخبرية المثبتة :

اسم جمع , we, you, They اسم مفرد ,He, She, It

have

التعرف الثالث 📭

ex .: - I have found a pen.

- She has studied hard.
- My uncle and aunt have written me an email.

Megative statement :

ملة الخبرية المنفية :

اسم جمع , we, you, They He, She, It, اسم مفرد



have not (haven't) has not (hasn't)

التعريف الثالث .P.P.

ex.: - We have not (haven't) finished studying English yet.



الاستخدام (Sage)

- ♦ يستخدم زمن المضارع التام للتعبير عن حدث تم في الماضي بدون تحديد وقت حدوثه (أي أن الوقت لا يكون من المهم ذكره).
- - I have been deaf all my life.
 - ◄ يستخدم زمن المضارع التام عند ذكر عدد مرات الفعل أو الكم وذلك في وجود كلمات مثل

two / three / many / a few / several / a lot of

- ✓.: I have drunk two cups of coffee.
 - ♦ يستخدم زمن المضارع التام للتعبير عن حدث بدأ في الماضي ومازال مستمرًا حتى الأن.
- ex.: I have lived in Aswan since 2007.
 - ♦ يستخدم زمن المضارع التام للتعبير عن حدث تم في الماضي وله أثر في الحاضر.
- ✓.:- My hands are dirty. I have mended my bike.
 - للحــظ أن : عند تحديد وقت وقوع الحدث في الماضي نستخدم زمن الماضي البسيط.
- ✓.: Tamer has sent me an email. He wrote it yesterday.

الكلمات الدالة الكاني (كالكالالكا)

وغالبًا ما يأتى المضارع التام مع :

for حتى الأن yet اُبدُا never حالا/تؤا iust since من قبل منذ already الفعل ever

The Present Perfect with "ever" and "never":

A) "ever" with Yes / No question:

﴾ تستخدم "ever" مع زمن المضارع التام عند السؤال بـ «هل» بمعنى «من قبل». (عند السؤال عن خبرة سابقة)

التكوين المسامين

Yes, الفاعل + have / has.

للحاية المختصرة نستخدم :

No, الفاعل + haven't / hasn't.

ex.: - Have you ever been to the desert?

 Yes, I have. - No. I haven't.

B) "never" with negative sentences:

♦ تستخدم "never" مع زمن المضارع التام عند النفي. (تعبر عن عدم وجود خبرة سابقة)

ر التكوين المالمالات

ex.: - He's never ridden a camel and he has never seen the sea.

لاحظ أن:

- عند استخدام (never) في الجملة فإننا لا ننفي بـ (not) حيث أنها تحمل معنى النفي.
- Asking and answering using "ever & never"
 - ♦ يمكن استخدام (ever) في السؤال والإجابة عليه بـ (never) عند النفي.

ex.: Have you ever met a famous person?

- No, I have never met a famous person.
- للإجابة بالنفى :
- Yes, I have. I met a football player once.
- للإجابة بالاثبات :

The Present Perfect Tense with (for & since) :

زمن المضارع التام مع (for & since):

A) for: (a period of time)

أ) لمدة : ويأتي بعدها المدة التي استغرقها حدوث الفعل

ر التكوين المائة

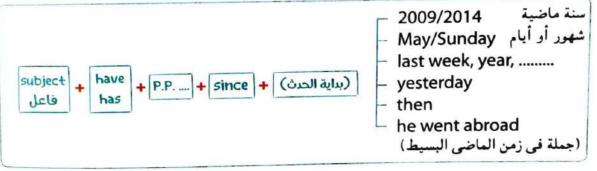


- 3 days / 4 months / 2 years
- a long time / an hour
- five hours
- long
- the last

- - Have you been at this school for a long time?
 - No, I have only been here for a month.
- B) since: (for a point of time)

ب) منذ : ويأتي بعدها تعبير زمني يدل على بداية حدوث الفعل

التكوين المالمستان



- ex.: I have studied English since I was eight years old.
 - Has your uncle worked at the hospital since he moved to Cairo? Yes, he has worked there since 2008.

لاحــظ ما يلي جيدًا :



have / has been to have / has gone to



دهب وعار دهب ولم يعد بعد

ex.: - I've been to Paris three times. I want to go there again.

- Ahmed has gone to the club. You can join him there now.

on Language (Answered & Explained)

غي هذا الوزع نقدم للطالب تدريب على القاعدة اللغوية مجاب عنه ومصحوب بشرج أسباب اختيار _{هوا}ية الصحيحة.

					The state of the s
(Choose	the	correct answer from	a, b, cord:	
1	. Has si	he	ridden a horse ? - Y	es, she has.	
	a. just		b. never	c. ever	d. yet
2	. My si		nas been good at tenni	sshe was ter	n. d. just
3	A. for	hae	b. since eaten Chinese fo		ar just
	a. late		b. yet	c. ever	d. never
4	. Hove	ches	s, so Ia chess clu	b in my village.	
	a. join		b. has joined		d. joining
5	. We 've	live	d here ten years.	Ř	
	a. for		b. since	c. ago	d. just
	No.		Answer + Ex	والتوضيح planation	الإجابة
	1	-	AAdm .:dub ing HAmil si	ا مع نمن المضايم الثام م	Mull . A (ever) o

No.		الإجابة والتوظيح Answer + Explanation		
1	C	نستخدم (ever) في السؤال مع زمن المضارع التام عند السؤال عن خبرات سابقة		
2	b	نُسْتَخَدَم (since) مع زمن المضارع التام ويأتي بعدما جملة في زمن الماضي البسيط		
3	d	نستخدم (never) مع زمن المضارع التام للتعبير عن النفى		
4	c	نَم استخدام زمن المضارع التام للتعبير عن حدث تم في الماضي بدون ذكر التوقيت وفاعل الجملة ()		
5	a	نُستَخُدم (for) مع زمن المضارع التام ويتبعها المدة التي استغرقها حدوث الفعل		

Exercises on Language

1. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

SB and WB Exerc	ises	وليبات من كتاب الطالب والتدريبات	
1. 🗺 I haven't	Chinese food	d.	
a. eat	b. ate	c. eaten	d. eats
2. 🜃 Have you	ever to a fo	otball match?	
a. been	b. to be	c. being	d. be
3. 😘 Hania	played tennis n	nany times.	
a. have	b. to have	c. having	d. has

4 WB How long h	ave youin	this house?			
a lived	b. live	c. lives	d. living		
5. We've beer	n marriedr	nore than fifty ye	ears I		
a. since	b. for	c. yet	d. never		
El-Moasser Exerc			تدريبات كتاب المعاصر		
6. She hasn't seer	her father	she was a child.			
a. ever	b. since	c. for	d. yet		
7. Khalid has	his friend Tame	er for a long time			
known	b. knowing	c. knows	d. know		
8. Mohamed and	Sara been		st year.		
a. has	b. to have		d. having		
9. Has Salma	ridden a horse		d almon		
a. never	b. for	c. ever	d. since		
10. They have	visited the Egy	ptian Museum I	d. for		
a. ever	b. never	c. since	d. IOI		
11. They haven't	any money.	- actting	d. got		
a. get	b. gets	c. getting	u. got		
	his lost bag? – No	o, ne c. hasn't	d. have		
a. has	b. haven't				
. Complete the se	entences with the	correct form of	the word(s) in brackets :		
SB and WB Exercis	ses	لتدريبات	تدریبات من کتاب الطالب وا		
1. SB Has Lina e	ever (see) th	nat film ?			
2 WR Twelve pe	ople (has)	ridden a camei.	. In a see		
3. WB I've lived	in the same house	e (for) I wa	is porn.		
El-Moasser Exer	NAME AND ADDRESS OF THE PARTY O		تدريبات كتاب المعاصر		
4. He hasn't	(reading) that	book before.			
5. Mai has watched TV (since) two nours.					
6. Mr Tamer has been at this school(TOT) 2001.					
7. Hassan has (have) a headache for 3 hours.					
8. Have you (never) visited the zoo?					
9. No. Salwa ha	9. No, Salwa has (ever) travelled by plane.				
10. They have	(buying) a ne	w house.			

kills Corner



سُهِهُ التَّهَامَلُ مَعَ مَعَارَاتُ (القَرَاءَةَ - الكتَابَةَ - التَحدثُ) في الورقة الامتحانية لكل درس على حده. للمزيد من الشرح والتدريبات على مهارات (القراءة - الكتابة - التحدث) Part 2 في ملحق (Master Your Term)

هٔ بِهْراءة Reading on lesson 1 SB page 35 من كتاب المعاصر صفحة ۱۹۸ ثم قم بالتدرب _{على إجا}بة بعض **أسئلة قطعة الفهم** طبقاً لمواصفات الورقة الامتحانية.

A. Answer the following questions:

- مهارة التفكير النقدي Critical thinking skill -
- 1. Why do you think fewer students have snorkelled?
 - Maybe because it's not their favourite activity.
- Extracting information استخراج المعلومات
- 2. Who has travelled by plane three times?

B. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- Guessing the meaning of vocabulary in context نَمِينَ مَعْنَى مَفْرِدةَ لَغُويَةً فَى النص
- 3. The word "many" in the passage is the opposite of
 - a. few
- b. more
- c. much
- d. enough

Writing Corner

معارة الكتابة

A. Read the sentences

جمل تساعدك على كتابة فقرة إنشالية / رسالة بريد الكتروني.

- 1. There are many things I've done.
- ا. يوجد أشياء كثيرة فعلتها.
- 2. I have snorkelled in the Red Sea. القد سبحت بأنبوب الغطس في البحر الأحمر.
- 3. I have been to a football match at Cairo Stadium.
 - ٣. لقد ذهبت لمباراة كرة القدم في إستاد القاهرة.
- 4. I have slept in a tent in the desert.
- لقد نمت في خيمة في الصحراء.

B. Building sentences

• Read and complete:

have - ever - long - has - been - for

- 1. How have you practised football?
- 2. They have married since 1990.
- 3. Has she flown a kite?
- 4. Adel been at this school for 5 years.
- 5. The boys got many pens.

تنويه

بعد دراسة القواعد والمفردات اللغوية الخاصة بالدرسين قم بالتدريب على بناء الجملة

C. Practise by yourself

تدرب على كتابة فقرة إنشالية / رسالة بريد الكتروني.

- Write a paragraph of about 110 words on :

"Your favourite hobby"

Speaking Corner

معارة التحدث

Talking about experiences:

Questions



الحديث عن الخبرات السابقة :

Answers



- 1. Have your parents always lived in the same house, or have they moved ? هل عاش والديك دائمًا في نفس المنزل أم قاموا بالإنتقال إلى منزل آخر ؟
- 2. How long have you lived in your house ?
 - كم المدة التي عشتها في منزلك ؟
- 3. How long have you studied English?
 كم المدة التى درست بها اللغة الإنجليزية?
- 4. Has anyone in your family climbed a mountain ? هل قام أحد أفراد أسرتك بتسلق جبل ؟
- 5. Which people in your family have been to another country ? أى الأشخاص في عائلتك قام بالذهاب إلى دولة أخرى ؟

- Yes. They have lived in the same house.
 - نعم. لقد عاشوا في نفس المنزل.
- I've lived there since I was born. لقد عشت هناك منذ ميلادي.
- I've studied English since I was seven. لقد درست اللغة اللإنجليزية منذ عمر ۷ سنوات.
- Yes, my cousin has climbed a mountain.
 - نعم، تسلق ابن عمى جبل.
- My father has been to England. قام والدي بالذهاب إلى انجلترا.

General Exercises



LESSONS 1 & 2

· Create

					100
EL	Comple	te tha fell	owing dialogue	9:	
Ī					g ready to travel to
	London.		g , ran	iei wiios gettiii	g ready to travel to
	Marawai	n : Hi, Tame	r. How are you ?		
	Tamer	:(1)	, and y	/ou ?	
	Marawai	n:(2)			
	Tamer	: (3)	?		
			ng ready to fly to	London	
	Tamer	: London !	Why will you tra	vel there ?	
	Marawai	n : (4)		ver there :	
			sins!(5)	7	
	Marawai	n : I'll stay th	nere for a week.		
	Tamer			to see London, t	00
2	Choose		t answer from a		50.
•	1. I haver	n't a h	orse before.		
	a. clim		b. moved	c. ridden	d. flown
•	2. Have y	ou ever	in the sea ?		G. HOWIT
	a. flow	'n	b. snorkelled	c. slept	d. ridden
•	3. WB Ha	s <mark>anyone</mark> in	your family	a mountain ?	a. naden
	a. got		l- 11 1 1	c. ridden	d. moved
•	4. My frie	end asks me	if I havei		u. moved
	a. slep	t	b. moved	c. ridden	d. flown
•	5.1	a terrible h	neadache.		d. HOWIT
	a. have		b. make	c. do	danieu
•	6. WB I ha	ave never	7 AC -1-4 CC TO 10 MO LO 10 MO	od. I might try it r	d. enjoy
	1.5			. I might try it r	iext time.

b. snorkelled

b. got

7. WB My parents married in 2001.

c. tried

c. did

d. been

d. found

a. ridden

a. gave

8. Hatem	in this company si	nce 2005.			
a. works		b. Is working	ng		
c. have worked		d. has work	red		
g a novel	by Charles Dicken	s 7			
a. Have you e		b. Have you	ı read ever		
्. Have read e	ver you	d. Have eve	r you read		
10. WB My family	has been in Cairo	I was ten			
a. ever	b. never	c. for	d. since		
2. Adel has wall 3. Wa Have you 4. Wa Has he fini	entences with the ked (since) to (never eat) Chine ever (make) ished on time? – You sentences with	wo hours. se food. a cake ? es, he(ha			
_	aten – ridden – ter	Control Contro	The same of the sa		
I asked the pe in the class have	THE RESERVE OF THE PARTY OF THE	nese food. Not	iences. Most people many people have Even fewer people		
Choose the corr	ect word :				
1. Have you ever	try / tried Chinese	food?			
2. Will have draw	nk / drunk two cur	os of coffee.			
2. WB I have drank / drunk two cups of coffee. Write a paragraph of about (110) words on:					

3844





Vocabulary

Key Vocabulary

grandparents (n)	canoe (n) اللجدا	61- 24-61
dream (ed) (v), (n)	ρω deaf (adj)	(Stane II) Ses
awake (adj)	follow(ed) (v)	
care (d) about (v)	countryside (
بدائی - طوافة - عوافة	hard of hearing غارب	ميده لسدي اللبط السدي ((الله) ا

« Key Vocabulary » من المفردات الأكثر أهمية المطلوب من الطالب إتقائها.

* Master your Vocabulary يقضي على جميع مشاكل حفظ المفردات (ملدق Master).

• Giossary لحصيلة أكبر (للمزيد) من المفردات اللغوية نهاية الكتاب.

Lesson (3) 88 pages 38 & 39 W8 page 97

join (ed) (v)	ينضم إلى	change (d) (v), (n)	يعو / تغيير
sports club (n)		sign language (n)	் நக்கு கே
fun (n)		special school (n)	áziti áuga
concert (n)		continue (d) (v)	
instrument (n)		Cairo Opera House	بستر
Athens (n)	أثينا (عاصمة اليونان)	Callo Opera House	دار الثوبرا المصرية

Lesson (4) SB page 40 WB page 98

fun novels (n)	روايات فكاهية / مضحكة	scare (d) (v)	يتيه
sequel (n)	تتمة - تكملة		عدا <i>ن</i> عدان
teenage boys (n)	أولاد في سن المراهقة		أوجه التشاره
forest (n)	غباذ	wood (n)	تشب
fun game (n)	قحته - يم قبحا	float (ed) (v)	بعفو
foggy (adj)	ضبابی - غیر واضح	environment (n)	البيئة
terrible (adj)	فظيع - مربع	return (ed) (v)	194

Conjugation of Irregular Verbs dobiion ut Health August

Collina			تصريف الأمعال غير المنتصف
Present	المضارع	الماضي Past	التصريف الثالث .P.P
let	Somi	let	let
hide	يخفي / يختفي	hid	hidden
steal	يسرق	stole	stolen
say	يقول	said	said

تنويه هذه التعريفات مجمعة من كتاب الطالب وكتاب التدريبات وقاموس التعريفات (glossary) في نهاية كتاب التدريبات.



these definitions

ادرس هذه التعريفات

Hese delinicions	
not sleeping	مستيقظ
a long, narrow boat for one or two people	زورق (طویل وخفیف) ضیق
feel strongly about someone or something	یهتم بـ
pictures and sounds that you think are happe sleeping	
walk or drive behind someone	يتتبع
pieces of wood that are put together so they	can float on water ر قارب بدائی - طوافق
	not sleeping a long, narrow boat for one or two people feel strongly about someone or something pictures and sounds that you think are happe

Reading and Listening



on Lesson 3 SB page 38

Maher

I have lived in a village(1) in the south of Egypt all my life. I have never been to another country, but last year I visited Cairo with my uncle and my cousins! It was so big and busy, but it was fun. We went to lots of museums because I am very interested in history(2).



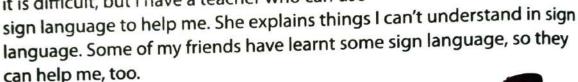
Check Vocabulary

قرية (1)

تاریخ (2)

Azza

I have had hearing problems(3) all my life and I learnt sign language 4 from when I was a baby. When I first started school, I went to a special school 5 for deaf children. Now, I have been at a local school for three years. I am the only hard of hearing person in my class. Sometimes it is difficult, but I have a teacher who can use



Wael

My parents died when I was a baby so I have lived with my grandparents (7) since I was one. We used to live in the countryside (8), but we moved to (9) the city three years ago. I like living here, there is lots to do. I joined a handball club(10) and I have won lots of matches with my team. It's really fun.

Check \	ocabulary
---------	-----------

مشاكل في السمع (3)	لغة الإشارة (4)	مدرسة لذوى اللحتياجات الخاصة (5)	مدرسة محلية (6)
الأجداد (7)	الريف (8)	انتقل إلى (9)	انضم لنادى كرة اليد (10)

on Lesson 3 SB page 39

My name's Salma. I was born in Syria(1), but my family came to Egypt when I was five years old. We haven't visited Syria since I was very young, but some of my family still live there.

When I was eight, I started playing the piano. I have played in many concerts(2). I love music. Two years ago, I played at a concert in the Cairo Opera House(3). It was amazing(4)!



check Vocabulary

THE RESERVE AND DESCRIPTION OF THE PERSON NAMED IN COLUMN TWO		The second secon	THE RESERVE THE PARTY OF THE PA
دولة سوريا (1)	دفلات موسیمَیه (2)	دار الأوبرا المصرية (3)	مدهش / مذهل (4)

. on Lesson 4 SB page 40

The Adventures of Tom Sawyer

They did not see Tom all day. All the time that Tom was playing games in the forest, his Aunt Polly worried about him. She thought he was lost or badly

hurt. She was so happy when he returned and told her that he was fine.

"It was just a game, Aunt Polly", said Tom.

"I'm sure it was a fun game for you, but we all worried about you. We didn't know where you were. Why didn't you tell me? "I told you in a dream(1), said Tom. "I just forgot to tell you when I was awake(2)". "He never thinks of other pecole", said his cousin Mary. "Yes, you should



think about other people", said Aunt Polly. "You know I care about "you, Tom. Try to remember how other people feel". "I'm sorry that I didn't tell you", said Tom. "It won't happen again".

Check Vocabulary

ي**متم بـ (3) مستيةظ**(2) علم (1)

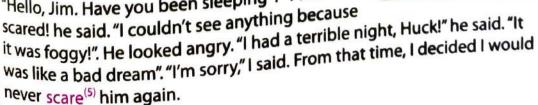
on Lesson 4 SB page 40

The Adventures of Huckleberry Finn

Jim and I were on a raft⁽¹⁾ going down the river when it became foggy⁽²⁾. I left the raft to try and find a place for us to stop for the night. got into a small canoe (3) and went along the river. Then I tried to return.

However, it was so foggy that I could not see the raft! I called out but I could not hear Jim.

My canoe went down the river for a long way, and I hoped the raft was following (4) me. travelled all night, but the next morning, it was not foggy and finally I saw Jim. He was sleeping on the raft. I climbed on the raft and said. "Hello, Jim. Have you been sleeping"? "I was





on Lesson 3 WB page 97

Osama has always loved fish and other sea animals. He started to like them when he visited an aquarium for the first time in 2015. His family have taken him to the aquarium every summer since then. Last year, the people at the aquarium asked him to help them give food to the fish. He loves



doing that! He has helped at the aquarium in the school holidays for a year now. He has given food to most of the small fish, but he hasn't helped with the sharks. They are too dangerous!



on Lesson 3 WB page 97

Teen boy: I'm Ashraf. I've always lived in Cairo, but last year, I visited a village in the country for the first time. I loved it! It was

very quiet!

Teen girl: My name's Magda. I've never been to England, but last week,

I talked to my cousins. They were in London. They showed me

some famous buildings there on their phone.

Woman: I'm Nawal and I have been an English teacher for ten years.

I've always taught children, but last year, I started teaching older people, too. I've taught them a lot, but they don't learn

as quickly as the children!

Notes on Reading & Listening

1 concert - concrete

دفلة موسيقية * concert

ex.: Omar Khairat always gives regular concerts. He is a great musician.

خرسانة * concrete

ex.: Modern houses are made of concrete and bricks.

2 special school - private school

* special school

مدرسة خاصة (تقدم نوعية معينة من التعليم)

ex: The government is building special schools for the disabled.

* private school

مدرسة خاصة (ليست ملكًا للحكومة)

My grandchildren go to a private school. It costs my son a lot of money.

s let - allow

يسمح - يدع

المصدر .inf بمفعول 🛨 المصدر

Please, let me go into the club.

المصدر .inf + مفعول + to + inf

ex.: Please, allow me to go into the club.

تعبیرات وحروف جر هامة Prepositions و عبیرات وحروف جر هامة

interested in	مهتم بـ	use sign language	يستخدم لغة اللشارة
all my life		badly hurt	مصاب بشدة
a special school for deaf children		had a terrible night	قضيت ليلة مريعة
	مدرسة خاصة للأطفال	say sorry to	يتاسف ل
at a local school	فى مدرسة محلية	feel strongly about	يشعر بقوة تجاه
win a match	يفوز بمباراة	go down the river	ينزل النهر
learn a language	قخا ملحتي	join a sports club	ينضم إلى نادى رياضي

Exercise

on Vocabulary

Ochoose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

Skey vocabulary

- 1. The use sign language to communicate with others.
 - a. disabled
- b. blind
- c. young
- d. deaf

2. Your	are your grandfather	and grandmou	ilei.	
a. granddaughters		b. grandsons		
c. grandpar	c. grandparents		d. grandchildren	
3. When we w	ere on holiday, we we	ent down a rive	r in a It was	
great fun!				
a. camel	b. candle	c. canoe	d. can	
4. To is t	to walk or drive behin	d someone.		
a. feel		c. follow	d. fail	
SB and WB Exer	cises	والتدريبات	_{ثدل} یبات من کتاب الطالب و	
5. WB The hote	el room was very nois	y, so I was	all night!	
a. happy	b. comfortable	c. awake	d. strange	
6. WB Last nigl	nt, I had a strange	I thought I	was flying!	
a. game	b. toy		d. decision	
7. WB Like mar	ny young people, Azz	a and her broth	ners really about	
the environn	nent.			
a. hurry	b. cry	c. care	d. carry	
○ El-Moasser Exe	rcises		تدريبات كتاب المعاصر	
8. To this	sports club, you have	e to fill in this fo	orm.	
8. To this a. destroy	sports club, you have b. join	e to fill in this fo c. call	orm. d. believe	
a. destroy		c. call	d. believe	
a. destroy	b. join anything on the roa	c. call	d. believe	
a. destroy 9. I couldn't see a. angry	b. join anything on the road b. fresh	c. call d because it wa c. clear	d. believe as d. foggy	
a. destroy 9. I couldn't see a. angry 10. The huge do	b. join anything on the road b. fresh g me yesterday	c. call d because it wa c. clear	d. believe as d. foggy	
a. destroy 9. I couldn't see a. angry 10. The huge dog a. carried	b. join anything on the road b. fresh me yesterday b. scared	c. call d because it wa c. clear t. I was terrified c. cried	d. believe asd. foggy l. d. played	
a. destroy 9. I couldn't see a. angry 10. The huge dog a. carried	b. join anything on the road b. fresh g me yesterday	c. call d because it wa c. clear t. I was terrified c. cried	d. believe asd. foggy l. d. played	
a. destroy 9. I couldn't see a. angry 10. The huge dog a. carried 11. Care about m a. deal	b. join anything on the road b. fresh me yesterday b. scared eans to strong	c. call d because it wa c. clear d I was terrified c. cried ly about some c. feel	d. believe as d. foggy l. d. played one or something.	
a. destroy 9. I couldn't see a. angry 10. The huge dog a. carried 11. Care about m a. deal Language Notes	b. join anything on the road b. fresh g me yesterday b. scared eans to strong b. eat s, Expressions & Prep	c. call d because it wa c. clear t. I was terrified c. cried ly about some c. feel	d. believe as d. foggy l. d. played one or something.	
a. destroy 9. I couldn't see a. angry 10. The huge dog a. carried 11. Care about m a. deal Language Notes	b. join anything on the road b. fresh g me yesterday b. scared eans to strong b. eat	c. call d because it wa c. clear t. I was terrified c. cried ly about some c. feel	d. believe as d. foggy l. d. played one or something.	
a. destroy 9. I couldn't see a. angry 10. The huge dog a. carried 11. Care about m a. deal Language Notes 12. Most of my fri a. at	b. join anything on the road b. fresh g	c. call d because it wa c. clear d was terrified c. cried ly about some c. feel cositions local school. c. into	d. believe as	
a. destroy 9. I couldn't see a. angry 10. The huge dog a. carried 11. Care about m a. deal Language Notes 12. Most of my fri a. at	b. join anything on the road b. fresh g me yesterday b. scared eans to strong b. eat s, Expressions & Prependents	c. call d because it wa c. clear d was terrified c. cried ly about some c. feel cositions local school. c. into	d. believe as	
a. destroy 9. I couldn't see a. angry 10. The huge dog a. carried 11. Care about m a. deal Language Notes 12. Most of my fri a. at 13. I saw my friend a. at	b. join anything on the road b. fresh g	c. call d because it wa c. clear d I was terrified c. cried ly about some c. feel cositions local school. c. into ver. c. down	d. believe as	
a. destroy 9. I couldn't see a. angry 10. The huge dog a. carried 11. Care about m a. deal Language Notes 12. Most of my fri a. at 13. I saw my friend a. at 14. Yesterday, I	b. join anything on the road b. fresh g	c. call d because it wa c. clear d I was terrified c. cried ly about some c. feel cositions local school. c. into ver. c. down	d. believe as	
a. destroy 9. I couldn't see a. angry 10. The huge dog a. carried 11. Care about m a. deal Language Notes 12. Most of my fri a. at 13. I saw my friend a. at 14. Yesterday, I	b. join anything on the road b. fresh g	c. call d because it wa c. clear d I was terrified c. cried ly about some c. feel cositions local school. c. into ver. c. down	d. believe as	

15. Mr Alaa works at aschool for blind children.

a. general

b. lonely

c. private

d. special

Vocabu	and Antony	مترادفات ومتضادات	
Word	الكلمة ا	المرادف Synonym	العضاد Antonym
	خاص - مميز	important - unusual	usual - ordinary مالوف - معتاد
special	محلي	native - national	all عالمي / دولي
local	يموت	pass away	يعيش - يحيا
die	شجاع	fearless - daring	coward - afraid جبان - خالف
biave		smart - intelligent	stupid مبن
clever		bad - noisy	quiet صادئ
naughty		lucky - winner	unsuccessful غير ناجح
successful	خطیر		safe
dangerous		correct - accurate	خطا-غيردقيق false-inaccurate
true	حميمي - صحيح	Concer accurate	

Prefixes & Suffixes		اهية	مقاطع بادئة ون
Prefix/Suffix	الوظيفة Function	Exam	nple Jtto
	تڪون صفة	amazing	مدهش - مذهل
- ing			

-xercise on Vocabulary Study

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. When something is, it is unusual.

b. noisy a. happy

c. sudden

d. special

2. When something is serious, that means it is not

a. safe

b. dangerous

c. brave

d. bad

3. The opposite of "live" is

a. die

b. lie

c. tie

d. try

4. A/An person isn't stupid.

a. interesting

b. clever

c. difficult

d. slow





Remember , A

1 The Past Simple Tense

رالماضي البسيط

. شرحه في الوحدات السابقة

ﷺ The difference between the past simple and the present peri غنلاف في الاستخدام بين زمن الماضي البسيط وزمن المضارع النام

Present Perfect pill gleat

- 1. حَدَثَ نَمَ فَي وَقَدَ غَيَرَ مَعْرُوفَ فَي المَاضِي -
- Someone has broken the window.
 - حدث تم في وقت لم ينتهي بعد -
- I have received three emails today.
 - ٣. حدث تم في الماضي وله أثر على الحاضر:
- I have learnt to drive. Now, I can drive my father's car.
 - ددث قابل للتكرار أو التعديل :
- Salah has scored 90 goals in the Premier League.

(صلاح لا يزال حياً ويمارس كرة القدم وقد يحرز المزيد من الأهداف)

- ٥. حدث أو حالة للزالت موجودة :
- I have lived In Aswan since 2002.

(وما زلت أعيش هناك)

الهاظي البسيط Past Simple

- حرث تم في وقت محدد في الماضي :
- Someone broke the window yesterday
 - · حدث تم في وقت وانتهي :
- I received three emails last Monday,
 - 🏾 الماضي: الماضي: الماضي:
- I learnt to drive. Mr Khalid was my driving teacher.
 - ؛ حدث **غير قابل للتكرار أو التعديل** ؛
- Naguib Mahfouz wrote a lot of successful novels.
- حبب محفوظ توفي ولا يمكنه أن يكتب المزيد)
 - ه ددت او حالة لم تعد موجودة :
- Hived In Aswan In 2002.

الم أعد أعيش هناك)

Stop here! on Language (Answered & Explained)

^{في هذ}ا الجزء نقدم للطالب تدريب على القاعدة اللفوية مجاب عله ومصدوب بش*رج أسباب اختيار* الجابة الصحيحة.

- Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:
 - 1. My mum and dad In that house since 2004.
 - a. has lived
- b. have lived
- c. lived
- d. live

2. Tarek has handball for ten years.

a. play

b. plays

c. played

d. playing

3. Mai England last week.

a. visits

b. visited

c. has visited

d. visiting

4. When I was a baby, my parents to Egypt.

a. moved

b. moves

c. moving

d. are moving

No.		الإجابة والتوضيح Answer + Explanation
1	b	يعبر زمن المضارع التام عن حدث بدأ في الماضي ومازال مستمرًا في الحاضر
2	c	يأتي الفعل بعد (has) في التصريف الثالث لأن الجملة في زمن المضارع التام
3	b	يعبر زمن الماضي البسيط عن حدث بدأ وانتهى في الماضي (last week)
4	a	تعبر الجملة عن حدث بدأ وانتهى في الماضي (When I was a baby)

on Language

. Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

SB and WB Exercises	تدريبات من كتاب الطالب والتدريبات
B and WB Exercises	ن عمد العمد والمدريبات

1. Sign We moved to the city three years

b. yesterday

c. last

d. for

2. WB My parents married in 2001.

a. gets

a. ago

b. get

c. getting

d. got

3. Signature We haven't visited Syria since I very young.

a. am

b. was

c. is

d. are

4. 53 Have you ever to a new place?

a. moved

b. moves

c. move

d. moving

Cl-Moasser Exercises

تدريبات كتاب المعاصر

5. Last week, she to the park with her sister.

a. goes

b. go

c. went

d. gone

6. They found their car near their house

a. yesterday

b. tomorrow

c. for

d. since

7. Samy was born in Tanta and there with his brother.

a. live

b. lives

c. lived

d. living

8. She has written stories...... she was twelve.

a. for

b. since

c. ever

d. never

9. What	Ahmed buy last we	ek?	
a. do	b. does	c. doing	d. did
10. How long	you been in As	wan? – For a ye	ar.
a. has	b. having	c. have	d. to have
2. Complete the			the word(s) in brackets
SB and WB Exer	cises	التدريبات	_{تریبا} ت من کتاب الطالب و
1. Sil My nam	e is Salma. I(be) born in Syria	
2. WB Has Dal	ia(be) deaf al	l of her life ?	
3. 🗺 Two yea	rs ago, I(play) at a concert in	the Cairo Opera House
4. WB Magda	(visits) Englar	d last week.	
El-Moasser Ex	ercises		تريبات كتاب المعاصر
5. My sister	(go) shopping l	ast month.	
6. She(l	nave) phoned her fa	ther for an hour.	
7. They have n	ever (eat) Ital	ian food.	
8. How did the	y (wrote) the	answers?	
9. She has talk	ed to her friend	(since) two ho	ours.

Skills Corner

^{يَقْ}يِهُ التَّعَامَلَ مَعَ مَعَارَاتَ (القراءة - الكتابة - التَحدث) في الورقة الامتحانية لكل درس على *حده.* 💯 للمزيد من الشرح والتدريبات على مهارات (القراءة - الكتابة - التحدث)

Part 2 في ملحق (Master Your Term)

Reading Corner

Reading on lesson 4 SB page 40 من كتاب المعاصر صفحة ٢١٧ ثم قم بالتدرب على أبيانة بعض أسئلة قطعة الفهم طبقاً لمواصفات الورقة الامتحانية.

Answer the following questions:

مهارة التفكير النقدى Critical thinking skill -

10. Has Hoda (never) travelled to London?

- 1. What do you learn about Tom from the passage?
 - He never thinks of other people.
- Extracting information استخراج المعلومات
- 2. What was Tom doing in the forest?

Have you ever	travelled	by	plane	7
---------------	-----------	----	-------	---

- فهم ما يشير إليه الضمير Understanding reference ـ
- 3. What does the word "her" in the first paragraph refer to?

riting Corner

مهارة الكتابة

A. Read the sentences

جمل تساعدك على كتابة فقرة إنشائية / رسالة بريد الكتروني.

- 1. I have lived in a village all my life.
- ا. لقد عشت في قرية طوال حياتي.
- 2. I have never been to another country.
- ٢. لم أذهب أبدًا لأي بلد آخر.
- ع. Last year, I visited Cairo with my uncle. . دهبت للقاهرة مع عمى العام الماضي. ٤. Last year, I visited Cairo
- 4. Cairo was so big and busy.

- ٤. كانت القاهرة كبيرة ومزدحمة.
- 5. We went to lots of museums as I'm very interested in history.
 - ٥. ذهبنا إلى متاحف كثيرة لأنني مهتم جدًا بمادة التاريخ.

B. Building sentences

• Read and complete:

been - bought - for - since - born - Yesterday

بعد دراسة القواعد والمفردات

اللغوية الخاصة بالدرسين قم بالتدريب على بناء الجملة

- 1. He was in Cairo in 1988.
- 2. She has three dresses.
- 3., she watched a nice film.
- 4. How long have you in Alexandria?
- 5. I haven't seen my aunt I was a child.

C. Practise by yourself

تدرب على كتابة فقرة إنشالية / رسالة بريد الكتروني.

- Write a paragraph of about (110) words on :

"An adventure story"

3. Speaking Corner

Asking and answering questions about experiences: نوجيه أسئلة والرد عليها عن الخبرات الحياتية :

Questions



Answers



1. A : Have you ever moved to another city ?

ه**ل انتقل**ت إلى مدينة أخرى ؟

2. A: Where did you move?

إلى أين انتقلت ؟

3. A: When did you move?

متى انتقلت ؟

4. A : Have you ever learned a different language ?

هل قمت بتعلم لغة مختلفة من قبل ؟

5. A : Which languages did you learn ? أى اللغات قمت يتعلمها ؟

6. A : Have you ever joined a sports club?

هل انضممت لنادی ریاضی من قبل ؟

7. A: Which sports club did you join?

أي النوادي الرياضية التحقت بها ؟

8. A : Have you ever played a musical instrument? هل سبق لك أن عزفت على آله موسيقية؟

9. A : Which musical instrument did you play ?

ما هي اللَّلة الموسيقية التي عزفت عليها ؟

B: Yes, I have.

عو. لقد قمت.

B: I moved to New Cairo.

ينفلت إلى القاهرة الجديدة.

B: I moved three years ago.

ننقلت منذ ثلاث سنوات.

B: Yes, I have.

عو. لقد قمت.

B: I learned French.

لله فمت بتعلم اللغة الفرنسية.

B: Yes, I have.

عو. لقد انضممت.

B: I joined Al Ahly club.

لقد انضممت / التحقت بالنادي الأهلي.

B: Yes, I have.

نعم لقد عزفت.

B: I played the piano.

عَنْفُتُ عَلَى أَلَهُ الْبِيَانُو.

Master your Term

اتقن منهجـك بالطريقـة المناسبـة لك.

general Exercises



LESSONS 3 & 4

· Create

Complete the following dialogue:

ı	Com	niete			
	adel i	s talking to	his cousin abou	ut an adventure	that he had.
	Adel	: Hello, Said	i. I want to tell yo	ou about my adve	enture.
	Said	Hello, Ade		7	
	Adel	: I chased a			
	Said		hen did that hap	open ?	
	Adel	: (2)			
	and	Two hours	s ago! (3)	?	
	Adel	In front of			
	Said	Who did h			
	Adel				
		Poor wom	an! Was he arre	sted ?	
	Said	: (5)			
				a b cord:	
	Choo	se the corre	ect answer fron	na, b, cord	u should have
	1. To 5	top the anir	nals from damag	jing your field, yo	d silouis
		ng		c. fence	d. ladder
	a. le	eader	b. fan	n from the robbe	rs.
	2. The	man	saved the worna	n from the robbe c. ill	d. bored
	a.b	rave	b. weak		d. instrument
	3. If yo	ou like music	try to play a mu b. machine		d. Instrument
	a. a	ccident		the last match.	d. lost
			when she b. won	c. earned	
		nade	language to he	elp her deaf daug	d. signal
		a learnt oreign	b. strange		
	6 He	was Inst. so I	asked him to	me c. walk	d. research
		neet	b. follow	CMair	

g when you eam r before,
before.
before.
before.
before.
A 400 (40)
ver
ver
in brackets:
nave
Cairo with
am very
who lives in
حاب عند في نهايد
oasser.com.

n C a

Capages 41 & 42 WB pages 99 & 100



Vocabulary

Key Vocabulary

scover (ed) (v)	بكنشف	theme park (n)	مدينة ملاهي
evia (n)	صعوبة القراءة	gymnastics (n)	أنعاب رياضية - حمنار
Lits (n)	نتائج	volunteer (ed) (v), (n)	بنطوع - منطوع

تنصيه • Key Vocabulary هي المفردات الأكثر أهمية المطلوب من الطالب إتقانها.

• Master your Vocabulary يقضى على جميع مشاكل حفظ المفردات أملحق Master

• Glossary لحصيلة أكبر (للمزيد) من المفردات اللغوية نهاية الكتاب.

S8 page 41 WB page 99

	7.31		
normally (adv)	بطريقة طبيعية	windy (adj)	عاصف
train (ed) (v)	بتدرب - يدرب	organise (d) (v)	بنظو - يرنب
introduce (d) (v)	يقدم	suddenly (adv)	مجاة
windsurfing (n)	رياضة ركوب الأمواج	windsurf (ed) (v)	
explain (ed) (v)	يفسر / يشرح	ستخدفا المركب الشراعي)	يترنج على الماء لم
alone (adv)	بمفرده		

SB page 42 WB page 100

achieve (d) (v)	يحقق / ينجر	surprised (adj)	ميدهش
decide (d) (v)	يغرر	prize (n)	حالوة
brain (n)	مح	art (n)	فن
charity (n)	جمعية خيرية	artist (n)	فيان - رسام
timeline (n)	دط زمنی - تسلسل زمنی		
indian food (n)	الظعام النهندي		مانشستر اسم مدینه م
swimming lessor	دروس می انسیادة (n) is	Greece (n)	دوله قيوش

_{لالال}يه الأفعال غير المنتظمة Conjugation of Irregular Verbs التصريف الثالث P.P. الماضي past المضارع present hurt hurt hurt یؤڈی / پجرح understood understand understood முற் written write wrote يكتب spelt / spelled spelt / spelled spell التهدي tell told told پذیر

> هذه التعريفات مجمعة من كتاب الطالب وكتاب التدريبات وقاموس التعريفات (glossary) <mark>في</mark> نهاية كتاب التحريبات.



ادرس هذه التعريفات

means it is difficult for my brain to read and spell صعوبة القراءة dyslexia

to find out some new information about something discover

result this tells you how you have done in an exam تنبحة

يكتشف

Listening and Reading



on Lesson 5 SB page 41

Nihal: Today I am going to tell you about a bad thing that happened to me three months ago. I have done gymnastics for about ten years. I train on Wednesdays and Saturdays every week. A few months ago, my coach asked if I wanted to enter my first competition. I was really excited and I practised every day for a month. On the Thursday before the competition, I was

practising at home when I fell. My leg really hurt so my mum took me to the hospital. The doctor said I had a broken leg! I was so sad and I cried and cried. I couldn't enter the competition.



I haven't been able to do gymnastics since then but I hope I can do it again soon. I really miss gymnastics. Next year I will try to enter the competition again!

on Lesson 6 WB page 100

Tarek: My name's Tarek. I was born in 2006. I'm the oldest child in my family. My sister Dina was born in 2008 and my brother Ali was born in 2011. So, what exciting things have I done in my life? I've been to Jordan! My family went on holiday there when I was ten, so in 2016. I love handball and started playing it when I was 12. I play for a team and we've won a competition! We won it in 2020. That was amazing. What amazing things have you done?



· on Lesson 5 WB page 99

Karim has enjoyed windsurfing(1) for about two years. He usually goes with his older brother. A few months ago, he decided to windsurf⁽²⁾ alone. He did not tell his brother this. It was windy, but that is good if you want to windsurf.

In the afternoon, the wind suddenly(3) became very strong. The wind took Karim far from the beach. He was very scared⁽⁴⁾.

Some people in a boat came to help Karim. After that, they took him back to the beach.

Karim has not windsurfed alone since that time. Now, he always windsurfs with an older person. He has learnt an important lesson!



Check Vocabulary

يركب الأمواج (باستخدام قارب شراعي) (2) رياضة ركوب الأمواج (باستخدام قارب شراعي)

خائف (4) فجأة (3)

on Lesson 6 SB page 42

I was born in Cairo and I have lived there all my life. When I was little⁽¹⁾, I always loved to draw and paint, but I found reading and writing very difficult. At school, I didn't always understand the lessons and it was really hard. I thought I wasn't very clever.

Then, my parents and the school decided to take me for some tests. They discovered⁽²⁾ that I had dyslexia⁽³⁾. This means it is difficult for my brain⁽⁴⁾ to read and spell. After that, I got more help at school and I started to understand more.



When I took my exams, I got really good results!⁽⁵⁾ I was surprised and happy. Later, I got a prize for my art and then I decided I would like to be an artist ⁽⁶⁾ one day. Now, I volunteer⁽⁷⁾ at a charity⁽⁸⁾ for other children with dyslexia and teach them about art.

Check Vocabulary

المخ (4) صعوبة القراءة (3) يكتشف (2) صغير السن (1)	نتائج (5)	رسام / فنان (6)	يتطوع (7)	جمعية خيرية (8)
--	-----------	-----------------	-----------	-----------------

on Lesson 6 WB page 100

Events in Judy's life

- 1. I was born in Manchester in England.
- When I was a baby, my parents moved to Egypt.
- 3. Before I started school, I learned to speak Arabic.
- 4. When I started preparatory school, nobody knew that I was English!
- After my thirteenth birthday, I went to England and visited my cousins who still live there.
- 6. Last year, they came to visit me in Egypt. They love it here!

on Lesson 7 SB page 43

Different families have lived in our house for over 200 years. I have lived here with my family since 2016. Before that, we lived in Cairo. My parents have changed some of the house when we moved here. For example, my mum wanted a new bathroom! My grandmother has lived with us for four years. It is a happy, family home.

Remember بهجر

Dyslexia is a learning disability⁽¹⁾ which affects⁽²⁾ reading and writing. Many smart⁽³⁾ people have dyslexia. They can understand and see well, but they have problems with reading.

check Vocabulary

ه فکی (۱۱) افار علی این اعلم ه

General Notes on Reading & Listening

🔝 enjoy + (inf. + ing) / noun ושמ

يتونع ب

ex.: - Lenjoy windsurfing with my uncle.

- We enjoyed the concert of Oum Kulthoum at the citadel.

learn to + inf.

يتعلو أن

ex.: - I could learn to swim.

الحظ : يمكن استخدام how بعد learn.

ex .: - I could learn how to swim.

mportant Expressions & Prepositions and page super

And the second s			حبيرات وحروب جرحت
do a sport	يمارس الرياضة	far from	رعيدًا عن
have a problem	لديه مشكلة	take him back to	يرجع الي
tell about	پخبر عن	tell a story	پسرد / پدکی قصة
It's difficult for to		make notes about	پخون فلاحظات عن
ان	أنه من الصعب لـ	give a talk	ينقى خطية / حديث
teach about	يُعلم عن	start swimming lessor	
achieve in his life		play the piano	يعرف على البيانو

on Vocabulary

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

Key vocabulary

To means to find out some new information about something.

a. invent

b. discover

c invest

d invite

You must study	if you want to go	et excellent	
a. reasons	h causes	c reculte	al C
3. If you have	then you have	e difficulty in read	ing and
a. headache	h cold	e difficulty in read	ing and spelling
		C. UVSICAIA	(1 Th)
a. animal	one of the biggest	parks in th	e Arab World.
- milai	D. theme	c. comic	d dan
we take a	lesson once a w	eek to make our b	ody strong
37.771183616.5	b. science	c. maths	d. history
SB and WB Exercise	S	والتحديثات	·
6. WB My grandfa	ther has	ې واندريبات	ر ريياڻ من كتاب الطالد
6. WB My grandfa him.	cher has ma	any things in his li	fe. I'm very prouds
a. achieved	b. lived		
	la basel	c. taken	d. played
7. WB Dareen's litt can't find them !	ie brother is ofter	1 He hides	her clothes, so she
a. clever			
	b. quiet	c. naughty	d. messy
8. WB It was windy a. windsurf	, but that is good	lif you want to	,
	~. acilieve	Comall	
9. SBI got a prize a/anone o	for my art and the	en I decided I wou	الط اللح على ا
a/an one o			ild like to be
a. engineer	b. artist	c. doctor	d d
El-Moasser Exercise	es		d. dentist
10 is an exciti			أدريبات كتاب المعاصر
a. Windsurfing	b Pasker sport.		3000
11. Now I	D. Dasketball	c. Skateboarding	d. Tennis
11. Now, Iat a a. volunteer	charity for childre	en with dyslexia	S
			d. understand
12. I write the impor a. result	tant events of my	life on my	a. understand
	111911194 Surren	C timolin -	
Language Notes, Ex	Xpressions & Dec.		d. charity
13. We've enjoyed a. play	musis on	positions	
a. play	b. plays	r new piano.	
14. Ayman learned	Piuys	c. to play	d. playing
,carried			and the second s
a. what	to make his		
a. what	b. when	bed alone.	d. why

15. Tom a problem in reading. b. plays

a. has 16. My school is far my house,

a. by

b. from

c. cooks

d. builds

c. of d, to

Vocabulary Study:

Synonyms	and Antonyn	is .	51	مترادفات ومتضاد
	الكلمة أ	Synonym المرادف	Antor	tym steatt
difficult	صعب - شاق	hard	easy	Jan
teach	يعلم - يُدرس	educate	learn	وتعلم
hude	ضخم	enormous - giant	tiny	ضنيل الحجم
nearby	قريب	near - close to	distant - re	mote - faraway ڊلن - عيد ا

Prefixes & Suffixes		ة وناهية	مقاطع بادنا
Prefix/Suffix	الوظيفة Function	Exampl	و پالثه
- ing	تكون اسم من الفعل	swimming windsurfing	السباحة ركوباللمواج
- پ قۇن صفة	تكون صفة	noisy	مزعج

Exercise on Vocabulary Study

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The dinosaur was a huge animal. The antonym of "huge" is

a. enormous

b. bad c. tiny

d. easy

2. When you make a noise, you are

a. tiny

b. dirty

c. noisy

d. ugly

3. "Educate" has the same meaning as "......".

a, teach

b. learn

c. give

d. discuss

4. The suffix _____ turns the verb swim into a noun.

a. - ed

b. - ing

c. - ment

d. - tion

Skills Corner



يهُ الرّفامل مع معارات (القراعة - الكتابة - التحدث) في الورقة الامتحانية لكل درس على حده. مع للمزيد من الشرح والتدريبات على مهارات (القراءة - الكتابة - التحدث)

(Master Your Term) فن ملحق Part 2

Reading Corner

رِهْمُواهُهُ Reading on lesson 5 WB page 99 من كتاب المعاصر صفحة ٢٣١ ثم قم بالتدرب رَوْمِهُ بعضُ أَسنَلة قطعة الفهم طبقاً لمواصفات الورقة الامتحانية.

Answer the following questions:

- مهارة التفكير النقدى Critical thinking skill -
- 1. What lesson do you think Karim has learned?
 - Not to windsurf alone again.
- استخراج المعلومات Extracting information
- 2. Why was Karim scared?
- إعطاء الفكرة الرئيسية Giving the main idea
- 3. What is the main idea of the passage?

2. Writing Corner

نتارة الكتابة

A. Read the sentences

هُلْ تَساعدكَ عَلَى كَتَابَةَ فَقَرَةَ إِنْشَالِيةَ / رَسَالَةَ بَرِيدَ إِلْكَتَرُونَي.

ەاذا أنجز منير في حياته؟ "What has Munir achieved in his life"

1. When I was little, I always loved to draw and paint but I found reading and writing difficult.

عُنَّمًا كَنْتَ صَغِيراً . دائماً ما كنت احب ارسم وألون ولكن وجدت القراءة والكتابة صعبة.

2. My parents discovered that I had dyslexia.

ً اَكَنْشُفُ والداي أني اعاني من مرض صعوبة القراءة.

3. When I took my exams, I got really good results.

ً ^{عند}ما امتحنت حصلت على درجات جيدة.

4. I got a prize for my art and then I decided I would like to be an artist one day. أنظام على جائزة ثم قررت اني أريد ان اكون رسام في يوم من الأيام.

B. Building sentences

Read and complete:

- 1.1 got really results.
- 2.1....surprised and happy.
- 3. I got a for my art.
- 4.1 would like to an artist one day.
- 5. Now, I teach at a charity.

للمين

<mark>بعد دراس</mark>ة القواعد والمفردات اللغوية الخاصة بالدرسين قم بالتدريب على بناء الجملة

C. Writing a short story

كتابة قصة قصيرة

للمزيد من الشرح (مهارات الكتابة) يمكنك الرجوع إلى ملدق (Master Your Term)

نموذج قصة قصيرة Model short story

Write a short story of about 110 words about an experience you will never forget.

An experience I will never forget

It is said that situations are the best teacher. When I was a little child of about seven years old, I had an experience I will never forget. I always liked walking in the fields on my own. My mother used to advise me not to do so, but I thought I was right. One day, I was alone in a faraway part of the fields. It was very early in the morning and there weren't so many farmers there. Suddenly, I saw a group of five or six large dogs in front of me. I was so terrified that I decided to run away. As soon as I started to run, the dogs started to run after me. The dogs were much faster than I was. I started to cry and call for help. I fell down and all the dogs circled me. They were making such frightening noise that I felt it was the end of the world to me. All of a sudden, I heard the shouts of a group of farmers, who were running towards me with large sticks in their hands. Seeing the farmers with the sticks, the dogs escaped. I was rescued, but I learnt a lesson I will never forget. I must follow the advice of the elderly.

(مهارات الكتابة) يمكنك الرجوع إلى ملحق (Master Your Term)

نموذج للسيرة الشخصية Model Biography

Write a biography of about 110 words about a person in your family or a public figure مُمَادُت or a public figure

"My father"

If all fathers are great, I have the greatest father ever. He means everything to me. He is kind, loving and careful. I owe آدُين لـ my success and happiness to my father.

My father was born on January 22nd, 1949. He was an ideal student. He graduated from the Faculty of Engineering, Cairo University in 1972. Once he graduated, he joined the Armed Forces and took part in the 1973 War He was one of the engineers who worked on destroying Bar Lev Line. When the war ended, he went back to university to do his postgraduate studies دراسات عليا. He became a leading engineer in Egypt and started his own company that carried out several national and international projects. As a father to us, he was ideal. He cared a lot for our happiness, health and success in education and life. He taught us how to be positive members in our community. My father was a great success in both personal and work life. He also fought for his country. Thank you, father. تربعلى كتابة سيرة ذاتية

E. Practise by yourself

^{- لقد} تعلمت السباحة.

Write biography of about(110) words on :

"Your favourite person"

Speaking Corner

نعارة التحدث

"Asking and answering questions about important things you نُوجِيه أُسئلَة عن الأشياء قد قمت بإنجازها : have achieved":

- What important things have you achieved in your life? - ما الأشياء الهامة التّي حققتها في حياتك ؟
- 2. When did you learn that?
- Hearned to swim three years ago. ً تُعلمتها منذ ثلاثة أعوام.

- I have learned to swim.

- متی تعلمت هذا ؟

General Exercises



LESSONS 5 & 6

Understand

a. disability

Apply

• Create

	Comple	ete t	he	fol	lowing	dialogue:
--	--------	-------	----	-----	--------	-----------

Ayman i	Ayman is talking with his friend, Hamza about their favourite hobbies.					
Ayman	: How are	you, Hamza ?				
Hamza		nk you. What do)	/Ou do in your s	para timo ?		
Ayman	:(1)		ou do in your s	pare time :		
Hamza	: Reading i	s really useful. (2))	7		
Ayman		ling scientific boo				
Hamza	: I usually o			• • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • •		
Ayman		d of sport do you	do?			
Hamza	: (4)					
Ayman			rous. Why don't	you play football ?		
Hamza	: (5)		,	,		
Choose t	the correct	answer from a	, b , c or d :			
1. WB Ha	tem	to help the elder	ly in the nearby	charity home.		
	aged	b. volunteered	1.50	1.52		
2. To keep	p fit, you sh	oulda spor	rt.			
a. own		b. take	c. make	d. d o		
3. She	more th	an seven hours a	day to prepare	for the Olympics.		
a. feed	s	b. does	c. trains	d. make s		
4. We hav	4. We haven't the reason for his absence yet.					
a. disco	a. discovered b. arrested c. visited d. explored					
5. Waleed	suffers from	m He find	s difficulties in r	eading.		

b. dyslexia

c. headache

d. deafness

· Create

c. have they lived

6. I'm proud of my father. He		many things in his life.	
a. joined	b. offered	-1.00	d. achieved
7. SB I volunteer at a		for other children with	dyslexia.
a. charity	b. bank	c. theme park	o. theatre
8. They moved to Po	3. They moved to Port Said		
a. on	b. since	c. for	d. in
9. Hadi has lived in A	lexandria b. ever	10 years.	d. since
10. WB How long		ouse ? b. have lived th	ey

Complete the sentences with these words:

paint - understand - easy - difficult - life

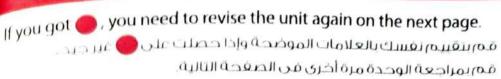
d. lived they have

I was born in Cairo and I have lived there all my (1) When I was little, I always loved to draw and (2), but I found reading and writing very (3) At school, I didn't always (4) the lessons and it was really hard. I thought I wasn't very clever.

Write a paragraph of about (110) words on: "Things that you have achieved"	2	ب عنه في نهاية الكينا
Things that you have achieved		

Self Assessment Activity

التقييم الذاتى





في نهاية هذه الوحدة. ساكون قادرًا على هي نهاية هذه الوحدة. ساكون قادرًا على

Learn important vocabula	اتعلم مفردات لغوية هامة <mark>ry</mark>
experience	orphanage
snorkel	deaf
get married	organise
pretend	scared of
Read and write sentences u	ising the present perfect and
the most simple tense:	اقرأ واكتب جمل باستخدام زمن المضارع التام وزمن الماد
They have ridden a horse	
Last week, she visited Ale	
Adel has never been to ar	nother country.
They moved to a new flat	two years ago.
Ask and answer questions a	about experiences : أسأل واجيب أسئلة عن الخبرات
A: Which people in your f	family have been to another
B: My cousin has been to	England.
A: How long have you live	ed in your house ?
B : I've lived there since I v	vas born.
B: I've lived there sin, oo کراسة المعاصر laster your term تهریة بعد کل ثلاث وحدات	مزيد من التدريبات . جزء للمتابعة ف

unit

SB page 43

WB page 101

Falking about experiences

A: How long have you been at this

B: I have been at this school for seven years. Have you ever joined a sports (للتعبير عن النفي) club? B: No, I have never joined a sports club. A: What important things have you achieved in your life?

B: I've worked as a volunteer for a charity in my town.

Speaking

school?

منرة مي 29.00

a period of

marry

snorkel plant active layer

زمن المضارع التام

1. The present perfect tense.

experience across across eya

Vocabulary

Language

Subject + have + P.P. ppi eX.: They have ('ve) watched TV.

من قبل (للسؤال عن تجارب سابقة) "ever" special school and authorized ex.: Have you ever been to Rome ? sign language فراشارة المناطقة المناطق

مدرسة محلية

local school relationship

فقفلا ex.: I have never seen a snake. "never"

"for"

dia

pretend

trick

لدة (تعبر عن المدة التي استغرقها الحدث) eX :: Khalid has been married for 3 years.

theme park

منذ (تعبر عن بداية الحدث) ed.: She has lived in Cairo since 2010. "since"

زمن الماض البسيط 2. The past simple tense.

dyslexia في الفراءة Ayslexia

orphanage adventure

التمريف الثاب للفعل | + | Subject

andoto

رياضة ركوب اللمواج القارب شراعي)

windsurfing

ex.: They bought a new house three سياج - داجر Last year, he visited Italy. years ago.

CONT.

paint fence

Writing Skill

ممــارة الكتابـــة

"معالجة جديدة للفقرة الرنشائية والبريد الإلكتروني"

A paragraph / An email on

- Your life / Your favourite hobby / Things you have achieved / An adventure story
- ارونی Brainstorming

مجموعة أسئلة لاستثارة أفكار لكتابة الفقرة الإنشائية / رسائل البريد الإلكتروني

- What's your favourite hobby?
- What places would you like to visit?
- Mention two things you have achieved.
- How long do you practise your hobby?

Vocabulary

مفردات لغوية مساعدة

practise achieve	organise do well	good things family life	
behave take turn	partner	events	
work hard		adventure	

.P E

Expressions & Structures

تعبيرات وتراكيب مساعدة

- I like	- To succeed you should
- It's important to	– I always help
- I play	– I text my



Paragraph / Email

كتابة الفقرة الإنشائية / رسالة بريد إلكتروني

_	write a paragraph of about (110) words on :
	"Your favourite hobby"

Exam Language Bank

أَهُمَ النَّقَاطُ (مُوضَعُ إِحْتِبَار) فَى كُل وحدة والتي تستطيعُ مِن خَلَالهَا التَّعَامَلُ مَعُ تَدَرِيبَاتَ الوحدة و كُل التَّدَرِيبَاتَ الْخَاصَةُ بِالْمِنْهَجِّ.



Vocabulary

fence پرکب دراجة والح - حادر ride a bike همس تحت الماء بأنبوب تنفس snorkel يتزوج get married نوة - نجربة حيانية experience يتسلق جبل climb a mountain normal طياكي deaf scared of ألغة الإشارة دانت قال sign language هلاف - سيىء السلوك naughty مدرسة محلية local school walk past يمشي بجوار علاقة relationship

🚣 Language

- Samy has played⁽¹⁾ tennis.
- 2. Has Lina ever⁽²⁾ seen the film?
- 3. They have never (3) visited the zoo.
- Adel has had a car for⁽⁴⁾ 3 years.
- 5. Sara has been at this house since 2010.
- 6. Yesterday⁽⁶⁾, Mohamed bought⁽⁷⁾ a new mobile.

و اختبار: عامة قد تكون موضع اختبار:

وله والله و المناه المناعدة المناء المناء المناء المناء

Check Language

- هة في زمن المضارع التام في مينة الثبات
- تُشتَّدُمُ لُلسُوْالَ عَنَ التَّجَارِبِ تُسَاطِّةً فَى زَمَنَ المُضَارِعَ التَّامِ
- تعتدم مع الجملة المنفية
 - الغير عن العدة التي استغرقها احدث في زمن المضارع التام ****
- أستُندم للتعبير عن بداية الحدث فيزمن العضارع التلم
 - مُعَةً هُذَ عَلَى رَمَنَ المَاضِي البِسيطِ
 - 🚈 فثبتة في زمن العاصي البسيط

اختیار : المنافع ا

3 Speaking

Questions



Answers



- 1. Have your parents lived in the same house?
- 2. How long have you known your best friend?
- 3. Has anyone in your family travelled by plane?

- Yes, they have.
- Since 2010.
- No, no one has travelled by plane.

General Exercises

on unit 4

Create

Complete the following dialogue:

Nabil S	saw Amr running in the street.
Nabil	: Hi, Amr. Why are you running ?
Amr	Hello, Nabil. (1)
Nabil	: A hospital! (2)?
Amr	My brother broke his leg.
Nabil	: Oh, dear (3)?
Amr	He was playing football in the club and fell over. He couldn't stand on his leg.
1.1.11	Whataak him to bospital ?

: Who took him to hospital : lide

: (4) Amr

: Can I come with you? Nabil

Amr

Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

I was born in Cairo and I have lived there all my life. When I was little, l always loved to draw and paint, but I found reading and writing very difficult. At school, I didn't always understand the work and it was really hard. I thought I wasn't very clever.

Then my parents and the school decided to take me for some tests. They discovered that I had dyslexia. This means it is difficult for my brain to read and spell. After that, I got more help at school and I started to understand more.

When I took my exams, I got really good results! I was surprised and happy. Later, I got a prize for my art and then I decided I would like to be an artist one day. Now, I volunteer at a charity for other children with dyslexia and teach them about art.

a. Answer the following questions :

 Explain why the writer's family took him to have some tests. Mention two points.

	2. Infer the characteristics of a child who has dyslexia. Mention two.				
	3. Do you th Why and	ink that students how ?	having dyslexia can g	get good results?	
		correct answer fr			
	4. The passa	ge is about			
	a. the writ	er himself	b. the write's fa	mily	
	c. Cairo		d. dyslexia		
	5. People wi	th dyslexia need	enomen.		
	a. to have	more money	b. to do sport		
	c. to have	more help	d. to learn art		
	6. The under	lined word "This"	refers to		
	a. result	b. exam	c. school	d. dyslexia	
3	Choose the co	orrect answer fro	om a, b, c or d:		
		rltalian food			
	a. learned	b. eaten	a r ⊂ ridden		
•		lept a tent I		d. flown	
	a. in	b. on		17.15	
•	3. They have	to this house s	c. off	d. for	
	a. enjoyed	b. ridden			
•	55 10		c. flown	d. moved	
	a. climb	b. escape	mountains, have y	ou ever done it?	
			c. bring	d. fly	
	a. common	b general	ldren will be built in a	our neighbourhood	
		o. general	c. special	d social	
	a. out	the s	treet, I met my friend	d.	
•		b. down	c. up	d. off	
	a. decision	Is something th	at happens in your li	fe.	
	decision	b. report	c. experience	d. experiment	

		Ha	ive you ever travelled by plane ?
g This is the n	nost interesting sto		
a. never	b. since	c. for	d. ever
9. Sohaila has	made a cake	before.	G. CVEI
a. never	b. ever	c. for	d. since
●10.	d in the same hous	eI was bor	
a. ever	b. never	c. for	d. since
A Complete the	e sentences with the	correct form of	the word(s) in brackets:
1 Have you	(ever ride) a hor	se?	
2. now long	(you have be)	in Assiut ?	
3. 56 She	(stay) in Damiett	a since 2017.	
4. 💯 I have n	ever (swim) ii	n a lake.	
5 TB Comple	te the sentences v	vith these word	s:
	bathroom - hous	e - for - lived - mo	oved
Different f	families have lived in	our (1)	for over 200 years.
I have lived h	ere with my family s	ince 2016. Before	that, we (2)
	parents changed son		
	mple, my mum want		
6 Choose the			
	il - l t this so	had since / for 20)20.

1. Mr Sabri has been at this school sinc

¹ 2. [3] To discover / join is to become part of a club.

Write a paragraph of about (110) words on :

"A happy event that happened to you recently"

Stop here!

30			
Mini-Test on ur	nit 4 for Al-Azh	ar students	ر مدغر لطلاب الأزهر الشريف
Read and match:			
(4	And the second second second	В
1. Where is it best	to snorkel in	a. since the	hey were children.
Egypt?			, or to a small
The state of the s	friends with Injy	degree	
3. My sister has le	arnt two new	_	d in 1999.
languages			he left school.
4. "A bit" means			El-Sheikh.
5. My parents got	!		of her life ?
 How long have y Have you never v We waited to the 	visited Athens?		(
2. Use your brain	n, think smart		في ما تعلمته واختبر ذكائك
 Choose the correct 	the state of the s		
 My dad has passe lots 	d bad exper b. much		
Nation Association		C. many	d. little
 "Ali became part of a followed 	b. joined		d. hid
3. Please, let me language.	•		100 March 100 Ma
a. gives	b. to give	c. give	d. giving
4. Please, allow me		n Hurghada.	
a. going	b. goes	c. going to	d. to go

b. I lived in Alexandria in 2000.

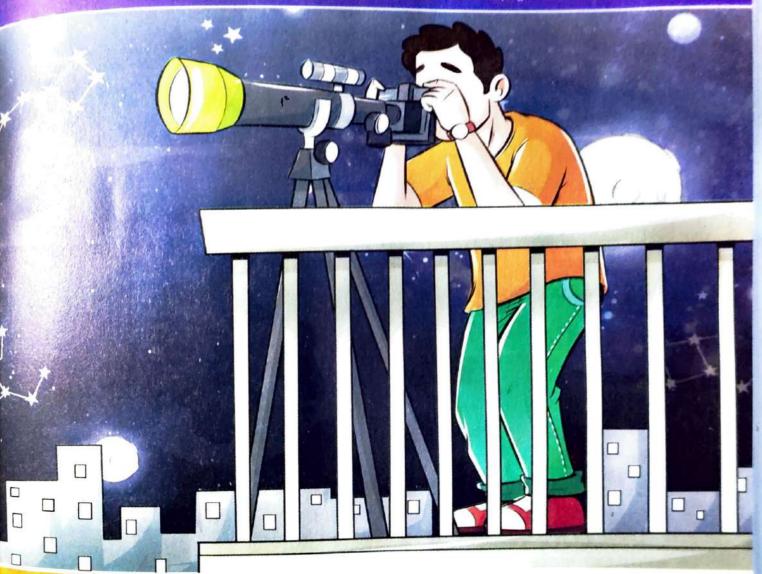
c. I have lived in Alexandria in 2000. d. I will live in Alexandria in 2000.

5. Which sentence is correct?.....a. I live in Alexandria in 2000.

155 150

Young role models

SB pages 44:53 WB pages 102:108



Objectives

· Reading :

A text about a business person and a space engineer; a biography of a friend; an article about a sports tournament; a biography of a tennis player

· Writing:

A description of someone's job; a paragraph about tournament or a competition; a biography of a role model

· Listening:

A conversation about a role model; an interview

with an inventor; a conversation about sharing good news

· Speaking:

Discussing jobs; talking about sports tournaments; responding to good news

· Language:

The present perfect with yet and already

· Life Skills :

Respect for diversity

• العلامة 🕬 تسبق اسئلة كتاب الصالب • العلامة 💯 تسبق اسئلة كتاب التدريبات

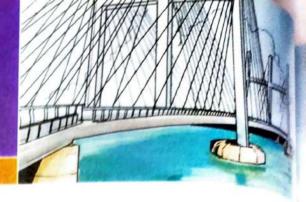


- للمناحة اليومية و الابحاث في Master your term - فاموس المعاصر اللغوف



1 & 2

58 pages 44 : 47 WB pages 102 & 103



Vocabulary

Key Vocabulary

award (n)	جائزة - مكافأة	disabled people (n) page	الدنباجات الخاصة / الد
speech (n)	حديث - خطاب	enter (ed) (v)	_{يظ -} ينضم
challenge(d) (v), (n)	یتحدی - تحدی	goals (n)	_{مداف} - طموحات
	Jobs	وظائــف	
business person	رجل أعمال	mathematician	يلو الرياضيات
campaigner	ناشط - مناضل	space scientist	الم فضاء
computer programmer	مبرمج حاسوب	sports champion	ے طل ریاضی
engineer	ممندس	volunteer	eghi
astronaut	رائد فضاء	manager	ונע

■ Key Vocabulary هي المفردات الأكثر أهمية المطلوب من الطالب إتقانها.

■ Master your Vocabulary يقضى على جميع مشاكل حفظ المفردات (ملحق Master).

■ Glossary لحصيلة أكبر (للمزيد) من المفردات اللغوية نهاية الكتاب.

Lesson 7 SB pages 44 & 45 WB page 102

	r-goo ir a 40 Wb page	102	
championship (n)	بطولة	university (n)	ācob
company (n)		pass (ed) (v)	يتاز
space science (n)	علم الفضاء	50 78 5050	ستار



achievements (n)	انجازات	the USA	لولابات المتحدة الأمريكية
space engineering (n) hyperloop (n)	مندسة الفضاء	education (n)	النعليم
8 8 8		equipment (n)	שצוני
نقل عالی السرعة) the Middle East	الهايبرلوب (نظام	blind (adj)	أعمى
Cairo University	الشرق الأوسط	design (ed) (v) , (n	يعمر - تصميم
curo ornversity	جامعة القاهرة	achieve (d) (v)	يحقق - ينجز

Conjugal	تصريف الأفعال غير المنتظمة قو Conjugation of Irregular Verbs						
Present	المضارع 🕽	الماضي Past	التصريف الثالث .P.P.				
get	يحصل	got	got				
pay	يدفع	paid	paid				
build	يبنى	built	built				
choose	یختار	chose	chosen				
mean	يعني - يقصد	meant	meant				

تُنُويه هذه التعريفات مجم<mark>عة من كتاب الطالب وكتاب التدريبات و</mark>قاموس التعريفات (glossary) <mark>في نهاية كتاب التدريبات</mark>.

Study these	definitions	ادرس هده التعريفات	
award	a prize for an event or a competition	جائزة	
mathematician	someone who works with maths	عالم رياضيات	
scientist	someone who works with science	عالم	
artist	someone who is good at art	فنان	
musician	someone who is good at music	موسيقار	

Collocations				متللزمات لفظية
get	a job	يحصل على وظيفة	win	an award يفوز بجائزة
give	a speech	یلقی خطاب		a competition يفوز بمسابقة
finish	school university	ينهى الدراسة ينهى دراسة الجامعة	Start	a company ينشئ شركة يبدأ العمل في وظيفة a job
have		الديه مسابقة / منافسة ٦		university يذهب إلى الجامعة

Reading and Listening



on Lesson 1 SB page 45

My cousin, Gamal, is a business person. When he finished university⁽¹⁾, he got a job with a big company⁽²⁾ in Cairo. He's worked there for three years now.

I think he's got a very important job.

He's the manager⁽⁸⁾ of a team of people and they have meetings⁽⁴⁾ every day. He works very hard. Sometimes, he has to meet people from companies in other countries. He has travelled⁽⁵⁾ to lets of interesting places.

countries. He has travelled to lots of interesting places. Last year, he went to Nigeria and Brazil.

Check Vocabulary

سافر (5) اجتماعات (4) مدیر (3) شرکه (2) جامعه (1)

on Lesson 2 SB page 46

Samar Abdelfattah has always been interested in space⁽¹⁾. As a young child, she wanted to be an astronaut⁽²⁾. After she finished school, she went to Cairo University to study space engineering⁽³⁾.

While Samar was at university, a space technology company had a competition. Students had to design a hyperloop - a new, very fast form of transport⁽⁴⁾ that travels above the ground.

Samar decided to enter the competition and asked other engineering students from the university to join (5) her team.

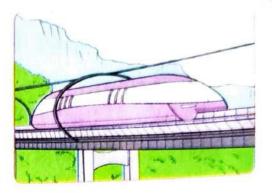
Teams of students from universities all around the world entered, but Samar's team was the only one from Africa or the Middle East (6).

Check Vocabulary

الشرق الأوسط (6) ينضم إلى (5) وسيلة نقل (4) هندسة الفضاء (3) رائدة فضاء (2) الفضاء (1)

They worked hard on their design and they won the competition. Samar travelled to the USA to receive the award (7).

Three years later, Samar started her own company. Now she is a space engineer and a business person. She also gives speeches (8) to other young engineers to help them achieve (9) their goals (10).

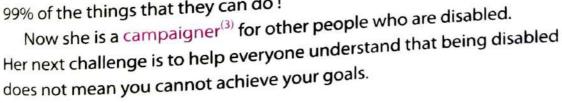


Check Vocabulary طموحات - أهداف (10) يحقق (9) خطابات / احاديث (8) حرفة -

on Lesson 2 WB page 103

Binita who is from a village(1) in India, was five years old when she became blind. This was a big challenge (2) for her. She went to a school for blind children until she was eleven, when she joined a different school with children who weren't blind.

At school, Binita found that the children quickly learnt about her problems. They now know that just because she is blind does not mean she cannot do 99% of the things that they can do!



Check Vocabulary



- اختبار <mark>مصغر للأزهر الش</mark>ريف.
- طبق ما <mark>تعلمته واختبر</mark> ذكائك



on Lesson 2 SB page 47

Seleem: Hi Mazin! What are you reading?

Mazin : It's an article about Magdy Abdel Sayed. He's a campaigner for people who are disabled.

Seleem: So is he disabled?(1).

Mazin: Yes hes been disabled all his life. He's done lots of amazing things, but he has had lots of challenges.

Seleem: What was his life like as a child?

Mazin: Well, he couldn't move without help until he was five years old.

Seleem: Did he go to school?

Mazin: Yes, but it wasn't easy. Some schools couldn't have Magdy as a student because they didn't have the right equipment for disabled people.

Seleem: So what happened?

Mazin : Magdy really wanted to go to school and his parents wanted him to have a good education. They found a school for him and he was an excellent (2) student.

Seleem: Were there a lot of challenges for Magdy at school?

Mazin: Yes, there were, but he never stopped trying when things were difficult⁽³⁾. Before he left school, he won an award from Cambridge University for his achievements.

Seleem: That's amazing! What did he do when he finished school? Did he get a job or go to university?

Mazin : Well, after Magdy won the award (4), a lot of companies wanted to give him a job, but he decided to go to university.

Seleem: Of course, because education was very important to him.

Check Vocabulary

جائزة (4) صعب (3) ممتاز (2) من ذوى المعمم (1)

Yes, but it wasn't the only important thing. Magdy has always believed in helping other people. At university, he worked as a volunteer for different charities.

Seleem: And does he still help people now?

Yes, he does. He works with a charity that helps disabled people find jobs. He also gives speeches about how everyone can achieve their goals.



we you ever looked at the sky at night? You have probably seen the max planets and stars in space.

reache have already visited space many times. A Russian astronaut, Vari Gagarin, went in 1961. And in 1969, an American astronaut called Neil Armstrong was the first man on the moon.

Today, there are astronauts on a satellite called the International Space Station. This flies around our planet every 90 minutes. The astronauts on the space station do scientific experiments to study space. They usually stay on the space station for about six months. And they even do exercises for two hours every day to keep fit.

Space has interested Egyptians for thousands of years. The Ancient Egyptians were the first civilization to study the stars and the planets, and they made some important discoveries.

They first discovered the equinox. This happens in March and September every year and it is when the position of the sun in the sky means that the day and the night are the same length.

We are still making important discoveries today. At the Egyptian Space Agency in Cairo, engineers from the agency and students from Cairo University have already built satellites. They now want to send an Egyptian astronaut to explore space. Nobody from Egypt has visited space yet, but they will in the future.

General Notes on Reading & Listening

1 role / rule

+ role (n)

exit-Sport plays a great role to keep us healthy.

* rule (v) (ed)

ex.:- Mohammed Ali ruled Egypt long ago.

2 model - medal

* model (n)

ex.:- This is not a real plane. It's a model.

لاط : role model تستخدم بمعنى (مثل أعلى) أو نموذج يحتذي به.

ex.:- You should be a role model to your community.

* medal (n)

ex.:- Basem got the first gold medal in his life in 2017.

3 disable - disabled - the disabled

* disable (v)

يسبب العجز أو الإعاقة - تقوم بتعطيل

B

بمودى

سدالية

ex.:- He was disabled in a car accident.

- The robbers disabled the alarm to rob the bank.

* disabled (adj)

صفة بمعنى من ذوي الهمم / من ذوي الإعاقة

ex.:- I met a disabled boy in a wheelchair.

* the disabled (n) = disabled people (اسم جمع) الشخاص ذوى الإعاقة / ذوى الهمم السم جمع) عند وضع the أمام الصفة فإنها تشير إلى اسم جمع.

ex.: - We should help the disabled.

للحظ : unable (غير قادر) وتصف عدم القدرة على عمل شيء ولا تعني الإعاقة.

ex.:- Some children are unable to read well.

4 equipment (n)

(لا يضاف لها "s" الجمع) عدده الكلمة لا تعد (لا يضاف لها "s" الجمع)

ex.:- The equipment in this studio is very expensive.

(a piece of / pieces of) ولكن يمكن أن نجعلها مفرد وجمع بإضافة

ex.:- The microwave is a useful piece of equipment in the kitchen.

- We need new pieces of equipment for our school lab.

👩 a reward - an award

* a reward

مكافأة (لعمل حيد قام به شخص)

ex.:- My father gave me a reward for my success.

an award

جائزة رسمية (للفوز في مسابقة مثلًا)

ex.: - Dr Ahmed Zewail got many awards for his inventions and discoveries.

تعبیرات وحروف جر هامة Prepositions ex Prepositions تعبیرات وحروف جر هامة

ger paid b. .. 'of receive the award يتعامل مع الحاسب الألي receive the award 11. 10 a and the world at home حول العالم for 3 years now لمدة ٣ سنوات حتى الأن with top marks take part in يستنتج - يحل مسائل حسابية work out pass exams في يوم مؤخرًا on a recent day

teams of students بحصل على أجر (مادي) فرق من الطلاب سال ا work hard on ... يعمل باجتهاد في يستلو الحائزة يعمل لدي / لصالح work for ايسافر إلى في المنزل بدرجات عالية ىشارك فى يجتاز / ينجح في الإمتحانات

on Vocabulary

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

Key vocabulary

- 1. You can the museum from different places, but I prefer the main gate.
 - a. achieve
- b. become
- c. enter
- d. mean
- 2. The doctors won a lot of for helping so many people in the health emergency.
 - a. words
- b. awards
- c. challenges
- d. villages

- 3. He is a for people who are disabled now. b. space scientist
- a. business person

d. sports champion

c. campaigner

	4. She was a famous out in her job.	. She used	very big number	s to work things
	a. campaigner		b. volunteer	1 2
	c. sports champion	n	d. mathematician	1
	5. Ahmed is a		undreds of comp	uters!
	a. business person		b. campaigner	
	c. computer progra		d. mathematicia	
0	SB and WB Exercises		الب والتدريبات	يهن من عتاب الط
	6. 🔢 Samar helps yo	oung engineers	totheir goa	ls.
		o, achieve		d, enter
	7. [W] A is som	eone who work	s with science.	
	a. mathematician b			d. musician
	8. WB Nahla's	is to pass all her	exams with top m	arks.
	a. goai	o. award	c. speech	d space
	9. WB It was a real	to climb tha	it mountain, but v	ve succeeded!
	a. avvaid	o, challenge	c. campaign	d. village
	El-Moasser Exercises		3	يريات كتاب المعاصر
	10. The Egyptian char	mpion Mohamed	d Ali Rashwan was	in the final of
	Judo ,,,,,	111 1904.		
		b. Achievement	c. Championship	d. Party
	11. A is a new, we the ground.	very fast form of	transport that tra	vels on
	a. ship			
	12. The don't a	et paid family	c. bicycle	d. hyperloop
	12. The don't g a. mathematician	s paid for their	work, but they like	e to help people.
	c. volunteers	-	b. astronauts	
	Language Notes, Ex	(nressions 9 n	d. artists	
	13. The rich	oplowh - I	positions	
	13. The rich pe	b. are	nuch money.	
	14. WB The students	took turns	c. have	d. is
	14. WE The students chess!	took turns to	a speech. Min	e was about playin
		b. give		
		- J C	C TOLO	
	15. Leen is working h	ard har -	c. take	d. have
	15. Leen is working h	h in	roject.	d. have
	15. Leen is working h a. on 16. Drugs المخدرات are l	h in	roject.	d. have
	15. Leen is working h a. on 16. Drugs المخدرات are l	h in	roject.	

Vocabulary Study:

Synonyms and				مترادفات ومتطادا
Word &	يبدا	Synonym ம்சிறி begin	Anto finish	المخاد <mark>nym</mark> پنص - پنتھی
سربع پچتاز pass		,	slow در fail شل	

Prefixes & Suffixes		ناهية	مقاطع بادئة وأ	
Prefix / Suffix	الوظيفة Function	Example	Examples attai	
– jati	لتكوين اسم الفاعل من اللسم	musician mathematician	موسیقار عالم ریاضیات	
- ist	لتكوين اسم الفاعل من اللسم	artist scientist	فنان - رسام عالم	
- er	لتُكوين اسم الفاعل م ن الاسم أو الفعل	campaigner engineer teacher programmer	ناشط - مناضل مهندس مدرس مبرمج	
dis –	تعطى عكس الصفة	disabled disappointed	من ذوى الإعاقة محبط	

Exercise on Vocabulary Study

Ochoose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. To succeed in	your exams mean	s you tnem.	
a. taste	b. test	c. pass	d. fail
2. Noha works	as a campaigner sin	ce she left school	.The word
"campaigner	" here is a/an b. verb	c. adjective	d. adverb
a - oct	he suffixto n b. – ist	c. – er	u. Iy
4. We use the p	refix (dis –) to give b. antonym	the of the ac	djective "appointed". d. adverb

III Language

تذڪر Remember

The Present Perfect Tense:

زمن المضارع التام:

<mark>﴾ فد سبق شرح زمن المضارع التام</mark> في الوحدة السابقة.

- Cmar has already eaten a big pizza.
 - He has never been to England.
 - She has studied English since 2002.
 - Salah has scored 13 goals this year.
 - Have you ever driven a truck?
 - Where has Yasser been this week?

The Past Simple Tense :

زمن الماضى البسيط:

فد سبق شرح زمن الماضى البسيط فى الوحدة الثانية.

- ex. She was ill yesterday.
 - He went to the cinema last month.
 - They didn't build the house last year.
 - Did you go swimming last week?
 - Where did you go yesterday?

Stop here! on Language (Answered & Explained)

فهذا الجزء نقدم للطالب تدريب على القاعدة اللغوية مجاب عنه ومصحوب بشرج أسباب اختيار الجابة الصحيحة

• Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1	0	Lin		1	
١.	Offiai	 ms	exams	last	week.

a. passes b. pass

c. passing

d. passed

2. Mona as a volunteer since she left school.

a. work

b. works

c. has worked

d. working

3. Yassera smartphone five years ago.

a. hasn't had

b. didn't have

c. doesn't have

d. hasn't have

4. I have just a postcard to my pen-friend.

a. sent

b. send

c. sending

d. sends

5. Where has Salma this week?

a. were

b. be

c. to be

d. been

No.		الإدارة والتوطيح Answer + Explanation
1	d	لأن الحملة نغير عن حدث ثم وانتهى في الماضي وهنانا خنف داند حتى رحى
2	С	الماضي النسبط (last week) لأن الحملة نعبر عن حدث بدأ في الماضي واستمر حتى وقت الكلام وهناك كلمة
3	b	(since) ندل على زمن المضارع الثام لأن الحملة نعبر عن النفي في زمن الماضي البسيط وهناك كلمة دالة على زمن العنف العدم (1976)
4	a	الماضي النسيط (ago) لأن (have) بتدعها التصريف الثالث للفعل في زمن المضارع التام.
5	d	لأن الجملة تعبر عن زمن المضارع التام في صيغة الاستفهام ويكون الفعل في التصريف الثالث

on Language

SB and WB Exercises

1. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: تدريبات من كتاب الطالب والتدريبات

1. Samar wanted to be an astronaut when she a. was b. is c. were	d. being
2. We Last year, I to meetings around the world.	d. travelling
3. Magdy has a lot of challenges in the last at have b. had c. has with hundreds of cold 4. Since I started my job, I works 4. We since I started my job, I works	d. having mputers! d. worked
a. have worked b. Work 5. What always been important to Magdy?	d. having تدریبات کتاب المعاص
El-Moasser Exercises 6. Adel come on time this morning? C Was	d. Do
7.1 have my bike. mends	d mending
8. My mother gone to the market has	d didn't
9. Has she cooked lunch? Yes, she a. have b. did	261

10. The teacher the class an hour ago. b, enters c, has entered d, enter a. entered 2. Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in bracket ربان من كتاب الطالب والتدريبات SB and WB Exercises 1. Es They worked hard on their design and they (win) the competition 2. ET3 My mum (want) to be a sports champion when she was your 3. KS3 What (have) Samar achieved 7 4. UZ3 Last year, we (build) a very long bridge in China. Cl-Moasser Exercises سان كتاب المعاص 5. Has life (be) easy for Alaa ? 6. She has ____ (paints) the fence by herself. 7. Someone (have) sent me this email. 8. How long _____ (you have) stayed in Alexandria? 9. Tamer and Nour (has) been to the park. 10. The children have (wrote) a beautiful story.

Skills Corner



سِّةِ التَّعَامَلِ مَعَ مَعَارَاتَ (القَرَاءَةَ - الكتَابَةَ - التَحدثُ) في الورقة الامتحانية لكل در س على حده.

للمزيد من الشرح والتدريبات على مهارات (القراءة - الكتابة - التحدث) Part 2 في ملحق (Master Your Term)



Reading Corner

﴿ بَقُرِلَةَ Reading on lesson 2 SB page 46 من كتاب المعاصر صفحة ٢٥٢ ثم قم بالتدرب اجابة بعض أسئلة قطعة الفهم طبقاً لمواصفات الورقة الامتحانية.

Answer the following questions:

- مصارة التفكير النقدي Critical thinking skill
- 1. Why do you think Samar's team won the competition?
 - Because they worked hard.
- Extracting information استخراج المعلومات
- 2. What has Samar Abdelfattah been interested in ?
- Understanding reference مُمَو ما يشير إليه الدَّموير
- 3. What does the pronoun "They" in the third paragraph refer to?

Writing Corner

Writing Corner		ginen glivo
A. Read the sentences water	ين موره الشائم / عبالشا مومه م	القرياد كتدليية رامي
My cousin Gamal is a business p	erson. Joel J. y in Cairo. ق شرکه کبیره فی القاهره	
t He's worked there for three year the stravelled to lots of interesting that year, he went to Nigeria and	ة ثلاث سنوات بر النماجر الشرقي «Daces قريرة	۳ لقد عمل هناك لهدا ٤ نقد سافر إلى العديد م
p. poilding sentences		
and complete:	AND DESCRIPTION OF THE PARTY OF	
yesterday - be - long -	ago - manager - pas:	sed
his exams last week. Adel is the of the company She wanted to a sports character of the company How has she been in Cairc He won a prize three years	y. ampion. ما	قنويه بعد داسة القواعد والمفر اللغوية الظاصة بالدرس قم بالتدريب على بناء الج
C. Practise by yourself Write a paragraph of about 110 wo "Someone in your family	ude on :	
Speaking Corner		Carringer
Asking and answering questions	about jobs : عليها عن الوظائف :	توجيه أسئلة والرد
Questions	Answer	,
1. Which university did you study at?	- I studied at ·	لفد درست می آن
2. What is your job ? ﴿ وَالْمُمْنَاكِ } كَا الْمُعْلَقِينَ كَا الْمُعْلِقِينَ الْمُعِلِقِينَ الْمُعْلِقِينَ الْمُعِلِي الْمُعْلِقِينَ الْمُعْلِقِينَ الْمُعْلِقِينَ الْمُعْلِقِينَ الْمُعْلِمِينَ الْمُعْلِمِينَ الْمُعْلِمِينَ الْمُعْلِمِينِ الْمُعْلِمِينَ الْمُعْلِمِينَ الْمُعْلِمِينَ الْمُعْلِمِينَ الْمِ	,	للنبي ادب
بهذه الوظيفة ؟ 4. When did you start it ?	*	أنا بدأت في
متى بدأت العمل في هذه الوظيفة ؟ ? S. How long have you had the job? كم المدة النبية	11.00	1 1 1 1
5. How long have you had the الله عليه المدة الله عليه المدة الله عليه الله المدة المدة الله المدة المدة الله المدة الله المدة الله المدة الله المدة الله المدة الله المدة ال	*	لقد قصیت

كم المدة التي قضيتها في وظيفتك ؟

General Exercises

on LESSONS 1 & 2

• Understand • Apply

Create

Con	nplete the fo	ollowing dialo	gue:	
Laila	is asking Ma	aha about her	role m odel.	
Laila	: Can I ask	you a question	?	
Mali	a :(1)			
Laila	: (2)	?		
Mah	a : My role m	nodel is my mo t	ther.	
Laila	: Great! (3)		?	
Maha	a: After my f	ather's death, s	she suffered a lot fo	or me.
Laila	: How ? Car	n you explain m	nore ?	0000000 000
	:(4)			
Laila	: She is a gr	eat woman. Ho	ow do you feel tow	ards har 2
Maha	:(5)	······· •	,	ards rier :
2 Choo	se the corre	ct answer froi	ma,b,cord:	
1.1415	Schools shou	uld have	for disabled peop	le.
a. e	quipment	b. kitchens	c. factories	d. birds
2. Iou	rists come to	Egypt from all	the world.	
a. 10	ound	b. a round	C 1	d. roundly
J. THE	y train nard b	ccause they	a competition	next month
		~. SCHO	C 100 al.	
4. My (incle is happy	y because his s	on hasan a	ward
		v. made	r don-	d. given
5. My E	rother is wor	king hard	his project	a. given
	8	D. about	c bu	d. from
6. My	is to cor	me first and joi	n a secondary sch	u. IIOM
a. les	son	h goal	Schidal y SCh	001.

b. goal

c. company d. reason

Young	ro	le	mod	e	S
_ 100119	1.15	1.00			

/					
	7. We all should kno	ow that being o	lisabled doesn't	mean you cannot	
•	your goals	b. enter	c. forget	d. deceive	
	done m	v homework			
	8. I haven't done m		c. ever	d. yet	
	9. She clean	ed the car.			
	- (27)	D. 13	c. will	d. has	
	10. Nostafa has	been to Ku	wait before.		
		n vei	C. CVCI	d. ago	
	Complete the ser	5. , 5.	L wort for	n of the word(s)	
2	Complete the ser	ntences with	the correct for	If Of the way	
1	in brackets.				
	1.They (was	sh) the carpets	last Friday.		
	2. He (not n	nake) tea vet.			
	. (tal a report ve	sterday.		
	3. Amir (Wi)	te) a report you	her country sinc	e she was a baby.	
	4. She (not	travel) to allot	incir courting		
4	Complete the se	entences with	these words:		
*	concerts -	started - univ	ersity - meeting:	s - manager	
	Gamal got his	iob after he fir	nished (1)		
		L 1/	Sare ann lie iius	DCC::	
	working for the C	ompany teny	mal has (4)	with people from	om
	of the company s	ince 2010. Gai	mar mas v		
	different compar	ies every day.		THE STATE OF THE S	THE PERSON NAMED IN
5	33 Write a short	text of about	t (110) words o	1:	and the last of th
•		"Your	role model"		

		5.00.00			

ł	***************************************				

3&4





Vocabulary

Key Vocabulary

biography (n)	سيرة خانية (اشخص)	coronavirus (n)	_{ادل} س کورونا (کوڤید - ۱۹)
creative (adj)	Palin - Palin	pandemic (n)	elig - dai
create (d) (v)	ينشئ يبتئ	spectators (n)	_{المدین} - متفرجین
tournament (n)	دوری - مسابقة (ریاضیة)	organisers (n)	Jyskin
bubble (n)	فقاعة (طبية)	app (n)	
medical team (n)	الفريق الطبي	المحمول أو الكمبيوتر	ييؤ / برنامج على التليفون
contest (n)	مسابقة - منافسة	staff (n)	هُو - هَيْنَةُ العاملين
competitors (n)	متنافسين	champions (n)	ظر (ریاضیون)
championship (n)	بطولة		

تنويه « Key Vocabulary هي المفردات الأكثر أهمية المطلوب من الطالب إتقائها.

لعال.

• Master your Vocabulary يقضى على جميع مشاكل حفظ المفردات (ملحق Master).

• Glossary لحصيلة أكبر (للمزيد) من المفردات اللغوية نهاية الكتاب.

esson (3

SB pages 48 & 49 WB page 104

poems (n)	قصائد	dream (n)
particular (adj)	معین / خاص	
software (n)	برنامج حاسوبي	لالمال (سوق تجاری) (Khan El-Khalili (n



SB page 50 WB page 105

Olympics (n)	دورة الألعاب الأوليمبية	final (n)	10
health centre (n)	مرکز طبی	incredible (adj)	فنهل لا يصدق
achievement (n)	إنجاز	Africa Cup of Nations (n)	عس النمريقية انتباد
medal (n)		success (n)	Ele
test (ed) (v), (n)	يختبر - يفحص / إختبار	viewers (n)	التلفاز)

Countries and Cities

glell Jalm Alga Fuypt

11369 193

AUHARIA ALJOHI

18-989

TUNY (mast HILLIAM CAIRE Jaliali

Abidjan (sten Jahmanga cah), daasid arran

hakiliah jik Jethh diyel P.P. LININ diggeth

learned / learnt

held

Present Ejlanii

plies learned / learnt

Past Leinh

CALL hold

abity cass, held

تنويه مخو التعريفات مجمعة من كتاب الطالب وكتاب التحريبات وماموس

التعريفات (glossary) مَن نَهَارِكُ كِتَابِ التَّدرِيباتِ.

these definitions

ادرس معذه التعريفات

software you can use on your computer or phone app

Milke

competition

an event in which people try to be the best at something

amhão - ailamo

create

to make something new

بينك - ينش

creative

good at thinking of new ideas or ways to do something

Sico - page

تستخدم غالبًا صيغًا قصيرة لبعض الكلمات مثل:

Word قماضا

Short form ويعقل القصيرة

application

تطبيق

mathematics

= app= maths

television

علم الرياضيات

=TVتليفزيون

photographs

صور فوتوغرافية

aeroplane

= photos

طائرة

= plane

ollocations

متللزمات لفظية

take

a boat

يستقل القارب

have

a tour

يقوم بجولة

a bus

يستقل الاتوبيس

lunch

يتناول وجبة الغداء

a prize for a poem augusti ajatu jiga create an app

win a medal فهور بعود الهه go hom

Reading and Listening

بطور بكأص



a cup

on Lesson 3 SB page 48

My friend Aya has always loved writing stories and poems. When she was six, she won a prize for a poem" she wrote! She has already written a book of stories. Now, she's writing her second book, but she hasn't finished it yet. She really likes to be creative. She has played the guitar for three years now. She's played in two concerts already. She felt very nervous but she was amazing!

Aya would like to volunteer to teach writing and music to children one day. Her other dream is to create an app to help children learn. She hasn't been to another country yet, but there are lots she wants to visit! Maybe we can go travelling together.

Check Vocabulary

يسافر (4) خُلُو (3) دَفَلَكُ مُوسِيقِيةُ (2) وَمَرِيدَةُ (1)

on Lesson 4 SB page 50

31st January 2021

IN THE BUBBLE

Today, the 2021 World Men's Handball Championship in Egypt finished. It has been the biggest handball tournament ever. The Egyptian team did an excellent job and reached the quarter finals



The medical team

(the last eight). There were over 600 competitors (2) from 32 countries.

Check Vocabulary

متنافس (2) دوري - مسابقة (1)

They have played over 100 games and scored more than 5,500 goals! All of this was during the coronavirus pandemic⁽³⁾. Many people said it wasn't possible, but the contest⁽⁴⁾ in Egypt has been fantastic!

The medical team⁽⁵⁾ have worked for months to make the tournament safe. Firstly, there haven't been any spectators⁽⁶⁾. Also, the players and staff⁽⁷⁾ have had tests for coronavirus every 48 hours. Players and people working at the tournament have used four hotels and stayed inside this "bubble "These hotels all have a health centre and every team has had a doctor to work with them. Lots of cleaners have worked day and night to clean the stadiums and the hotels and make them safe.

The medical team were from the Ministry of Health⁽⁹⁾ and the Ministry of Youth and Sports⁽¹⁰⁾. They have done such an incredible⁽¹¹⁾ job that the organisers⁽¹²⁾ of the 2021 Olympics⁽¹³⁾ in Japan have asked them for their advice⁽¹⁴⁾. What an amazing achievement⁽¹⁵⁾!

Check Vocabulary

جائحة / وباء فيروس كورونا (3		منافسة - مسابقة (4)	فریق طبی (5)	مشاهدین (6)	
			وزارة الشباب والرياضة (10)		3
طاقم (7)	(-)		نصيحة (14)	إنجاز (15)	
رائع - لا يصدق (١١)	المنظمين (12)	(13) مرصف بموشفتته	W. C.	-1	

on Lesson 4 WB page 105

Egypt has already⁽¹⁾ won the Africa Cup of Nations⁽²⁾ seven times. That is a fantastic (an incredible) achievement! In 2023, the contest (tournament) will be in Ivory Coast⁽³⁾, who have already been winners (champions) twice before.

The players (competitors) will be from 23 other sountries and th



be from 23 other countries and the games will be in six different stadiums. The biggest stadium are sure in Abjidjan holds 60,000 **people** (spectators). The organisers are sure that it will be a great success (7).

Check	Vocabulary
1	- CUDUIAL V

	Cabulary		استاد (4)
المال المال	كاس الأمم الأفريقية ⁽²⁾	دولة ساحل العاج (3)	النجاح (7)
احل العالى	ابيدجان (اڪبر مدينة في سا	المنظمين (6)	(1)



· on Lesson 3 SB page 49

Interviewer: So Haytham, you are only 18 years old and

you have already created(1) an app, is

that right?

Haytham : Yes! I created an app last year.

Interviewer: What does your app do?

Haytham : It's an app to help people organise(2)

their schoolwork(3) and homework. I needed all my work and timetables

to be in the same place so I made it

to help me! Then my friends liked it too, so I decided to let

other people use it, too!

Interviewer: That sounds great! When can we use it?

Haytham : People have used it in a few schools so you can use it now.

Interviewer: Have you created any other apps yet?

: No, I haven't yet, but I have lots of ideas! Haytham

Interviewer: Have you got a job at a big technology company (4) yet?

: No, not yet! I have already talked to some about my Haytham

ideas but I haven't finished school yet and I want to go to

university.

Check Vocabulary

شركة التكنولوجيا (4) | واجبات مدرسية (3) | تنظيم (2) | يبتكر (1)

General Notes on Reading & Listening

1 audience - viewers - spectators - onlookers

* audience (n)

جمعور (المسرح أو السينما أو أي عرض)

ex.: - The music show was boring, so the audience were not content.

* viewers (n)

^{قتابع}ی / مشاهدی (التلیفزیون)

ex.: - 60 % of the channel viewers prefer romantic films.

```
* spectators (n)
                                                    جمامير (الملعب مثل كرة القدم)
   ex .: - Today, there are 60.000 spectators in the stadium.
  * onlookers (n)
                                                 مشاهدی أو متابعی حدث أو واقعة
   ex: - There were many onlookers at the scene of the accident.
volunteer (v), (n)
   * volunteer (ed) (v)
                                                                        يتطوع
    ext: - He's volunteered to help the disabled.
   * volunteer (n)
                                                                       متطوع
    - He works as a volunteer in a charity.
(n) team (n)
   team (n)
                                            فريق (يمكن أن يتبعها فعل مفرد أو جمع)
                   تعامل (كمفرد) عندما نقصد الفريق ، وتعامل (كجمع) عندما نقصد اللاعبين.
    : - My football team is Al-Ahli.
                                                  (مفرد عندما تعبر عن الفريق ككل)
    ex.: - The team are happy. They've won the cup.
                                               (جمع عندما تعبر عن كل أفراد الفريق)
4 staff - crew
   * staff
                               هيئة العاملين (بشركة - مدرسة - منظمة ... ) ودائما جمع
    ex.: - The company staff are working hard to achieve more and
          more success.
                            طاقم العاملين (على متن الطائرة - السفينة) وهي كلمة مفرد
   * crew
    ex.: - The crew on the ship is hardworking.
5 pandemic
                               جائحة (انتشار وتفشى مرض في جميع انحاء البلاد والقارات)
   ex.: - COVID-19 became a pandemic when it spread all over the world.
6 Olympic - Olympics
   *Olympic (adj)
                                                           خاص بالألعاب الأولمبية
    ex.: - We need to care more about our Olympic athletes.
   *Olympics (n)
                                                  دورة الألعاب الأولمبية (الأوليمبياد)
    ex.: - Tokyo Olympics were amazing.
```

7 biography - autobiography

biography

_{عنية} زيرية لشخص (يكتبها شخص عن آخر)

eX.:- The book gives us biographies of all the presidents.

_{عنية} زائية لشخص (يكتبها الشخص عن نفسه)

· autobiography ex.: I wrote a famous autobiography about my early life.

Competition - contest - tournament - championship

- _{منظ}سهٔ **بین (آشخاص ، منظمات ، مؤس**سات ، شرگات ...) علی شیء (competition (n ex.:- There is a big competition between the two persons to get the job
- مَعْبُهُهُ (غَنائية ، جمالية ... الخ نزاع على شيء) contest (n)
- ex.:- I always watch international beauty contests on TV.
- * tournament (n)

مسابقة أو دورى رياضي (بين مجموعة من اللاعبين أو الفرق بنظام خروج المغلوب)

ex.:- We hold a football tournament every year in our area.

- بطولة (مسابقة في رياضة معينة للوصول للحسن لاعب أو فريق) * championship (n)
 - ex.:- The Football World Cup is the most popular championship for all countries.
- بطل (رياضي) * champion (n)

ex.:- Chelsea sporting club won the European Champions League.

important Expressions & Prepositions فيوات وحروف بر هامة

play in a concert موسيقية play the guitar يعزف على الجيتار feel nervous go travelling together في المسابقة in the contest في الاستاد at the stadium test the players for coronavirus يختبر اللاعبين للكشف عن اصابات بفيروس كورونا

بظلب النصيحة ask for advice over 600 competitors متسابق هن ۲۲ دولة from 32 countries يشعر بالتوتر يحرز أصداف score goals نسافر سویًا يعمل لشمور work for months بقوم بعمل لا يصدق do an incredible job في التلفزيون on TV على جهاز الحاسب on computer

in on the Nile by night في النيل stay in the same hotel learn a musical instrument يمكث في نفس الفندق يتعلم على ألة موسيقية رسافر إلى دولة أخرى to another country

xercise on Vocabulary

o Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

2 Key vocabulary

1. We would like to thank all of the for working hard in the office today. b. awards c. staff d. crew a. finals

2. There were nearly 90,000 in the stadium, and they all enjoyed the match. d. competitors

b. spectators c. players a. medals

3. Our dream is to many apps to help children learn. c. create b. play

a. write

4. A/An is the life story of a person written by someone else. d. autobiography c. tale b. poem a. biography

5. We need thinking to make that new app.

d. small c. amazed b. creative a. impossible تدريبات من كتاب الطالب والتدريبات

SB and WB Exercises

6. WB Our school has a chess every year.

d. tournament c. app b. success a. pandemic

7. WB There are only eight teams left, so this is the-finals. d. third

c. past b. quarter

8. WB A/An is something you can use on your computer or phone.

c. tournament

9. SB There were over 600 from 32 countries in the 2021 World Men's

d. articles Handball Championship. b. competitors c. bubbles تدريبات كتاب المعاصر a. spectators

S El-Moasser Exercises

10. She won a gold in the 100 metres. d. bubble c. model

b. medal a. metal

	Lam proud of ma. spectators	b. organisers	in the life. c. instruments	d. achieve _{ment}
1.2	The " are	a set of internal	tional sports competit	tions that happen
	once every fou a. Olympics		c. Championship	d. Tournaments
L	anguage Notes,	Expressions & I	Prepositions	
1 }	. Magdi Yaccoul		surgeon.	d. like

13. Magdi Yaccoub works a surgeon.
a. for b. with c. as d. like

14. They went on a voyage the Nile.
a. in b. on c. down d. out

15. Policemen work night to protect us.
a. in b. on c. by d. of

16. Medical tests are done on players coronavirus.

a. for b. at c. from d. by

Vocabulary Study:

Synonyms a	ynonyms and Antonyms			فترادفات ومتضادات	
Word	الكلمة	Synonym المرادف	Antonym المضاد		
contest	مسابقة / نزاع	competition			
competitors	متنافسين	players / opponents	helpers	وساعدين	
ملین staff	طاقم / ميئة العا	workers	-		
big	كبير (الحجم)	large	small	مغير (الحجم)	
champions	أبطال	winners	losers	داسرين	
clean	ينظف	wash	make dirty	timio alex	
incredible	رائع - لا يصدق	fantastic - really good	terrible	فظيع - رهيب	
nobody	ת וַכּר	no one	everyone	کل هنص	

Prefixes & Suffixe	s	وناهية	مقاطع بادنة
Prefix/Suffix	الوظيفة Function	Example	و الثه
in –	تعطى عكس المعنى (المضاد)	incredible	eils
im -	تعطى عكس الصفة	impossible	مستحيل

ive	تحول من فعل إلى صفة	creative	Size - gage
-or	تكون الأسم من الفعل	competitor spectator	منافس مشاهد / متفرج
-er	تكون الاسم من الفعل	organiser winner loser	ptio ski phi

on Vocabulary Study

choose the correct answer from a, b, c	or d	F
--	------	---

- 1 Another word for the word "champions" is "
 - b. defenders a. losers c. attackers
- 2. The adjective from the verb "create" is
 - a creates
- b. creative c. creation
 - d. creator " has the same meaning as the word "workers"

d winners

- 3. The word " a. contest
- b. competitor c. champion
- 4. To give the opposite of the word "possible", we add the prefix
 - a in -
- b. un -
- c. dis -

III Language

The Present Perfect Tense with (yet & already)

(yet & already) ومن المضارع التام (yet & already)

"yet" means "at any time until now".

ا تستخدم "yet" بمعنى "حتى الأن"

التكوين Formation

a) We use it at the end of negative sentences:

أ) تستخدم في نهاية الجمل المنفية :

Subject Jelül .

ex.:- She hasn't been to another country yet.

b) We use it at the end of Yes/ No questions:) تستخدم في نهاية الأسئلة بـ"هل" : Have HOS ex.: - Has she learned a musical instrument yet? 🥝 "aiready" means "before now" or before a particular time. ، رُستخدم "already" بمعنى "بالفعل / مسبقًا " التكوين المالماليات a) We use it at the end of the sentence. الجملة. Subject الفاعل + p.p. + الفاعل + aiready ex.: - She's played in two concerts already. b) We use it before the main verb : با تستخدم قبل الفعل الأساسى أي تأتي بين (have / has) والـ (P.P.) التصريف الثالث للفعل. Subject Jewil + have + aiready + p.p. ex.: - She has already written a book of stories.

Stop here on Language (Answered & Explained)

َّ فَذَا الْجَزَءَ نَقَدَمَ لِلْطَالِبِ تَدَرِيبِ عَلَى القَاعَدَةَ اللَّغُويَةَ مَجَابِ عَنَهُ وَمَصْحُوبِ بِشَرَحَ أَسَبَابِ اخْتَيَار الْبَالِةُ الصَّدِيدَةُ

• Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- 1. Youssef has finished his homework.
 - a. ever
- b. already
- c. yet
- d. ago

- 2. Sama tidied her room yet.
 - a. hasn't
- b. has
- c. have
- d. haven't
- 3. Hamza has already Egypt and started his journey.
 - a. leave
- b. left
- c. leaves
- d. leaving

. Letarted wor	k an hour ago, bւ	ut I haven't finished
4.136	b. vet	Cayor

a. never

. ever

d. ago

5. Huda has done housework

a. ago

b. never

c. yet

d. already

No.		الإجابة والتوضيح Answer + Explanation
1	b	لأن already تأتي قبل الفعل الأساسي في الجملة المثبتة وبعد (have / has).
2	a	لأن في الجملة yet وتأتي في الجملة المنفية في زمن المضارع التام وفاعل الجملة اسم مفرد.
3	b	لأن الجملة في زمن المضارع التام الذي يتكون من (.has + p.p.).
4	b	لأن yet تأتى في الجملة المنفية في زمن المضارع التام.
5	d	لأن already تأتي أيضًا في نهاية الجملة المثبتة في زمن المضارع التام.

on Language

. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

تدريبات من كتاب الطالب والتدريبات

SB and WB Exercises	واعدريبان
1. 📆 He's already thre	ee languages.
Les alleady	. a loarns

a. learn

b. learned

c. learns

d. learning

2. WB They haven't visited the Pyramids

c. never

d. already

a. yet 3. SB Have you to the new restaurant yet?

b. ever

d. are

b. been

a, be 4. WB I have done my homework

d. since

a. ever

a. ate

b. for

c. already

d. eaten

5. 3 We've already our lunch. b. eats

c. eating

تدريبات كتاب المعاصر

○ El-Moasser Exercises

6. Have you finished your homework ?

d. never

b. yet

7. A: Have you finished your homework?

B: Yes, I have finished it

d. never

a. yet

b. just

c. already

		breakfast yet b. has	t. c. having	d. had
		g to watch the film. b. yet	I have seen it c. never	d. ever
	,	three Arabic lesso b. has had	ons already. c. have had	d. is having
-	. Complete the s	entences with the c	orrect form of the	word(s) in brackets
A	SB and WB Exerc			ريبات من كتاب الطال
	1. 😘 Haytham	has created an app	(yet).	
2. WB I have already (came) to school.				
		finished my homew		<i>ı</i>).
		e (yet) seen Ca		
	El-Moasser Exer	cises		لازيبات كتاب المعاصر
	5. Nada has	(won already) a g	old medal.	
	6. I haven't done	my project(then).	
	7(Have)	Amal met her new to	eacher yet ?	
	8 (Has) th	ey visited the Egypt	ian Museum yet ?	
	9. She hasn't	(have) her break	fast yet.	

Self Assessment Activity



قيم نفسك.

- ◄ ليتعرف الطالب على مدى اتقانه لأهداف الوحدة.
- Review في حالة عدم إجتيازه يتم الانتقال إلى صفحة لمراجعة الوحدة مرة اخري.

kills Corner



كيفية التعامل مع معارات (القراءة - الكتابة - التحدث) في الورقة الامتحانية لكل درس على _{حده.}

تنويه ﴿ للمزيد من الشرح والتدريبات على مهارات (القراءة - الكتابة - التحدث) Part 2 في ملحق (Master Your Term)



Reading Corner

قم بقراءة Reading on lesson 4 SB page 50 من كتاب المعاصر صفحة ٢٦٨ و ٢٦٩ ثم قم بالتحرب علي إجابة بعض أسئلة قطعة الفهم طبقاً لمواصفات الورقة الامتحانية.

Answer the following questions:

- استخراج المعلومات Extracting information -
- How many competitors were there in the handball tournament in Egypt?
 - There were over 600 competitors from 32 countries.
- مهارة التفكير النقدي Critical thinking skill -
- 2. Why do you think the contest in Egypt has been fantastic?
- إعطاء الفكرة الرئيسية Giving the main idea
- 3. What is the main idea of the passage?

riting Corner

محارة الكتابة

A. Read the sentences

جمل نساعدك على كتابة فقرة إنشائية / رنسالة بريد إلكتروني

- Aya has always loved writing stories and poems.
 - آية خانت دائمًا بدب كتابة القصص والقصائد الشعرية.
- When she was six, she wrote a book of stories.
 - عبد ما كانت في السادسة من عمرها كتبت كتاب قصص.
- ٣ مارت بجائره لقصيدة كنيتها She won a prize for a poem she wrote.
- ع إنها دفا تريد أن تكون مبدعة She really likes to be creative.
- Her dream is to create an app to help children learn. د دنمها هو آن نیتگر نظییق لیساعد فی تعلیم الأطفال.

B. Building sentences

Read and complete:

found - yet - has - already - since - fantastic

- 1. She hasn't finished her book
- 2. They have ____ won the match.
- 3. He already bought a new car,
- 4. Aya wrote a ____ poem.
- 5. The boys haven't their lost bags.

مد دراسة القواعد والمفردات الغوية الخاصة بالدرسين ها التربي على بناء الجملة

C. Practise by yourself

بعلى كتابة فقرة إنشائية | رسالة بريد إلكتروني

- Write a paragraph of about 110 words on :

"Things you have done in your life"

Speaking Corner

معارة التحدث

Asking and answering questions about sports tournaments:

توجيه أسئلة والرد عليها عن المسابقات الرياضية :

Questions



- 1. What was the last sports tournament you watched in a stadium or on TV? ا. ماذا كانت أحدث مسابقة أو مناسبة رياضية قمت بمشاهدتها في الإستاد أو على التلفاز ؟
- 2. Who won?

۲. من فاز ؟

3. Did you enjoy it? Why? ۶ لها تحتمتسا له ۳

Answers



- I watched the Olympic Games in Tokyo on TV.
 - لقد قمت بمشاهدة دورة الألعاب الأوليمبية في طوكيو على التلفاز.
- The USA won 39 gold medals in these Olympic Games.
- لقد فازت الولايات المتحدة بعدد ٣٩ ميدالية ذهبية في هذه الدورة.
- Yes, it was exciting when there were competitors from Egypt. - نعم. لقد كانت مثيرة عندما كان هناك

متنافسين من مصر.

General Exercises



LESSONS 3 & 4

Understand

Apply

· Create

	the following dialogue :
Ashraf and	Mustafa are talking about their jobs in the future.

Asimon	Hello, Musta	fa. How are you	7		
Ashrai	: Hello, Mustafa. How are you ? : Hello, Ashraf. Fine, thanks.				
Mustara	: What would you like to be in the future ?				
Ashraf	; what would	you like to be in	the future ?		
	; (1)				
	; (2)				
Mustafa	: Because I lik	e building new l	nouses and road	ls.	
Ashraf	: (3)	?			
Mustafa	: I need to joi	n the Faculty of I	Engineering. Wh	nat about you?	
Ashraf	: (4)				
Mustafa	: A chemist	is a useful jo صيدل	b. I wish you go	od luck.	
	: (5)				
Choose	the correct	answer from a,	b, cora:		
1. Mr Ali	works	a volunteer in a	charity in his fre	e time. He is	
a help	ful man.				
a. for		b. as	c. of	d. on	
2. The fe	estival was gre	eat. Really, you ar	e excellent		
	gars	b. organisers	c. robbers	d. engineers	
3. He is	an intelligent	person. He	. a good app.		
a. thre	ew	b. stole	c. invited	d. created	
		a tour of Cairo'			
	ne		c. taken	d. driven	
5. We at	1-1 - 1 -	ideas He Wi	ill be a very good	d writer.	
a. ho	ring	b. creative	c. selfish	d. violent	
6. Mu		- Gul scient	tist in the future		
a. dre	is to be a	b. competition	c. volunteer	d. concert	
7 Th	am	b. competition	of the word		
· ine v	vord "contest"	is the synonym	c worker	d. competition	
d. CO	mposition	b. player	C. World		

1				
	8. 😘 She	been to another c	ountry yet.	
	a. hasn't	b. has	c. haven't	d. have
	9. You can dr	ive your car. I have	mended it.	
	a. never	b. since	c. already	d. yet
	10. Shahd	her room alone.		
	a. has alrea		b. has tidied	already
		ready tidied	d. hasn't tidie	
3	Complete th	e sentences with th		,
	brackets:	ie semences with th	e correct form (or the word(s) in
	1. Hamza	(not do) his homew	ork vet	
		learn) English yet ?	on year	
	3. Omar	(already arrive) at the	e class	
	4. We(has) already watched t	he film	
4	Parameter and the second	e the sentences with		
•				
	S	spectators - holds - ach	nievement - be - d	lean
	Egypt has	already won the Africa	Cup of Nations	seven times.
	inat is a fanta	ostic (1)	2023, the contest	st will (2)
	in ivory Coast	, who have already be	en winners twice	before
	ine games w	ill be in six different sta	adiums. The bigg	est stadium
	(3)	about 60,000 (4)		
5	Write an emai	l of about (110) words	to your friend M	ona who lives in
•	Canada abou	t the importance of he	lping other peop	العندف نفاية الكتاب : 9
	Your name is R	eham and your email ac	dress is rehamma	adi@elmoasser.com
	Your friend's er	mail address is monasal	eh@gmail.com.	.gai@eimousseii
	***************************************			***************************************
	***************************************			***************************************

	***************************************			***************************************
	***************************************			***************************************

58 6

58 pages 51 & 52 WB pages 106 & 107



Vocabulary

Key Vocabulary

Key (n)	منحة دراسية	fact file (n)	ملف حقائق
scholarship (n)	بولندی (الجنسیة)	fair (n)	معرض
polish (adj) respond (ed) (v), (n)			الإدارة الوطنية للملاحة الجر
		Society for Science	
culture (n)		and Math school (ST)	FM)

the Science, Technology, Engineering and Math school (STEM)

مدرسة العلوم والتكنولوجيا والهندسة والرياضيات

تنويه 🔹 Key Vocabulary مى المفردات الأكثر أهمية المطلوب من الطالب إتقانها.

■ Master your Vocabulary يقضى على جميع مشاكل حفظ المفردات (ملحق Master).

■ Glossary لحصيلة أكبر (للمزيد) من المفردات اللغوية نهاية الكتاب.

Lesson (5)	SB page 51 WB page 100	score (d) (v) , (n)	يسجل (هدفًا) - نتيجة
perform (ed) (v)	یودی (عرض)	Score (a) (1777	اخبار
	يشارك - يتقاسم	news (n)	
share (d) (v)	musician (n)		موسيقار / عازف
broken (adj)	منكسر	musician (1.)	
repair (ed) (v), (n)	يصلح/إصلاح		

Lesson (6) SB page 52 WB page 10	international (adj)	دولی
teenager (n)	incoring (n)	الصندسة
(Olumbia University (D)		سباح
1 6 - 301 1010	preparatory school	مدرسة إعدادية
NO Olympics (n)		
الرابا الرابا المرابع	. " (d) (v)	يۇمن - يصدق
connect (ed) (v) يصل - يربط	believe (d) (v)	

Conjuga	tion of Ir	regular Verbs	مريف الأفعال غير المنتظمة
	الوضارع 11	الماضي Past	P.P. غالثا الثالث
mean	یعنی / یقصد	meant	meant
tell	يخبر	told	told
hear	تسمع	heard	heard
grow	ينمو	grew	grown

هذه التعريفات مجمعة من كتاب الطالب وكتاب التدريبات وقاموس التعريفات (glossary) في نهاية كتاب التدريبات.



Study th	nese definitions	درس مذه التعريفات
winner	another word for champion	
competitor	a player in a tournament	فالز
incredible	another word for fantastic	متنافس
spectators	the people who watch sports at a stadium	رائع ا لا يصدق
workers	the group of people who work somewhere	. 0.3
	ow somewhere	عاملون

Collo	cations				
pass	an exam	يجتاز الامتحان			متلازمات لفظية
learn	a new skill	يتعلم مهارة جديدة	play	computer ga	ames غب ألعاب الحاسوب
watch	TV	يشاهد التلفاز	follow	their dreams	NATE OF THE PARTY
	dressed	يرتدى الملابس	write	music	وله موسيقي
get	home an award	يصل للمنزل	es .	dinner	تناول وجبة العشاء
8		يحصل على جائزة	eat	lunch	بتناول وجبة الغداء
	a scholarship اسیة) پخصل علی منحة در		breakfast	بتناول وجبة الإفطار
have	a baby	تنجب مولود	win	an award	^{يفوز} بجائزة (رسمية)

II Listening and Reading

istening

on Lesson 5 SB page 51

Malak : Hi Fareeda!

Fareeda: Hi Malak, guess what? I just got the results of my music exam!

Malak : Yes ? How did you do ?!

Farceda: I passed!

Malak : Of course you did! Well done! Great job!

But also, I got the highest score in the class!

: Wow, you did really well - what an amazing achievement! Malak

Fareeda: I can't believe it, I was so nervous doing the exam.

Malak : I knew you would do well. I'm really happy for you! You worked

really hard.

Fareeda: Thanks Malak.

· on Lesson 5 WB page 106

Mother: You look happy, Nader.

2. Nader: I am! I've won a short story competition!(1)

3. Mother: Well done (2)! Was that a competition at your school?

4. Nader : No, it was a short story competition for everyone.

5. Mother: For everyone ? What an amazing achievement (3). Didn't you

win the school competition last year?

6. Nader: Yes, I came second in the class, so I worked

harder this year!

7. Mother: I knew you would do well (5). You worked

really hard.

8. Nader: Thanks. I'll get the award (6) next week.

Mother: I'm really happy for you! I'll come and

watch!

Check Vocabulary

- vabulai y		u to all
مسابقة كتابة قصة قصيرة (أ	احسنت صنعًا (2)	يا له من إنجاز رائع (3)
مصلت مل المركز الثاني (4)	100 to 1. (1512 62A)	يحصل على الجائزة (6)



on Lesson 5 WB page 106

New message

Hi!

I've got some good news. I've won an award! As you know, my family help every week at a hospital for children. We play games with the children and read them stories. The nurses at the hospital decided to give my family an award for our work. We're getting it next week! Can you come and watch us get it?



on Lesson 6 WB page 107

Fatma Ali El-Banna was born in Alexandria in 2003. As a child, she loved learning about science and wanted to be a great scientist. After she finished Preparatory School, she started at the Science, Technology, Engineering and Maths School (STEM)(1) in Alexandria.

She then learnt more and more about science as well as how to look after the environment and Egypt's culture(2). When she was at school, she came first in Egypt in the NASA International Space Apps Challenge(3), a problem solving competition for scientists around the world.

Later, she worked on a school project. She found a natural way (4) for villages to clean dirty water and to recycle used water. The recycled water is used to help plants to grow, and the project can also help to stop water pollution. She sent her project to the Society for Science⁽⁵⁾ in the USA. In 2021, her project won fourth place in another

international competition for science and engineering. Now, Fatma wants to do more things to help science.

Check Vocabulary

ريت علمال مناسبة والرياضات (1)		
مدرسة العلوم والتكنولوجيا والهندسة والرياضيات(1)	ثقافة (2)	
مسابقة تحدى تطبيقات الفضاء من وكالة ناسا (3)	/ - · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	
	طريقة طبيعية (4)	جمعية العلوم (5)

, on Lesson 6 SB page 52

A biography about Nada Zaher

- 1. Nada Zaher was born in Alexandria, Egypt.
- 2. As a child, she played a lot of tennis.
- 3. When she was a teenager⁽¹⁾, she found out that she had a sports scholarship⁽²⁾ to go to Columbia University in the USA.



- 4. Then she went to the USA to study and play tennis.
- 5. After university⁽³⁾, she returned to Egypt and decided to help more international athletes⁽⁴⁾ to study in other countries.
- 6. So, the started a company⁽⁵⁾ to connect⁽⁶⁾ athletes with universities in the USA and helped them to find scholarships.
- 7. Now she helps students from Egypt and other countries to follow⁽⁷⁾ their dreams⁽⁸⁾.

Check Vocabulary

احلام (8) يتبع (7) توصل / تربط (6) شركة (5) رياضيون دوليون (4) جامعة (3) منحة رياضية (2) مرامق ال



on Lesson 7 SB page 53

Fares: Guess what? (1) I have good news!

Mazin: What is it?

Fares: I have got a scholarship to a university in Canada!

Mazin: Well done! That's incredible(2).

Fares: Yes, I can't believe it. I'm going to play

tennis and study hard.

Mazin: I'm really happy for you. You will play at an important

tournament(3) soon!

Check Vocabulary

دورى مسابقة رياضية (3) هذا لا يصدق (2) خمن ماذا ؟ [ا

1 at the age of = aged / in the age of

(... Jac , ,

ex.: - My uncle, Saad, died at the age of 58 / aged 58.

in the age تستخدم بمعنی (فی عصر).

ex.: - In the stone age, people's tools were made of stone.

good at / good for / good to

* (دید فی) cur (دید فی):

ex.:- Hani is good at sport.

* good for (امفید) :

ex.: - Milk is good for health.

* good to (عطوف على) : اعطوف على) : ex.: - You should be good to the orphans.

3 connect with / connect to

* connect with

يط بـ / يرتبط بـ

ex.: - She started a company to connect athletes with universities in the USA.

* connect to

وصل ... بـ (الكهرباء / الانترنت ...)

ex.:- The computer is not connected to the internet.

4 born in / born into

* (be) born in

ولا في (سنه - بلد)

ex.: - Fady was born in (1998 / Alexandria).

* (be) born into + (வ்பிட)

ولا في (عائلة)

ex .: - Rahma was born into a rich family.

5 business – businesses

business (n)

نجارة / عمل (كلمة لا تعد)

ex.:- She is busy doing her own business.

* businesses (n)

^{للعمال} التجارية / المشروعات أو المؤسسات التجارية

المتعاد .: - I think small businesses can help with the country's economy.

6 pass - succeed

* pass (n) ex.: - He passed his final exams.

يجتاز / ينجح

- * succeed in + noun / (inf. + ing)
 - ex.: He succeeded in his final exams.
 - He succeeded in getting a place in a special school.

تعبیرات وحروف جر هامة Prepositions & Expressions & Prepositions

HARDEN TOTAL PARTY OF THE PARTY			
get 100% äi	حصل على مئة بالم	get the result of	يحصل على نتيجة
have a place at a top unive	rsity	(be) surprised by	مندهش بـ
	حصل على مكان فر	respond to	يستجيب ل
feel happy for	يشعر بالسعادة لـ .	(have) a scholarship	
return to	يعود إلى	ā ر	يحصل على منحة درا <mark>سي</mark>
do well	یؤدی جیدًا	connect with	یربط / یو ص ل بـ
Well done! = Great job!	أحسنت صنعًا !	happy for	سعيد من أجل
انی فی come second in	حصل على المركز الث	a problem solving co	mpetition for
a hospital for children	مستشفى للأطفال		مسابقة حل مشكلة لـ
from the age of 7	من عمر ۷ سنوات	work on a school pro	ject
from the earliest until now			یقوم بانجاز مشروع مد
as well as	بالإضافة إلى	win fourth place	يفوز بالمركز الرابع

exercise on Vocabulary

- Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:
- Key vocabulary
 - 1. Jakub is from Poland. He is
 - b. Polish a. English
- c. French
- d. British
- 2. I have got a to a University of Cambridge in the UK.

- a, training
- b. tournament
- c. scholarship
- d. speech

15. She in her final exams.

a. passed

b. succeeded

c. crossed

d. told

16. Most successful people were born poor families.

a.in

b. on

c. into

d. onto

Synonyms and Antonyms		تضادات	مترادفات وم	
Wor	الكلمة d	المرادف Synonym	Antonyr	الوضاد
respond	يرد / يستجيب	reply	ignore	يتجاهل
fac:	حقيقة / واقع	truth	imagination	خيال
repa'r	يُصلح	mend / fix	spoil / break	

Prefixes & Suffixes

مقاطع بادئة وناهية

Prefix/Suffix	
- ish	
- al	
- ship	

الوظيفة Function تحول البلد إلى الجنسية أو اللغة تحول الكلمة لصفة تکون اسم

مثار Example Polish بولندي international دولی scholarship منحة دراسية hardship

on Vocabulary Study

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

Synonym and antonyms

 $^{1.}$ "Fix" is the synonym of the word "

a. prepare

b. fair

c. repair

d. refer

2." " is the opposite of "ignore".

a. Request

b Rewrite

c. Respond

d. Redial

3. The suffix (-ish) in the word "Polish" refers to the

a.job

b. nationality c. hobby

d. sport

4. The suffix

gives a noun of the word "hard".

a. - ment

b. - ship

c. - tion

d. - est

Skills Corner



يِهْية التَّعامَل مَعَ مَعَارَاتُ (القَراعَةَ - الكتابة - التحدثُ) في الورقة الامتحانية لكل درس على حده. ا للمزيد من الشرح والتدريبات على مهارات (القراءة - الكتابة - التحدث) Part 2 في ملحق (Master Your Term)

eading Corner

هُو بِقُراءَةُ Reading on lesson 6 SB page 52 من كتاب المعاصر صفحة ٢٨٧ ثم مُم بالتدرب ع<mark>لى إدابة بعض أسئلة قطعة الفهم</mark> طبقاً لمواصفات الورقة الامتحانية.

A. Answer the following questions:

- Critical thinking skill مهارة التفكير النقدى
- 1. Why do you think Nada Zaher started a company?
 - To help more international athletes by connecting them with universities in the USA and helping them to find scholarships.
- Extracting information استخراج المعلومات
- 2. Where is Nada from?

B. Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

Guessing the meaning of vocabulary in context

تُحْمِينَ مِعنى مِفرده لغوية في النص

3. The word "returned" in the passage means

a. came back

b. pretended

c. connected

d. swept

Writing Corner

معارة الكتابة

A. Read the sentences

جمل تساعدك على كتابة فقرة إنشالية / رسالة بريد **إلكتروني**

1. Fatma Ali El-Banna was born in Alexandria in 2003.

اً ولدت فاطمة على البنا في مدينة الإسكندرية في عام ٢٠٠٣.

2. When she was a child, she loved learning about science.

^{).} عندما كانت طفلة _. كانت تحب تعلم العلوم.

She wanted to be a great scientist.

🥕 أرادت أن تصبح عالمة عظيمة.

4. After she finished preparatory school, she started at the Science, Technology, Engineering and Math school in Alexandria. . ^{٤. بعد} إنتمائها من الدراسة في المرحلة الإعدادية بدأت الدراسة بمدرسة العلوم والتكنولوجيا

^{والهند}سة والرياضيات في مدينة الإسكندرية.

5. She came first in Egypt in the NASA International Space Apps Challenge. ^{0. حص}لت على المركز الأول في مصر في مسابقة "تحدى تطبيقات الفضاء" الدولية من وكالة ناسا.

6. She found a natural way for villages to clean dirty water.

^{1. لقَّد} وجدت طريقة طبيعية للقرى لتنظيف المياه الغير نظيفة.

role	models	
	role	role models

بعد دراسة القواعد والمفردات اللغوية الخاصة بالدرسين

قم بالتدريب على بناء الجملة

B. Building sentences

• Read and complete:

already - did - yet - scholarship - for - repaired

- 1. I've the chair that was broken.
- 2. Pe has got a to a university in Italy.
- 3. The boy has watered the plants.
- 4. They haven't finished their homework
- 5. She well in the final exam.

C. Practise by yourself

تدرب على كتابة فقرة إنشائية / رسالة بريد إلكتروني

- Write a paragraph of about 110 words on :

"A biography about Fatma El-Banna"

Speaking Corner

معارة التحدث

Responding to good news:

الرد على الأخبار الجيدة :

Stimuli

- 0
- 1. The football team won 2 0!
 - ا. لقد فاز فريق كرة القدم (٢ صفر) !
- ^{2.}He got 100% in his exam!
- ٢. لقد حصل على ١٠٠ بالمئة في الامتحان !
- ^{3.} Merna is getting married ! ۳. میرنا سوف تتزوج !
- ^{4.} Hala has a place at a top university.
 - 3. لقد حصلت هالة على مكان في جامعة مرموقة.
- 5. ا've repaired the broken chair. ٥. لقد قمت بإصلاح الكرسي المكسور.

Responses



- They did really well.
 - لقد قاموا بأداء جيد حقًا.
- What an amazing achievement.
 - ياله م**ن انجاز** رائع.
- I'm really happy for her.
 - أنا حقًا سعيد لأجلها.
- I knew she would do well. She worked really hard.
 - لقد كنت أعلم أنها ستؤدى بشكل جيد. لقد عملت باجتهاد حقًا.
- Great job. Well done!
 - عولًا جيدًا . أحسنت !

Exercises



LESSONS 5 & 6

· Understand

Create

	Complete	ha fallowing 18 1				
	An interview	Complete the following dialogue :				
	space engin	An interviewer محارر is making an interview with an Egyptian space engineer.				
		: Welcome, Samar. Can	you tell us abou	stranous L. E. a		
	Samar	; (1)	you tell us abou	it your Job ?		
	Interviewer	: When did you want to	be a space enc	inoor ?		
	Samar	; (2)	se a space eng	lineel ;		
	Interviewer	: A young child ! That's	great (3)			
	Samar	: I studied space engine	ering in Cairo I	Iniversity		
	Interviewer	: (4)	?	inversity.		
	Samar	: Yes, I won a space tech		ition in the USA		
	Interviewer	: Were there any other	competitors from	n Equat in that		
		competition?	P catery from	ii Egypt in that		
	Samar	: (5)				
	CI					
2		correct answer from a				
-		an amazing achievement	1			
	a. Why	b. What	c. Where	d. Who		
•	2. M The Po	lish musician Frederic Cl	nopin piar	no music.		
	a. passed	b. wrote	c. won	d. got		
i		a contest in space tec	hnology.			
	a. created	b. took	c. won	d. learned		
•		tions! You havey	our exam.			
	a. passed	b. failed	c. lost	d. succeeded		
•	5. Basel likes i	music very much. He dre	eams ofin	a big concert.		

b. gaining

c. making

d. having

a. performing

1	_{6. Soha} plays a when she gr	n musical instrument. Sho	e wants to be a f	famous				
	a. space scie		b. musician					
	c. nurse							
		is a playor in a t	d. business per	son				
		is a player in a tourn						
	a. competito		c. astronaut	d. technician				
		seen Cairo by night.						
	a, since	b. ever	c. already	d. yet				
	9. Why are you so late? - You done the task yet.							
	a. have	b. haven't	c. has	d. hasn't				
•	0. 🔢 I've eaten breakfast.							
	a. already	b. ever	c. yet	d. for				
3	Complete the sentences with these words:							
		decided – won – has	– play – children					
	Hi!							
l've got some good news. I have (1)								
4	WB Write a	short biography of abo	ut (110) words o	n : مجاب عنه في نهاية الكتاب				
	the state of the s	"A famous p						
	Contraction of the Contraction o			THE PLAN PRINCE AND ADDRESS OF THE PARTY AND A				
	The same of the sa	Stronger of the	San San San Filmer	0.0000000000000000000000000000000000000				
		***************************************	ALTOHOLO - 111 - 111 - 114 - 11					

Self Assessment Activity

التقييم الذاتى

	قم بمراجعة الوحدة مرة أخرى ذ				
At the end of this unit, I will be able t	هذه الوحدة، سأكون قادرًا على أن				
Learn important vocabulary	aola aucel citada oleji				
business person company					
campaigner	goals				
space science	astronaut				
manager	creative				
He has already bought the ca					
Soha didn't go to the park ye	esterday.				
Talk about jobs, sports tourna	ment and responding to				
الرد على اللَّذبار السارة.	اتحدث عن الوظائف والمسابقات الرياضية و				
A: How long have you had the	hat job ?				
B: For five years / Since 2017					
B. For five years / since 201/					
A: What's your favourite spo	rts star ?				



unit

WB page 108

SB page 53

A: What does your brother do? B: He is a / an

Speaking

1. Discussing jobs

B: He started his job in / on

2. Talking about sports

tournaments

tournament you watched A: What was the last sports

in a stadium or on TV?

3. Responding to good news:

A:I have passed the exam.

B: Well done.

campaigner அம்ம் - நம் 1. The present perfect tense with already & yet:

Language

"already"

? A : When did he start his job أ- بعمنى (بالفعل) تستخدم للتعبير عن حدث وقع وأكتمل وثاتى بين

have/has والتصريف الثالث أو في نهاية الجملة

ex.:- He has already watched the film.

science project علمي ex.:.- He has watched the film already.

- بعمني (حتى الآن) تأتي في نهاية الجملة المنفية والاستفهامية ﴿ يِلْقَي خَطَابَاتَ speeches وأَنْ

ex.:-I haven't had my lunch yet.

روس،:- Have you finished your work yet ? نكنولوچيا الفضاء

2. The past simple tense:

Subject Jelai +

التصريف الثانب للفعل

eلانتخر تطبيق بينكر تطبيق بينكر تطبيق

Exp ex .: - Did you park your car

Vocabulary

computer programmer

space scientist

champion company

the Middle East manager

"yet" الشرق الأوسط

space technology

design

dad يتسلم الجائزة receive the award

dació create an app equipment

organisers creative bubble

فقاعة (طبية

منح دراسية scholarships

Writing Skill

A Paragraph / An email on

Som	one's job / A creative person / A sports tournament / The	n \4/
Men	Handball Championship in Egypt.	: world



Brainstorming

يموعة أسنلة لاستثارة أفكار لكتابة الفقرة الإنشائية / رسائل البريد الإلكتروني

- What's your favourite sport?
- What skills do you need for this job?
- What does a creative person do?
- What do the doctors do to help Egypt achieve this big dream?



Vocabulary

مفردات لغوية مساعدة

- creative - champion - company - equipment - goals - computer programmer - create an app - science project - bubble



Expressions & Structures

لليرات وتراكيب مساعدة

 He has travelled to lots of 	- He wanted to be a / an
interesting places.	- His dream is to
- I'd like to be a	- He is interested in



Paragraph / Email

صَّلَهُ الْفَقَرة الإنشائية / رسالة بريد إلكتروني

Write a paragraph of about 110 words on :
"Someone's job"
the contract of the contract o

Exam Language Bank

أهَ مَ النقاط (موضَعَ إِحْتَبَار) فَى كُل وحدةً والتَّى تَسْتَطِيعُ مِنْ خَلَالَهَا التَّعَامِلُ مَعْ تَحْرِيبَاتَ الوحدةَ و كُلَّ التَّحْرِيبَاتَ الْخَاصَةَ بِالْمُنْهَةِ.



16 Vocabulary

مفردات لغوية هامة قد تكون موضع اختبار :

	St., Ib.	astronaut	رائد فضاء
sports champion	بصل رياضي	astronaut	- 1-5
10-50 -	ناشط - مناضل	education	تعليم
campaigner			معدات
team	فریق	equipment	
	شكة	disabled people	ذوى اللحتياجات الخاصة
company		-	تحديات
The Middle East	الشرق الأوسط	challenges	
	تكنواوديا الفضاء	creative person	شخص مبدع
ace technology	The same of the sa		فقاعة (طبية)
ave speeches	يُلقى خطابات	bubble	, = ,

💪 Language

- 1. There were (1) 600 teams in the contest.
- 2. Have you written the letter yet(2)?
- She has already⁽³⁾ cooked the meal.
- 4. Mum has swept the floor already (4).
- 5. I have visited (5) the Egyptian museum.
- 6. Did (6) you help (7) your friend yesterday?

فواعد لغوية هامة قد تكون موضع اختبار :

Check Language

- الفعل يكون (be) في زمن الماضي البسيط (1)
- تُستَخدم yet مع الجملة الاستفهامية في زمن (2) المضارع التام
- تستخدم already مع الجملة المثبتة في زمن (3) المضارع التام
- يمكن أن توضع already في أخر الجملة (4) المثبتة في زمن المضارع التام
- جملة مثبتة في زمن المضارع التام ضيعة السؤال بـ هل في زمن الماضي البسيط
- عيضه الشوال بـ هل في زمن الماض البسيط (6)
 يكون الفعل في المصدر عند السؤال بـ did (7)

3. Speaking

وظائف لغوية هامة قد تكون موضع اختبار:

Talking about jobs and sports tournaments.

Questions



Answers



- 1. Why would you like to be a/an ...? As I like
- 2. When did you start it?
- 3. Who won the final match in the contest?

Allsweis

- years ago.

...... team won the match.

General Exercises

on unit

· Understand

Apply

Create



Complete the following dialogue:

Salwa is telling her cousin that she got a scholarship.

Salwa : How are you, Maha?

Maha : Fine, and you?

Salwa: I'm okay. I have good news.

Maha : (1) ?

Salwa : (2)

Maha : A scholarship! Well done! Great news!

Maha : (4)?

Salwa: There was an international competition and I won it.

Maha : Have you told your parents?



Read the following passage then answer the questions:

My friend Aya has always loved writing stories and poems. When she was six, she won a prize for a poem she wrote. She has already written a book of stories. Now, she's writing her second book, but she hasn't finished **it** yet. She really likes to be creative. She has played the guitar for three years now. She's played in two concerts already. She felt very nervous but she was amazing!

Aya would like to volunteer to teach writing and music to children one day. Her other dream is to create an app to help children learn. She hasn't been to another country yet, but there are lots she wants to visit!

Maybe we can go travelling together.

a. Answer the following questions:

1. Do you think Aya is interested in Technology? Why / Why not?

2. Infer how many hobbies does Aya have ? Mention two.						
	3. Explain how important voluntary work is for your city / village. Mention two points.					
	b. Choose the co	orrect answer fror	na,b,cord:	**************************************		
		e is about				
	a. Aya		c. travel	d. friends		
			the best summary	to the last		
	paragraph		and Destrounniary	to the last		
	a. Aya's drea		b. Aya's childhoo	nd		
	c. Jobs	u1115	d. Travel	, u		
		nod propoup "i*" ro				
		ned pronoun "it" re		d ann		
	a. Story	D. HISL DOOK	c. second book	а. арр		
3	Choose the cor	rrect answer from	a, b, c or d:			
•	1. Nada wants to	be a computer	in the future.			
		Market Company of the	c. application	d. programmer		
•		in Servi	the next match, b			
	refuses.					
	a. on	b. in	c. at	d. about		
•	3. To be successfo	ul, you need to wor	k hard and have sor	ne special		
	d. DINS	b. pins	c. skills	d. skulls		
	4. WB A/ An	is someone who	works with maths.			
	a. mathematic	ian	b. engineer			
	C. artist		d. volunteer			
	Someone v	who works with scie	ence is called a / an	*************		
	operator		b. business perso	n		
0	C. scientist		d. employer			
	The word "	staff" gives the sam	ne meaning as			
0	a. spectators 7. There is	b. puzzles	c. workers	d. hotels		
	a. spectators	been in footb	oall matches because	e of coronavirus.		
	Pecialors	b. stadiums	c. balls	d. players		

o. iviaya	to trav	el abroad since	she was a studen	it.
			c, is deciding	d. has decad
9.1				
	lready read	d	b, already read	have
c. alread	y have read	1	d, have read alr	eady
10. Have the	y watered	the plants	7	
a. since		ever	c. for	d. yet
4 Complete	e the sent	ences with th	e correct form o	f the word(s) i
brackets				
1. Samia	(not f	ix) her mobile y	yet.	
2. The boy	(alr	eady buy) vege	etables from the n	narket alone.
3. (H	lave) the te	eacher asked yo	ou to make a repo	rt yet ?
4. She has	done her n	nath homewor	k (yet).	10000
5 WB Comp	lete the s	entences with	these words:	
A Sections	for -	after - started -	culture - scientist	
Fatma A	li El-Banna	was born in Ale	exandria in 2003. A	s a child, she
			nted to be a great (
			reparatory school,	
			ing and Maths Sch	
		e and more aboring and	out science as well	as how to lour
(3)	the env	monment and	cgypt's (4)	
6 Write a pa	ragraph o	of about 110 v	vords on :	SECTION AND DESCRIPTION OF THE PERSON OF THE
1	"A biogra	phy about a pe	erson you admire"	

stop here!

the second secon	В
 I am good at computers so She won an award for writing He has finished writing It was a real challenge to climb a mountain, An app is 	a. one book already. b. software you can use on your computer or phone. c. I want to be a campaigner. d. When she was a child. e. I want to be a computer programmer f. but we succeeded!
2. "Look! I've finished my painti 3. Someone who works with sci 4. Aya hasn't been to another co Use your brain, think s	ience is an artist . (ountry already . (
hoose at	mah cord:
the correct answer from	ma, b, cora:
a. about b. for	top marks last week. c. with d. on
a. staff b. Olympics A.A/An is written by a per	top marks last week. c. with d. on ardworking.
a. about b. for The on that plane are had a staff b. Olympics A/An is written by a per	top marks last week. c. with d. on ardworking. c. c. crew d. audience rson about another person. b. biography d. championship

What's wrong?

SB pages 54 : 63 WB pages 109 : 115



Objectives

· Reading:

An online problem page; a blog about a problem; a news article about mindfulness; a case study about a problem

· Writing:

A paragraph about ways to relax; an email suggesting how to help a friend; a poster helping people with mental health issues

· Listening:

A conversation about teenage problems; a discussion about mindfulness; people talking about and responding to problems

· Speaking:

Discussing teenage worries; showing that you are listening; suggesting solutions to problems

· Language:

had to / didn't have to, was / wasn't able to, couldn't couldn't

· Life skills:

Empathy

• العلامة 🛂 تسبق أسئلة كتاب الطالب

• العلامة 💯 تسبق أسئلة كتاب التحريبات



* للمتابعة اليومية و الابحاث في Master your term * قاموس المعاصر اللغوى



1 & 2 s8 pages 54: 57 WB pages 109 & 110



Vocabulary

Vey Vocabulary

teenager = teen (I	مراهق (۱	social life (n)	الحياة اللجتماعية
social media (n)	وسائل التواصل الاجتماعي	anxious (adj)	قلق - متوتر
achievements (n)	إنجازات	embarrassed (adj)	محرج
cyberbullying (n)	التنمر الالكتروني	upset (adj)	متضايق - منزعج
abilities (n)	قدرات	ندة (support (ed) (v) , (n	يدعم - يساند - دعم / مسا
billion (n)	بليون (ألف مليون)	secret (n)	سر
appearance (n)	المظهر الخارجي	lonely (adj)	منعزل - وحيد

• Key Vocabulary هي المفردات الأكثر أهمية المطلوب من الطالب إتقانها.

■ Master your Vocabulary يقضى على جميع مشاكل حفظ المفردات (ملحق Master).

■ Glossary لحصيلة أكبر (للمزيد) من المفردات اللغوية نهاية الكتاب.

The second second	-	The state of
esson (-	100

SB pages 54 & 55 WB page 109

height (n)	طول القامة	music club (n)	نادى الموسيقي
common (adj)	شائع - منتشر	report (ed) (v) (n)	يخبر - يبلغ عن / تقرير
importance (n)	أهمية	ter to make an an industria	مساعد - مفید
mental health (n)	الصحة العقلية	share (d) (v)	يشارك
art club (n)	نادي الفنون	experiences (n)	تجارب - خبرات
school work (n)		important (adj)	هام
website (n)		join (ed) (v)	ينضم - يلتحق
nearly (adv)		language club (n)	نادى اللغات
study (n)	دراسة	- + (ad) (v)	يقترح

-Acco-	
-c2201	7
- 11	

fail (2)	SB pages 56 & 57 WB page 1	10	أی شخص
fail (ed) (v)	يفشل	anyone (pron)	سلوك
speaking (n)	التحدث	behaviour (n)	

British (adj)	 بريطاني (الجنسية)	choice (n)	اختيار
offer (ed) (v), (n)	يعرض / يقدم - عرض	somebody (pron)	شخص ما
nobody (pron)		opinions (n)	راء

تصريف اللفعال غير المنتظمة Conjugation of Irregular Verbs

Present	المضارع	الماضي Past	التصريف الثالث .P.P
spread	ينشر	spread	spread
spend	يقضى	spent	spent

هذه التعريفات مجمعة من كتاب الطالب وكتاب التدريبات وقاموس التعريفات (glossary) في نهاية <mark>كتاب التدريبات.</mark>

Study these definitions

ادرس هذه التعريفات

achievement	something important that you have done	انجاز انجاز
social life	the time you spend enjoying yourself with	other people
appearance	the way that someone or something looks	الحياة الاجتماعية المظهر الخارجي
billion	a thousand million (1,000,000,000)	بليون (ألف مليون)
support	help and encourage someone	يدعم -يساند

Collocations

متلازمات لفظية

кеер	secrets	يحفظ الأسرار	tell	a secret	يخبر سر
join	a club	ينضم لنادى		empathy	يظهر التعاطف
	a problem	لديه مشكلة	show	understandi	5 1
	friends	لديه أصدقاء		a computer	•
have	a haircut بر	يحصل على قصة شع	use		يستخدم التكنولوجيا
	an opinion	لدیه رأی	get		يقلق / يشعر بالقلق
	similar interests ä	لديه اهتمامات متشابه	spend	time	يقضى وقت

Listening and Reading

istening

on Lesson 1 SB page 55

Hisham: I agree that most of these are common problems for teenagers. Most of us aren't completely happy with our appearance. I'm embarrassed about being so tall, for example.

(You shouldn't feel bad about being tall. Your height is a positive thing! For me, exams are a problem. I get very anxious about them.

Hisham: I guess we're all good at different things, and not so good at others. I'm not bad at art or music, but I'm terrible at sports. I always feel that everyone is laughing at me in PE.

: Cyberbullying is a problem, too. I'm glad I haven't experienced it.

Hisham: Yes, that is really scary. For a few months, one of my sister's friends got unkind text messages from someone at her school. It made her feel really upset.

Kamal: What did she do?

Hisham: She told a teacher, and the school spoke to all the students about

how it could hurt people. Then it stopped.

Kamal: It's good that she talked to someone about it.

Hisham : That's right.

eading

on Lesson 1 SB page 55

Today, nearly⁽¹⁾ four billion⁽²⁾ people use social media in their daily lives. Some studies have found that around (3) 63% of people report (4) feeling upset⁽⁵⁾ and anxious⁽⁶⁾ after using social media.



Check Vocabulary

On the other hand (7), social media can be helpful because we can share experiences(8) and support(9) each other. People can spread(10) positive messages this way about the importance (11) of looking after our mental health(12)

Check Vocabulary

الصحة العقلية (12) أهمية (11) ينشر (10) يدعم - يساند (9) يشارك الخبرات (8) على الجانب الأخر (7)

on Lesson 1 WB page 109

- appearance⁽¹⁾
 - 1. I had a haircut last week and I think it is terrible! I'm embarrassed (2) to go out and see my friends!
- social life⁽³⁾
 - 2. All the students in my class go out all the time and visit each other's houses. I live a long way from the school, so I never go out or see any friends after school.
- **cyberbullying**⁽⁴⁾
 - 3. Somebody has sent a few of the boys in my class unkind messages on social media⁽⁵⁾. I'm worried that I will start receiving⁽⁶⁾ them, too.
- skills⁽⁷⁾ and abilities⁽⁸⁾
 - 4. I've tried to join an art club, a language club and a music club, but every time I go, I can't do what they suggest (9). I'm just not good at these things!
- achievements (10)
 - 5. My sister is 18 and she has won lots of competitions (11) and done really well in her exams. I don't think I will ever be as good as her!

Check Vocabulary

المظهر الخارجي (1)	مدرج (2)	الحياة الاجتماعية (3)	التنمر الالكتروني (4)	وسائل التواصل اللجتماعي (5)	
إستلام (6)	معارات (7)		يقترح (9)	7,8567	مسابقات (11)

on Lesson 2 SB page 56

Teen problems



Nobody knows that I failed(1) my English speaking test, and I feel very embarrassed about it. Yesterday, I told my best friend and I said, 'Please don't tell anyone because nobody knows. It's a secret⁽²⁾. The next day, my friend's mother, who is British⁽³⁾, offered to help me with my English. I felt very unhappy with my friend because she told somebody. She said she was only trying to help me, but I don't want to tell her any of my secrets any more.

Magda





I have a lot of friends, but we have very different opinions (4) about things. They say I mustn't talk to some people in the class. We don't always agree(5), and I feel that I am very different(6) from them. It makes me feel lonely (7).





My parents want me to be a doctor when I finish school. A doctor has to be good at science subjects(8), however, and the work is too difficult for me. I don't want to disappoint (9) them, but I really don't think I can be a doctor.

Adam

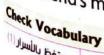
Check Vocabulary

يفشل - ير ^{سب (1)} مختلف (6)	سر (2)	بریطانی (3)	آراء (4)	يوافق (5)
(0) 44130	وحدة (7)	يشعر بالو	مواد علمية (8)	100

on Lesson 2 SB page 57

1 Your friend shouldn't tell anyone your secret. Friends must keep secrets⁽¹⁾. However, you don't have to see this as a negative thing since she only wanted to help. Why don't you think about your friend's mother's kind offer(2)?





عرض (2) يحتفظ بالأسرار

- How about joining a club⁽³⁾ to meet people with similar interests? You don't have to belong to only one group of friends.
- You should talk to them and tell them how you feel. They might be more understanding(5) than you think.

Check Vocabulary

متفهم (5) ينتمي إلى (4) يلتحق بنادي (3)

deoscript

Social media⁽¹⁾ is very popular in Egypt. Almost 50 million people in the country often use it. They spend three hours a day on average(2) to connect with their friends, watch videos and share photographs. People often communicate with each other in both Arabic and English on social media.

But do you know how people communicated with each other in the past? They weren't able to send messages or videos on their smartphones and they couldn't look at each other's photographs on social media.

Important events(3) in ancient Egypt were recorded using a form of writing called hieroglyphics(4). But there were also people called "scribes"(5) who used an easier form of hieroglyphics called hieratic (6) to record what was happening every day. Scribes were important people and they recorded the laws (7), the food that farmers grew, and the amount of money people gave to the pharaohs(8) every year.

Because many people weren't able to write, they had to ask scribes to write letters and messages to send to their friends and family. In fact, we know a lot about Ancient Egypt today because of the work of these scribes. Maybe in the future, people will know about Egypt today because of all the social media messages.

Check Vocabulary

التواصل اللجتماعي (1)	(2) hundlett		
التواصل التجمعيين (۱)	می الفتوسط (2)	احداث هامة (3)	(4) قيفيلغويسا قخلاا
الكُتبة (5)	ق (8) قوانين (7) خاص باللغة الميروغليفية (6)	(4) व्यव्यात्त्रीमुळा वट्णा	
	المال متستند فالتها بيجيان المار	قوانین (7)	الفراعنة (8)

@ General

Notes on Reading & Listening

1 teenager - adult

*teenager

مراهق (ذوی الأعمار من ۱۳ - ۱۹)

ex.: Ali is at prep school. He is a teenager.

*adult = grown up

بالغ / راشد

ex.: He is an adult. He has got experience.

2 What's wrong ? = What's the matter ?

تستخدم للاستفسار عن أمر ما / مشكلة ما ...

Doctor: What's wrong?

Patient: I've a severe headache.

صداع شدید

3

لاحظ

الكلمات الأتية لا تجمع إذا سبقها عدد ...

(hundred - thousand - million - billion)

ex.: الله Nearly four billion people use social media in their daily lives. ولكن : يمكن جمعها إذا لم يسبقها عدد

ex.: Hundreds of people gathered to see the king.

4 lonely (adj)

حزین - وحید

ex.: He feels lonely as he has no friends.

تعبیرات وحروف جر هامة Prepositions المجارات وحروف جر هامة

	T COOLOTTO CC	L I Chosicions m	جيرت وحروف جر ف
in the UK	في المملكة المتحدة	worry about	يقلق بشأن
embarrassed about		fail a test	يرسب في اختبار
^{feel} bad about	يشعر بالسوء بشأن	offer to + inf.	يعرض ان
^{anxious} about		unhappy with	حزین بـ
feel upset		around 63%	حوالي ٦٣٪
^{in their} daily lives	في حياتهم اليومية		بالنسبة لي
the other hand		have no choice	ل <mark>یس</mark> لدیه اختیار
ridre experiences	· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·		بطريقة إيجابية
support each other	ندعو بعضنا البعض	change behaviour	يغير سلوك

spread positive messages	ینشر رسائل یجابیة یعتنی ر	feel about this sort of Information	ب _{ه به} ندو
look after use technology	يستخدم التكنولوج		ولحماا ن _{اه ووناا انه}
(he) positive for	یکون ایجابی بشار	belong to	_{من} می الی
(be) negative for		feel positive about	معر بالإيجابية نحو
find it difficult to + inf.	یجد صعوبهٔ ان	feel lonely	شعر بالوحدة

Exercise on Vocabulary

0	Choose the corre	ect answer from	a,b,cord:	
0	Key vocabulary			
	1. Charities	oor people with f	ood and clothes.	
	a. share	b. support	c. join	d. upset
	2. She was W	hen she dropped	the phone.	Na.
	a. happy	b. lonely	c. excited	d. embarrassed
	3. I get abou	t exams.		70.7
	a. anxious	paratrial activities	c. wet	d. sleep
	4. Every good thing			
	a. life	b. work	c. achievement	d. appearance
	5 is somethi			
	a. Skill	b. Secret	c. Study	d. Text
0	SB and WB Exercises		طالب والتدريبات	ندريبات من كتاب الد
	6. WB I've tried to	an art club.		
	a. join	b. go	c. have	d. spend
			t you know how he	or she feels, then
	you show			
			c. taste	
	8. Si You shouldn		eing tall. Your	
		b. fast	c. distance	d. height
	9. Milline unkind	text messages ma	de her feel really	
	a. upset	b. excited	c. important	
	El-Moasser Exercise		صر	^{تو} ريبات كتاب المعاد
	10. We can o	ur experience with	n others on social m	nedia.
	a. hide	b. share	c. encourage	d. get

11. Drinking tea is in Egypt. a. helpful b. special c.secret 12. Which of these is one of English language skills? d. common a. Communication b. Searching c. Speaking d. Painting

Language Notes, Expressions & Prepositions

13. Mostafa is poor. the other hand, he is so generous. a. On c. Over d. At 14. Lamees is different Walaa. b. from c. into d. in 15. This key to Farida. Give it to her. b. brings a. owns c. belongs d. has

16. We are not similar. We different opinions.

a. hold b. catch c. have d. carry

• ,	and Antony	ms	مترادفات ومتضادات
Wor	ا لكلمة d طيب	Synonym المرادف friendly / gentle / good	Antonym المضاد unkind عبر طيب
similar	متشابه	like	different منتلف
well	بطريقة جيدة		badly قبيئة
clear	واضح - صافی	plain-apparent	hidden/unclear خفی/غیر واضح
certain	متأكد	sure	فير متأكد uncertain/unsure
anxious = wo	orried قلق - مشغول البال	nervous-upset disturbed	quiet/peaceful/calm هادیء - مطمئن
embarrassec	مُحرج - خجلان	uncomfortable - uneasy	confident واثق من نفسه

Prefixes & Suffixes		ناطع بادئة وناهية
Prefix / Suffix	الوظيفة Function	Examples autoi
any –	تعطی معنی أی	anytime وقت
no -	تعطی معنی لا پوجد	nobody الد no one

some -

نعطي فعني يوجد لكن بدون ندديد الكو/العدد something somebody someone

شر) ما شرص ما شخص ما

on Vocabulary Study

- Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:
 - 1. I'm embarrassed to go out and see my friends. The word "embarrassed" can be replaced by ".....".
- b. calm
- c. uncomfortable d. confident
- 2. There isn't anybody in the meeting. ____ came to the meeting.
 - b. Nobody
- c. Somebody
- d. Something
- a. Anybody The synonym of the word is apparent.
 - a. kind
- b. similar
- c. anxious
- d. clear

- 4. The opposite of "certain" is ".....
 - a. unsure
- b. sure
- c. hidden
- d nervous



Language



يجب أن / يجب ألا



Subject Jelall

must il us

ex. - Drivers must follow traffic rules.

We use "must" to talk about things that are necessary.

• نستخدم (must) بمعنى (يجب أن) للتحدث عن أشياء من الضروري القيام بها. (إلزام داخلي)



Negative → Subject الفاعل النفي

mustn't you

ex. - I'll tell you a secret, but you mustn't tell anyone!

- We use "mustn't" to talk about things that are necessary to avoid. • تُستَخدم (mustn't) بمعنى (يجب ألا) للتحدث عن أشياء من الضروري تجنبها أو عدم القيام بها. ex. - What must you do when you go to a library?

have to / has to

Interrogative

الاستفهاه

Usage

الاستخداه

We use "have to/ has to" when something is essential to do (you have no choice).

يجب أن/ من الضرورى أن/ لابد أن

- وخد. I have to pass the driving test to get a licence. رخصة
 - He has to pay the bills فواتير on time.
 - ◄ تستخدم (have to / has to) عندما یکون شیء ما من الضروری القیام به (لیس لدیك اختیار) بمعنی أنه (إلزام خارجی).

We use "don't have to / doesn't have to " when something is not essential to do.

- ex. Ahmed doesn't have to get up early at weekends.
 - Reem and Sama don't have to attend the meeting.
 - ▶ تستخدم (don't have to / doesn't have to) عندما یکون شیء ما لیس من الضروری القیام به (إلزام خارجی).

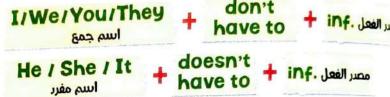


السم جمع + have to + inf. العمل She / It

He / She / It + has to + inf. مصر الفعل

 My father has to go to work at 6 am tomorrow, for a meeting.

- I have to be good at science subjects.



ex. - I don't have to get up early tomorrow, because it is a holiday!

- He doesn't have to hurry. He isn't late for school.

(a) Yes/No question:

السؤال به «هل»

Do / Does + subject الفاعل

+ have to + ir

ex. - Do you have to get up early?

- Yes, I do.

No, I don't.

- Does Adam have to travel to England?

- Yes, he does. - No, he doesn't.



(b) Wh-question:

السؤال بكلمة استفهام:

Word + do + subject + have to ... أفاعل + have to ... أ

ex. - What do you have to do at home to help your parents ?

استخدام (have to) بعد does وأ does في صيغة الاستفهام.

g_{"should} & shouldn't"

ينبغي أن/ينبغي ألا

الاستخدام كالتالا

We use should /shouldn't for advice or to talk about things that are or are not a good idea to do.

are not u و should / shouldn't) للنصيحة أو للحديث عن الأشياء التي من الجيد أو من غير الجيد الفيام ◀ بها أو أنها ليست فكرة جيدة.

ex. - You should talk to them. People shouldn't tell others this sort of information.

تستخدم للنصح بفعل أشياء مفيدة أو جيدة :

التكوين Formation



Subject الفاعل

Should ينبغى أن

مصدر الفعاء

ex. - You should choose your friends carefully.

◄ تستخدم للنصح بعدم فعل أشياء غير مفيدة أو غير جيدة :





الفاعل Subject

shouldn't سفى ألا

inf. leal upo

ex. - You shouldn't say unkind things to people on social media.

السؤال بـ «هل»

(a) Yes/No question :

عند طلب النصيحة نستخدم :

Should

الفاعل subject

? مصر الفعل . inf.

ex. - Should I go out now?

Yes, you should.

- No, you shouldn't.

(b) Wh-question:

السؤال بكلمة استفهام

Interrogative

منعة الاستفهام Question كلمة استفهام Word

should shouldn't

subject الفاعل

مصدر الفعل

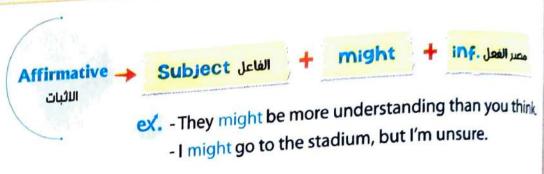
ex. - What should you do when you go to a swimming pool?



الاستخدام وعججا

- We use "might" to say that something is possible or uncertain. رستخدم "might" لنعبر عن احتمالية أو عدم التأكد من حدوث شئ ما.

التكوين Formation



on Language (Answered & Explained) Stop here!

في هذا الجزء نقدم للطالب تدريب على القاعدة اللغوية مجاب عنه ومصحوب بشرح أساب اختيار الإجابة الصحيحة.

• Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- 1.1..... be good at science subjects. I want to join the Faculty of Science.
 - a have to
- b. must
- c. should
- d. might
- 2. Youstudy hard to get good marks. This is my advice.
 - a. have
- b. should
- c. shouldn't
- d. mustn't
- 3. Ahmed is absent today. He be ill. I'm not sure.
 - a. should
- b. must
- c. hast to
- d. might

No.		الإجابة والتوضيح Answer + Explanation
1	a	خدم (have to) للتعبير عن شئ سامى لا غنى عنه / (الزام خارجى) إن لم تكون جيد في المواد العلمية، لن تستطيع دخول كليه العلوم
2	b	مر (should) لأن الحملة تمير عن نصيحة يفعل شيء حيد
3	d	خدم (might) لأن الجملة تعبر عن احتمال / عدم تأكد

on Language

on Language						
on Language on Language spand WB Exercises on Language	تدريبات من كتاب الطالب والتدريبات					
2 58 and Web A doctor has to good at	science subjects.					
		d. to be				
a. been say unkind things to	people on social r	nedia.				
ant D. Illust	C. Hud to	d. have to				
friends Keep secre	ets.					
. / In Siludian C	c. doi: t ilave	d. must				
Tarek is worried because ne	do badiy in his	exam.				
p. midrit	C. Has to	a. Had to				
get up early tomorrow	, because it is a hol	iday!				
a. shouldn't b. don't have to	c. mustn't	d. has to				
A Masser Exercises	•	تدريبات كتاب المعاص				
6. Omaima wear glasses beca	use she can't see.					
h have to	c. nas to	d. have				
a. mustn't b. have to 7. Youstudy biology to join th	e Faculty of Medic	ine.				
1 -4/4	c. should	d. didn't have to				
a. have to b. mustn t 8. You take photos here. It's fo	orbidden.					
h don't have to	C. Illust	d. mustn't				
9. Habiba has three jackets. She	to buy another	one. d. doesn't have				
y, Habiba has timee jueness	c. mustn't	d. doesn't have				
a. don't have b. must 10. Hany has a lot of work to do. He	come home	late. It's probable.				
a. must b. might	c. should	d. nave to				
a. must b. might 11. Younis drink polluted wate	r.	d. mustn't				
annk politica	c. shouldn't					
a. should b. must Complete the sentences with the co	weet form of the	word(s) in brackets				
Complete the sentences with the	Mort	تدريبات من كتاب الطال				
3 SB and MID Francisco	د دریبان					
1. WB When I (must) to	1 Man you think.					
what do you (must) mo	1. WB What do you					
They might (Deerl) The		319				

3. We You (mustn't) know	the password before you can use that
	o go to work at 6 a.m for a meeting.
El Moassor Evercises	_{تدل} یبات کتاب المهاصر

El-Moasser Exercises

- 5. Salma has to (got) a passport to travel to London.
- 6. We (doesn't) have to hurry, we aren't late for school.
- 7. You (mustn't) see a doctor. You have been ill for a week,
- 8. You (must) park your car here. It's against the law.
- 9. Do you have to (finished) your work tonight?
- 10.(Does) Ali and Sara have to travel to Luxor?

kills Corner



ييفية التعامل مع معارات (القراءة - الكتابة - التحدث) في الورقة الامتحانية لكل درس على حده.

تنويم للمزيد من الشرح والتدريبات على مهارات (القراءة - الكتابة - التحدث) Part 2 فى ملحق (Master Your Term)



Reading Corner

هَ بِقَرَاءَةَ Reading on lesson 2 SB page 56 **من كتاب المعاصر صفحة ۳۰۹ ثم قم بالتدرب** على إجابة بعض أسئلة قطعة الفهم طبقاً لمواصفات الورقة الامتحانية.

Answer the following questions:

- Critical thinking skill مهارة التفكير النقدى
 - 1. Why does Salma think her friends are different from her?
 - Because they have very different opinions about things.
- Extracting information إستخراج المعلومات
 - 2. What problem was Magda embarrassed about?
- فهم ما يشير إليه الضمير Understanding reference
 - 3. What does the pronoun "me" in the last paragraph refer to?

Writing Corner

معارة الكتابة

A. Read the sentences

جمل تساعدك على كتابة فقرة إنشائية | رسالة بريد إلكتروني.

"المشاعر Feelings"

1. I find it difficult to feel positive about school these days.

ا. أجد أنه من الصعب الشعور تجاه المدرسة بطريقة إيجابية هذه الأيام. 2. I'm anxious about my exams.

٢. أنا مُلق بشأن الامتحانات الخاصة بي. 3. I often feel lonely. ٣. غالبًا أشعر بالوحدة.

4. I am embarrassed to tell anyone that I feel upset.

٤. اشعر بالحرج بأن اقول لأى أحد أنني أشعر بالضيقةً.

B. Building sentences

Read and complete:

shouldn't - playground - library - secrets - mustn't - don't have to

1. You park your car here. It isn't allowed.

2. They get up early as it is a holiday.

3. Yousay unkind things to anyone.

4. At the, you must be quiet.

5. Friends must keep

بعر دراسة القواعد والمفردات اللغوية الخاصة بالدرسين قم بالتدريب على بناء الجملة

(, Practise by yourself

تدرب على كتابة فقرة إنشائية / رسالة بريد إلكتروني

-Write a paragraph of about (110) words on:

"teenagers' problems"

Speaking Corner

معارة التحدث

Discussing teenagers' worries:

Questions



1. What are teenagers worried about?

ماذا يقلق المراهقون ؟

^{2.What} can you do to help them? ماذا تستطيع أن تفعل لمساعدتهم؟

مناقشة قلق المراهقين :

Answers



- They are worried about some problems like appearance, abilities and achievements.
- هم قلقون حيال بعض المشكلات مثل المظهر الخارجي والقدرات واللنجازات.
- We can help by giving them
 - the suitable advice. - يمكننا مساعدتهم بتقديم النصائح المناسبة.

Using of technology:

Questions



1. How can the uses of mobile phones be positive or negative for your mental health? كيف يمكن أن يكون لإستخدامات الهاتف المحمول تأثير إيجابي أو سلبي على صحتك العقلية ؟

إستخدام التكنولوچيا :

Answers



- Positives of using mobile phone:

. _{انجابيا}ت إستخدام الهاتف المحمول:

1. Instant communication

ـ الاتصال الفورى

ـ الترفيه / التسلية 2. Entertainment

3. Academic help قيمياعدة الأكاديمية

4. Increased convenience إيادة الراحة

- Negatives of using mobile phone:

سلبيات استخدام الهاتف المحمول:

1. stress - القلق والتوتر

2. sleep loss - فقد النوم

3. cyberbullying - التنمر الإلكتروني

4. vision problems · المشاكل البصرية

Skills corner

تدرب على المهارات طبقاً للورقة الامتحانية كل درس على حده :

• مهارة القراءة : تدرب على اسئلة قطعة (استخراج معلومات – اعطاء الفكرة الرئيسية – فهم ما يشير اليه الضمير – تخمين معنى مفردة لغوية في النص – مهارة التفكير النقدى.

•مهارة الكتابة : تدرب على كيفية الكتابة مع مراعاة (التنظيم – التهجى – ترابط الأفكار – علامات الترقيم – القواعد اللغوية – اختيار المفردات اللغوية).

> · معارة التحدث : تدرب على اتقان الوظائف اللغوية للتعامل مع سؤال المحادثة في الامتحان.

المعاصر في اللغة الانجليزية امنح ثقتك لمن يستحق

General Exercises

a. quiet



• Create

LESSONS 1 & 2

	complete the follow	ving dialogue:							
١	Ayman is talking to his younger brother Adham who spends much time on social media.								
	Ayman : Adham, Whe			(30000000000000000000000000000000000000					
	Adham: (1)								
	Ayman : (2)	····· ?							
	Adham: I'm chatting	with my friend.							
	Ayman : Have you do	ne your homewo	ork?						
	Adham: (3)	··············•							
	Ayman: (4)	?							
	Adham: Because I fee								
	Ayman: This is a norm	mal result of sper	nding much tim	e on social modia					
	Adham: (5)		ould I do ?	- on social media.					
	Ayman : Using socia	l media for half a	n hour every da	V is enough					
	Choose the correct			, is enough,					
	1. WBA / An m a. cyberbullying	leans something		you have done.					
	cachievement		b. ability d. secret						
	2. She often feels wo	rriad							
	a. off	b. for		م د مام ام					
	3. Always make friend		c. from	d. about					
	a. strange	b. similar	c. foreign	d. different					
	4.1 think this is a goo	J. Sillinai	c. loreign	choop					
	a. On	d flat the	other hand, it is	d. About					
)	5. For me, exams	b. At	c. In						
	a con the, exams	are a problem. I	got very	about them.					

d. anxious

c. cheerful

b. relaxed

•	6. Don't be!		n to make you an c. pleased	gry.
	a. positive	b. upset	C. pieasea	о парру
	7. I'm about	being very sho	rt although my pa	arents said that's okay
	a. pleased	b. excited	c. emparrasseu	d. delighted
6	8. You make	noise at librari	es. It's not allowe	d.
	a. must	b. should	c. mustn't	d. shouldn't
0	9. You study	hard before ex	ams.	·
	a. should	b. mustn't	c, shouldn't	d. need
0	10. Youstay u	ip late. It's bad	for your health.	
	a. don't have	b. should	c. must	d. shouldn't
3	Complete the sent	tences with the	e correct form of	the word(s)
0	in brackets:			
	1. You (have	clean) the table	e. I have cleaned	it.
	2. You (smok	(e) here. It's not	allowed.	
	3. She (must) see her preser	nt. I'm not sure.	
	4. They (shou			
4	SB Complete the	sentences with	these words:	
i	а	fter - hand - stud	dies - share - hate	
	Today, nearly four b	oillion people us	se social media in	their daily lives. Some
		ac 200 M		port feeling upset and
				, social media
				ces and support each
				about the importance
	of looking (4)			
5	Write a paragraph	of about (110)	words on :	بجاب عنه في نهاية الكتاب
•		"Social medi		
		***************************************		***************************************



Vocabulary

Vey Vocabulary

NE	مدونة الكترونية	include (d) (v)	
blog (n) g/berbully (ied) (v)	يتنمر على الإنترنت	mindfulness (n)	يضم / پشتمل علی
comment (n)	تعليق	breathe (d) (v)	يقظة
: Ne (d) (V) , (N)		relax (ed) (v)	يتنفس ىسترخى
mindful (adj)	يقظ - منتبه	feelings (n)	مشاعر

تنويه • Key Vocabulary هي المفردات الأكثر أهمية المطلوب من الطالب إتقانها.



■ Master your Vocabulary يقضى على جميع مشاكل حفظ المفردات (ملحق Master)

■ Glossary لحصيلة أكبر (للمزيد) من المفردات اللغوية نهاية الكتاب.

SB pages 58 & 59 WB page 111

NATIONAL WAR			
readers (n)	قراء	realise (d) (v)	يدرك
part (n)	جزء	hope (d) (v)	يأمل - يتمنى
certain (adj)	معین - محدد	luckily (adv)	لحسن الحظ
closed = locked (adj)	مغلق	revise (d) (v)	يراجع
telephone (d) (v)	يتصل تليفونيًا	waterfall (n)	شللل
ife jacket (n)		engine (n)	محرك

resson 4	SB page 60 WB page 112		Allân
culture (n)		facts (n)	حقائق جدول مواعید
deeply (adv)		timetable (n)	عملية التنفس
afterwards (adv)	بعدئذ - في ما بعد	breathing (n)	صحة
calmly (adv)	بهدوء	health (n)	
mind (n)	عقل		

A				
Conjuga				
COMME			The same of the sa	APRE
	TIAN	PPOCT		- 2
	[4 [6]]			No. of Concession, Name of Street, or other Designation, or other

Present المضارع hurt hurt يۈذى - يجرح - يۈلىر

الماضي Past

التصريف الثالث .P.P hurt

تصريف الأفعال غير المنتظمة

هذه التعريفات مجمعة من كتاب الطالب وكتاب التدريبات <mark>وقا</mark>موس التعريفات (glossary) في نهاية كتاب التدريبات.



_{ادرس} هذه التعريفات Study these definitions

mental health	shows the health of your mind, or how happy you are المحدة العقالية			
breathe	take air in and out of your body			
relax	become comfortable and less worried	ىسترخى		
mindful	being able to think calmly about your feel	ings and what is		
minarai	around you at the moment	فقي - مبتنه		
feelings	what you feel, such as happy, upset, etc.	بد اشم		
	being able to relax by calmly thinking abo	out your feelings		
mindfulness	and what is around you at the moment	البقظة - الحرص التام		
	this means showing someone that you un	derstand how		
empathy	they feel.	شاطف		

Collocations متلازمات لفظية

the state of the s				
a test	یؤدی اختبار	mlaw	a sport	بمارس رياضة
a test	لديه اختبار	play	a game	باعب مباراة
friends	يختار أصدقائه	feel	better	بشعر بالتحسن
home	يذهب للمنزل	do	better	پۈدى أداء جيدًا
empathy	يظهر التعاطف			
	a test friends home	a test لديه اختبار friends يختار أصدقائه home يذهب للمنزل	a test لديه اختبار play friends مختار أصدقائه feel home يذهب للمنزل do	a test الديه اختبار a game friends الاله فقال المنازل feel better home المنازل do better

Listening and Reading



on Lesson 4 SB page 60

Boy 1: In mindfulness classes, we learn that it's Ok to have negative thoughts(1), like when we feel angry. We don't have to feel bad about that. It helps me to understand my feelings. And try to turn them into something positive. Mindfulness is about being kind to yourself, and kind to other people too.

Check Vocabulary

افكار سلبية (1)

then breathe out (3) slowly. Breathing like this makes then breathe out (3) slowly. Breathing like this makes you feel calm. in the class, we try not to think about all our problems, we should only think about the things that are around us. Think about the

present only, what's happening right now. The reason for this is we can't change the future or the past, we can only do something about the present.

Girl 2: In mindfulness, you have to learn to find happiness (4) in simple things. For example, when you eat a favourite food, think about how it smells, tastes and looks. This is a new way of doing everyday things.

check Vocabulary

سعادة (4) . يخرج الهواء (3)



on Lesson 3 SB page 58

lalways wanted to be part of a certain group(1) of popular students. One day, they suggested (2) that we cyberbully (3) a boy in my class called Fawzi, so I wrote an unkind

comment (4) about him on social media. Ithought that my friends would think it was funny. I didn't realise⁽⁵⁾ that they were joking (6), and I was the only one to write an unkind comment.

Eyad read my comment and the next day

he didn't want to come to school. I had to tell my parents, and they couldn't understand why I did it. Then, the other students did not want to include (7) me in their group. I am so

embarrassed(8) about what I did. However, I hope my experience (9) will have a positive result (10), too. I didn't have to do what my friends suggested. You should think before you do Some online messages can hurt people very badly.

giro gedoso	lary			
مخموعه من	يقترح (2)	يتنمر على الإنترنت (3)	(4) تعلیق	يدرك (5)
100	يضم (7)	محرج (8)	خبرة / تجربة (9)	نتيجة إيجابية (10)



6

I was able to say sorry to Eyad the next day. He is very kind and now we I was able to say sorry to Eyad the Hext day are friends. So, you should choose your friends carefully and always be kind to people.

Hussein

Check Vocabulary

بعناية (11)

on Lesson 3 WB page 111

Last week, my uncle took me out on his boat. I had to wear a special life jacket(1) and he said I had to walk carefully around (2) the boat (3) but I couldn't run. We travelled a long way, and after two hours, I wasn't able to see the beach, only the sea. Then the engine (4) stopped! We tried to start (5) it, but we couldn't. I was able to swim well, but I knew that I wasn't



able to swim to the beach. So my uncle could telephone for help! They said they could send a helicopter to help us. However, suddenly the engine started again! So, we didn't have to go home on a helicopter.

Check Vocabulary

مروحية (7) يتصل تليفونيًا (6) يشغل (5) محرك (4) قارب (3) حول (2) چاكت النجاة (1)

on Lesson 4 SB page 60

The DAILY News

As part of a plan⁽¹⁾ to improve⁽²⁾ students' mental health⁽³⁾, more than 350 schools in the UK recently introduced mindfulness⁽⁴⁾ as a part of the timetable⁽⁵⁾. In a mindfulness class, students learn to breathe⁽⁶⁾ slowly and to only think of the present. It isn't easy. We usually think about things we have done in the past or things we have to do in the future.

Check Vocabulary

يتنفس (6) جدول مواعيد (5) اليقظة (4) الصحة العقلية (3) يُحسن (2) خطة (1

I was able to say sorry to Eyad the next day. He is very kind and now we are friends. So, you should choose your friends carefully(11) and always be kind to people.

Hussein

Check Vocabulary

رعناية (11)

on Lesson 3 WB page 111

Last week, my uncle took me out on his boat. I had to wear a special life jacket(1) and he said I had to walk carefully around (2) the boat (3) but I couldn't run. We travelled a long way, and after two hours, I wasn't able to see the beach, only the sea. Then the engine (4) stopped! We tried to start (5) it, but we couldn't. I was able to swim well, but I knew that I wasn't



able to swim to the beach. So my uncle could telephone (6) for help! They said they could send a helicopter to help us. However, suddenly the engine started again! So, we didn't have to go home on a helicopter.

Check Vocabulary

مروحية (7) يتصل تليفونيًا (6) يشغل (5) محرك (4) قارب (3) حول (2) چاكت النجاة (1)

on Lesson 4 SB page 60

The DAILY News

As part of a plan⁽¹⁾ to improve⁽²⁾ students' mental health⁽³⁾, more than 350 schools in the UK recently introduced mindfulness (4) as a part of the timetable (5). In a mindfulness class, students learn to breathe⁽⁶⁾ slowly and to only think of the present. It isn't easy. We usually think about things we have done in the past or things we have to do in the future.

Check Vocabulary

يتنفس (6) جدول مواعيد (5) اليقظة (4) الصحة العقلية (3) يُحسن (2) خطة (1

However, trying to think only about the present helps us to relax, and to really think deeply about everything we are doing at the moment. This helps to stop us from feeling anxious or worried about things we have done or to stop us from feeling anxious. or worried about things we have done or have to do. Students say that mindfulness helps them to feel better about have to do. Students and afterwards they do better at their school work, too.

مى ما بعد (10) يشعر بالقلق (9) يسترخى (8) على الرخم من الم

. on Lesson 4 WB page 112

Ashraf : I understand my feelings better now.

For example (1), when I feel angry (2), I

play a sport. I usually find I play better!

It's a nice, sunny day in spring. My friends want me to play a game with them, but I'm feeling anxious. We had a test last week and I did badly. We have another test next week and I don't think it will be easier.



Mariam: It's morning. I can hear the wind⁽³⁾ in the trees and the birds singing. I am breathing slowly and carefully⁽⁴⁾.

Check Vocabulary

بعناية (4) رياح (3) غاضب (2) على سبيل المثال (1)

General Notes on Reading & Listening

- 1 share / divide
 - * share (v) ... with ...

يشارك (شيء) مع (شخص)

ex.:- We shared our food with our friends.

يقسم ... إلى ...

* divide ... into

€.:- Mum divided the melon into pieces.

breathe / breath

* breathe (v)

سفنت

ex.: - He fell down and couldn't breathe.

* breath (n)

(Mái

ex.: - He took a deep breath to relax.

3 joke (v) / (n)

يمزح / نكته

ex.: - He is joking. He is not serious. (فعل

- All people like him. He always tells jokes. (اسم)

Important [expressions &	Prepositions	عبيرات وحروف جر هامة	
share with	یشارك مع	think deeply	يفكر بتمعن	
part of	جزء من	stop from	يمنع - يتوقف عن	
•	في وسائل التواصل الاجتماعي	feel better	يشعر بتحسن	
include in	يضمن / يتضمن في		پکون علی صداقة مع	
hurt badly	يؤلم بشدة	stay up late	بسمر حتى وقت متأخر	
able to	قادر علی	go into	ېدخل	
kind to	عطوف على	say sorry to	یعتذر لی	
revise for	يراجع لـ	write an unkind comment about بکتب تعلیقات غیر طیبة عن		
sorry about	حزین علی	leave the airport	يغادر المطار	
يشهق ويزفر ببطىء breathe in and out slowly		do badly	يؤدى أداء غير جيد	

-xercise on Vocabulary

• Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

Key vocabulary

1. Adel is very funny, he always

a. reads b. jokes

c. suggests

d. talks

2. They refused to me in their team.

a. offer b. share c. include

d. plan

3. When you feel worried, in and out slowly.

a. breathe

b. freeze

c. pass

d. breath

المنات ومتضادات Synonyms and Antonyms مترادفات ومتضادات المنات ومتضادات المنات ومتضادات المنات المنات ومتضادات المنات ومتضادات المنات					
Word		المرادف Synonym	Antony	ונסضاد m	
quickly future	بسرعة المستقبل	fast	slowly past	ببطء العاضي	

next relaxed aware	before upset جدزنه - منزعج unaware / mindless
locked	غافل/غیر واع مفتوح opened

Prefixes & Suffixes		وناهية	فأطع بادئة
Prefix / Suffix	الوظيفة Function	Example	أمثلة 25
– ness	تحول من صفة إلى اسم	happiness mindfulness	سعادة ليقظة
– ly	تحول من صفة إلى ظرف	calmly deeply quickly slowly luckily	بهدوء عمق بسرعة ببطء حسن الحظ

Exercise on Vocabulary Study

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Think befo	re you make a deci	ision.	
a. deep	b. deepness	c. deeply	d. deepen
2. When you are up	set, this means you	don't feel	
a. uncomfort	b. comfortable	c. uncomfortable	d. comfort
3. The antonym of "	mindful" is		
a. aware	b. unaware	c. careful	d. relaxed
4. When someone is	s calm, this means l	ne speaks	
a. calm	b. calmy	c. calmness	d. calmliness
5. "" has the sa	me meaning of "cl	osed".	
a. Kept	b. Covered	c. Opened	d. Locked

Language

کان من الضروری أن / لم یکن من الضروری: : Had to & didn't have to

We use (had to / didn't have to) to talk about things that were or were not necessary or essential to do in the past.

♦ نستخدم (had to / didn't have to) للحديث عن الأشياء التي كان من الضروري القيام / لم _{يكن من}

Subject الفاعل had to الاثنات

◄ تعبر عن شيئاً كان من الضرورى القيام به في الماضى.

ex. - He had to stay up late last night to revise for a maths test.

didn't have to Subject الفاعل

ex. - I didn't have to do what my friends suggested.

◄ تعبر عن شيئاً لم يكن من الضرورى القيام به في الماضي.

1. Yes / No question:

have to + inf...?

ex. - Did you have to go to the dentist?

- Yes, I did.

Negative

النفى

A Interrogative

الاستفهام

- No, I didn't. ٢. السؤال بكلمة استفهام

2. Wh - question:

subject Question + did كلمة استفهام word

ex. - What did you have to do at primary school?

لاحظ أن :

١. السؤال بـ (هل)

استخدام (have to) بعد did في صيغة الاستفهام.

Expressing ability and inability in the past: _{التع}بير عن القدرة وعدم القدرة في الماضي:

- We use (could -was / were able to) to talk about past abilities. ر (could - was / were able to) للتعبير عن القدرة على القيام بشئ ما في زمن الماضي.
- We use (couldn't wasn't / weren't able to) to talk about inability in the past نستخدم (couldn't - wasn't / weren't able to) للتعبير عن عدم القدرة على القيام بشئ ما في زمن الماضي.

ex. - I was able to say sorry to Fawzi.

ex. - We could see an amazing waterfall.

Note that:

Use was/were able to with action verbs to talk about a past ability related to a single event in the past.

استخدم (was / were able to)للحديث عن القدرة في الماضي (حدث منفرد في الماضي)



Subject الفاعل + couldn't + inf.

ex. - They couldn't understand why I did it.

1. Yes / No question:

١. السؤال بـ(هل)

Interrogative

Could + Subject + inf...?

مصدر الفعل + الفاعل الستفهاه

ex. - Could you walk when you were two years old?
- Yes, I could. - No, I couldn't.

لاحــظ أن :

لاحظ أنه عند الرد على صيغة السؤال بـ «هل» نستخدم إجابات مُختصرة :

Was / Were + subject + able to + inf...?

ex. - Was he able to swim in the pool?

2. Wh - question:

- Yes, he was.

٢. السؤال بكلمة استفهام

- No, he wasn't.

Guestion + could + subject + inf...?

ex. - What could you do at last weekend?

Question + was / subject + able to + inf...?

word الفاعل + were + الفاعل + able to + الفاعل + were

ex. - What were you able to do at primary school?

Stophered & Explained)

_{في} هذا الجزء نقدم للطالب تدريب على القاعدة اللغوية مجاب عنه ومصحوب بشرج أسباب اختيار _{الإجا}بة الصحيحة

Choose the correct answer	from a	, b, c	or d:
---------------------------	--------	--------	-------

1. When I was ten,	l was to swi	m.	
a can	b. could	c. able	d. couldn't
2. Hala go to	the hospital yeste	erday.	
a. mustn't	b. has to	c. had to	d. must
3. I visit Ali. I	t wasn't necessary		- 2 2
a. don't have to	b. didn't have to	c. doesn't have to	d. had to
4. You take p	hotos here. It's for	bidden.	
a. don't have to	b. have to	c. must	d. mustn't
5. I could walk whe	n I was two, but I	swim.	
a couldn't	b. could	c. can	d. can't

No.	الإجابة والتوضيح Answer + Explanation		
1	c	الجِملة تعبر عن القدرة على فعل شيء في الماضي باستخدام الصيغة (be able to)	
2	c	الجملة تعبر عن ضرورة في الماضي لذا نستخدم (had to)	
3	b	الجملة تعبر عن عدم ضرورة في الماضي لوجود (It wasn't necessary)	
4	d	الجملة تعبر عن حظر أو منع لوجود (It's forbidden)	
5	a	الجملة تعبر عن عدم القدرة في الماضي لوجود (but) التي تربط بين جملتين متناقضتين	

Exercises on Language

1. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

SB and WB Exercises	ب والتدريبات	^{تد} ریبات من کتاب الطال
 Significant in the fill understand. 		87 (277)
a. could b. couldn't	c. wasn't able	d. had to
2. Malak buy more ric	e because we had lots:	already.
a. didn't have to b. could	c. had to	d. wasn't able

Fatma walk to school because she hurt her leg. a. didn't have to b. wasn't able to c. could In the mountains, wesee an amazing waterfall. d. had to a. were able b. didn't have c. could 2 El-Moasser Exercises d. was able to تدريبات كتاب المعاصر 5. Adel to ride a bike when he was young. a. could b. was able c. able to d. couldn't 6. The boy couldn't his homework. a. did b. do c. done d. does 7......you play basketball when you were young, Alaa? a. Was b. Could c. Were d. Are 8. The exam was difficult, but I to answer all the questions easily. b. wasn't able to c. was able a. could d. couldn't 9. At the age of two, my sister ride a bike. a. wasn't able b. couldn't c. weren't able to d. able 10. We walk to the museum, because there wasn't a bus. b. had to a have to c. don't have to d. was able to Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets. تدريبات من كتاب الطالب والتدريبات SB and WB Exercises 1. WB Tarek (have) to go to the dentist yesterday because his tooth hurt. 2. WB It was very windy, so planes (wasn't) able to leave the airport. 3. 1 didn't have to (done) what my friends suggested. تدريبات كتاب المعاصر 4. Yesterday, I had to (took) the umbrella as it was raining.

المعاصر لغة إنجليزية/٢ع / تيرم ١ (م: ٢٢)

Corner



_{كي}فية التعامل مع معارات (القراءة - الكتابة - التحدث) في الورقة الامتحانية لكل درس على حده.

والتدريبات على مهارات (القراءة - الكتابة - التحدث) (Master Your Term) في ملحق Part 2



Reading Corner

هَم بِهَراءَةَ Reading on lesson 3 SB page 58 من كتاب المعاصر صفحة ٣٢٧ و ٣٢٨ ثم قم بالتدرب على إجابة بعض أسئلة قطعة الفهم طبقاً لمواصفات الورقة الامتحانية.

Answer the following questions:

- Extracting information إستخراج المعلومات
 - 1. What was Hussein able to do the next day?
 - He was able to say sorry to Fawzi.
- مهارة التفكير النقدى Critical thinking skill -
 - 2. Why do you think Hussein wrote an unkind comment about Fawzi?
- Giving the main idea إعطاء الفكرة الرئيسية
 - 3. What does this passage talk about ?

Writing Corner

معارة الكتابة

A. Read the sentences

جمل تساعدك على كتابة **فقرة إنشائية / رسالة بريد إلكتروني**

- I understand my feelings better now.
- ا إنني أفهم مشاعري جيدًا الأن.
- 2. When I feel angry, I play a sport.
- عندما أشعر بالغضب، أمارس رياضة.
- 3. I usually find I play better.

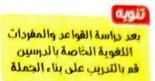
- عادة ما أقوم باللعب بشكل أفضل.
- 4. So my friends want me to play a game with them.
 - ^٤. لذا أصدقائي يريدون مني أن ألعب معهم.

Building sentences

@ Read and complete:

jokes - were - had - saw - could - have

- 1. Yesterday, Ali to go to the dentist.
- 2. Wesee an amazing waterfall.
- 3. They not able to walk.
- 4. Adel always and makes me laugh.
- 5. It is a holiday, pupils don't to go to school.



C. Practise by yourself

- Write a paragraph of about 110 words on:

"Ways to relax"

Speaking Corner

معارة التحدث

Discussion about mindfulness:

Questions



1. Would you like to try mindfulness?

Why / Why not? هل تود تجربة اليقظة العقلية ؟ لماذا / لمالا؟

2. How do you think mindfulness

could help you? كيف تعتقد أن اليقظة العقلية من الممكن أن

تساعدك ؟

مناقشة عن اليقظة (العقلية) :

تدرب على كتابة فقرة إنشائية / رسالة بريد إلكتروني

Answers



 Yes, I'd like that. As this helps me feel better about myself and do better at school work.

نعم. أود ذلك. لأن هذا يساعدني في الشعور بشكل أفضل تجاه نفسى والأداء بشكل أفضل في الواجب الدراسي.

- It could help me stop feeling

anxious or worried about things. من الممكن أن تساعدني على التوقف عن الشعور بالقلق والتوتر تجاه الأشياء.

General Exercises



🗓 LESSONS 3 & 4

	Understand	Apply	• Create		
1	Complet	e the follow	wing dialog	jue:	
•	Youssef a	nd Tamer ar	e talking ab	out being mindful	
	Youssef:	Hello, Tame	r. Why were	you absent yesterda	ay?
	Tamer :	Hello, Youss	ef. (1)		
	Youssef:	(2)		?	
		Much better			
	Youssef:	You missed	a good lesso	on yesterday.	
	Tamer :	What was it	about ?		
	Youssef:	(3)			
	Tamer :	(4)		?	· e
	Youssef:	Mindfulness	means beir	g able to relax by c	almly thinking
		about your f	eeling and v	what is around you	at the moment.
	Tamer :	Good!How	does it help	us in our life and st	udy ?
	Youssef:	(5)			
2	Choose t	he correct a	nswer fron	na,b,cord:	
•	1. She took	a course to	her Er	nglish.	
	a. stop		mprove		d. prove
•		believe you.		•	
	a. kind		onest _	c. serious	d. joking
Ť	o. resterday	y, I revised b. o	my Eng		
				c. at	d. in
ľ	you are.	neaitr	snows the	health of your mind	l, or how happy
	a. natura	h m	nental	• •	
•			ome comfor	c. special table and less worr	d. normal
	a. shout	b.st	udy		
•	6 me	ans being at	ole to think	C. relax	d. jump
		You at the li	noment	calmly about your f	eelings and what
	a. Enviror	iment	- The Ite	b Cubarte II i	
	c. Brightn	ess		b. Cyberbullying	
				d. Mindfulness	

What	's	wrong	7

/	air in	and out your bod	ly means to	
	7. To take a	b. conclude	ly means to	d. laugh
,	a. breatte	b. conclude isten to their teach b. don't have to	hers carefully.	
0	8. Students a. mustn't	b. don't have to	c. should	d. need
	a. III	read, You D	uy more.	
0	9. I will buy some so a. don't have to	b. shouldn't	c. must	d. have to
	when I was ten	, ride a hor	rse alone. It was rea	lly amazing.
0	a. can	b. can't	c. could	d. couldn't
	amplete the se	ntences with the	e correct form of	the word(s) in
3	brackets:			
	(no	it able) lix the lan	yesterday.	
	omar (mu	st make) noise at i	ine library.	
	. uatem (cai	n) swim, when ne	was four.	
	4. Could Laila	(cooks) alone wh	ien she was eleven	?
4	Complete the	sentences with th	nese words:	
		start - have - way		
		1 . 1		W-100
			on his boat. I had to	-
			carefully around th	
			hen, the engine sto	
	(4) it, but		men, the engine ste	pped. We tried to
R				
Ġ	Findland about to	about 110 word	ds to your friend !	Seif who lives in
		ow to be mindfu		A STATE OF THE STA
	"Your friends	hab and your email	address is shehab15@	@elmoasser.com"
	rour mena's nar	ne is Seif and his em	ail address is seifram	nzi@gmail. com"

5& 6





Vocabulary

Key Vocabulary

مستمع listener (n) يقاطع الكلام interrupt (ed) (v) cope (d) with (phr.v) يتعامل مع -يتغلب على خطير - جاد serious (adj)

للنفي ا يتقابل مع meet up with (v) ملتر (معدل الصور) filter (n) واضح - صاف clear (adj)



تنويه « Key Vocabulary هي المفردات الأكثر أهمية المطلوب من الطالب إتقانها.

■ Master your Vocabulary يقضى على جميع مشاكل حفظ المفردات (ملحق Master).

■ Glossary لحصيلة أكبر (للمزيد) من المفردات اللغوية نهاية الكتاب.

Lesson (5)	SB page 61 WB page 113

M - 1 - 1 - 1 - 1 - 1 - 1 - 1 - 1 - 1 -	SD page of the		
understanding (n)	تفاهم	decide (d) (v)	يقرر
weather (n)	الطقس	clearly (adv)	بوصوح
explain (ed) (v)	يشرح		

SB page 62 WB page 114 Lesson 💪

mind (ed) (v), (n)	يمانع - يعارض - عقل	tip (n)
ability (n)	القدرة	brainstor
digital (adj)	رقمى	mirror (n)
word cloud (n)	سحابة الكلمات	diary (n)
poster (n)	ملصق	contact (
display (ed) (v)	يعرض - يقدم	instead (a

ı	tip (n)	نصيحة
ı	brainstorm (ed) (v)	يقوم بالعصف الذهني
J	mirror (n)	مرأة
J	diary (n)	مفكرة يومية
)	contact (ed) (v)	ينواصل - يتصل بـ
,	instead (adv)	بدلًا من

Conjugation of Irregular Verbs

تحريف اللفعال غير المنتظمة

Preser	الوضارع 1 t	الماضي Past	التصريف الثالث
give	يغطى	gave	given
break	يكسر	broke	broken
mean	یعنی - یقصد	meant	meant
meet up	يلتقي - يقابل	met up	met up

Colloca	tions	0		نظی ة	متلازمات لذ
ready get better		ىستەد		sure	بتاكد
	يتحسن	make	a mistake	يخطأ	
go	well	یسیر بشکل جید		questions	يكون أسئلة
do	work	يقوم بعمل	give	an example	يقدم مثال
interrupt	someone	يقاطع حديث شخص	Bive	advice	يقدم نصيحة
have	an exam	لديه امتحان	cope with	a problem als	

Listening and Reading



on lesson 5 SB page 61

Narrator: Conversation 1

Boy 1: My friends aren't talking to me anymore. I feel really depressed about it, I don't know what to do.

Boy 2: Oh, don't worry about them! They're boring anyway. You can find new friends.

Narrator: Conversation 2

Boy 3: What's wrong, Khaled?

Boy 4: I'm really worried about something.

Boy 3: Tell me about it. What happened?

Boy 4: I heard some bad news yesterday..

Boy 3: Go on It might help to talk about it, you know.

Narrator: Conversation 3

Girl 1: I think I'm going to fail my exams. (2)

Girl 2: Well, you aren't the only one. I'm doing badly too.

Girl 1: But I really want to get good results. I want to go to university and

study medicine.(3)

Check Vocabulary

يدرس الطب (3) أفشل في أختباراتي (2) مكتئب (1

Girl 2: I don't want to go to university! I want to get a job as soon as possible and earn some money. Have I told you about my plan to travel to America ... ?

Narrator: Conversation 4

Girl 3: I'm worried about my friend. She's got a new group of friends and I think they aren't good for her.

Girl 4: I see. What makes you say that?

Girl 3: She just seems different. She's not the same person I used to know. Girl 4: It's clear you're unhappy about it. Can you give me an example of

what you mean?

Girl 3: She's not working hard at school anymore. When I speak to her about

it, she just laughs and says I'm boring.

Girl 4: That must make you feel very sad.



on Lesson 5 WB page 113

Mazin : I had a terrible (1) day at school.

Mother: Tell me about it. What happened?(2)

Mazin : It was my English class. You see ...

Mother: Go on. It might help to talk about it, you

know.

Mazin: We had a test and I was last (3) in the class!

Mother: That must make you feel very sad.

Mazin: It was so difficult.

Mother: Can you give me an example of what

you mean(4)?

: Well, I didn't understand what they wanted me to write. Mazin

Mother: It's clear you are unhappy about it. Why don't we talk to the

teacher?

Check Vocabulary

فظیع - شنیع (۱)





on Lesson 6 SB page 62



Dalia gets ready for school. She can hear her parents talking to her older brother. He is not doing well at school and they are worried about his exams. She is worried about her brother, too. Before leaving for school, she says goodbye to her brother. He does not look happy and this makes her feel even worse.

Dalia tries to stop her brother playing video games. She tells him that he should study, but he does not listen. Then she looks on social media for some advice, but she can't find anything useful. Instead, her friends just tell her about what they did that day.



The first lesson at school is science Dalia works hard and does some good work.

The afternoon lessons don't go well. Dalia can't stop thinking about her brother. How can she encourage him to work harder? Dalia goes home. Her brother is playing video games. Dalia's parents don't know what to do about him.

She wants to tell her friends about her worries, but she finds it difficult to talk about her feelings. So she tells them she had a good day.

on Lesson 6 WB page 114

Taha's friends all live near(1) to their school. When they have finished their homework, the friends all meet up(2) to play in the park. Sometimes, they help each other with their school work(3), too. Taha lives a long way from (4) the school. It takes an hour for him to get home to his small village(5). He does not have a father and he is worried because his mother is ill (6). So, when he gets home, he has to look after his younger



brothers and sisters. He does not have much time to do his school work.

Check Vocabulary

مريض (6) قرية (5) بعيدا عن (4) الواجب الدراسي (3) يلتقي - يتقابل (2) قريب (1)

on Lesson 6 WB page 114

Hi friends,

I want to write about Dalia. I will start by saying we must do something. If we do nothing, Dalia will continue⁽¹⁾ to feel lonely⁽²⁾ and upset. This will not help her. So, first of all, it would be a good idea to talk to Dalia. She must tell us her feelings. Then, we will know how best to support (3) her.

Secondly, why don't we talk to her teacher? I think it will be difficult to talk to her parents, but the teacher can tell them that Dalia is worried about her brother. I think this might (4) help.

Finally, I think we should tell her that we are proud (5) to have her as a friend. We should help her with her school work and also take her out so she can relax⁽⁶⁾ after school. This will make her feel better. Do you all agree?⁽⁷⁾ Email⁽⁸⁾ and let me know.

Best wishes, Riham.

Check Vocabulary

يستمر (1)	وحيد - منعزل (2)	يدعم - يساند (3)	ريما (4)	فخور (5)
يسترخي (6)	يوافق (7)	يرسل رسالة بريد إلكتروني (8)		

. on Lesson 7 SB page 63

I'm worried about my friend. She is so unhappy about her appearance How can I help her feel more positive about herself? People like her and she has won prizes for her art; the only negative thing about her is her opinion of herself. It's really bad for her mental health.

I'm sorry she feels this way. You say that she has won art prizes - you could try to tell her that this is a wonderful achievement (3). I've just moved here and I'm the only person in my class who isn't from this country. I'm embarassed^[4] to talk to people because I can't speak the language well. I haven't told anybody about this and I want it to be a secret (5). My parents know I feel a bit lonely but they don't know why.

It can be upset being the only person from another country, but don't worry about your language ability(7). Try to breathe in and out calmly, and then talk to people. Nobody minds when people make mistakes!(8)

Check Vocabulary

مظمر (۱)	رأى (2)	انجازات (3)	محرج (4)
سر (5)	إلى حد ما (6)	قدرة (7)	يرتكب أخطاء (8)

on Lesson 7 WB page 115

Ola always worried about being ill. Then, a few months ago, she had to go to hospital after she broke her leg. She was able to go home the next day, but she wasn't able to walk for many weeks. She could go to school, but of course she couldn't do any sports until her leg was better. Her mother told her that she didn't have to do any housework, either. Her leg is better now, and yesterday she was able to play tennis with me. That was good, but the best thing is that she is not worried

about being ill any more, because she knows she will get better!



347

General Notes on Reading & Listening

clear

* clear (adj)

واضح - صاف

ex.:- It was clear to me that Ali was a liar كذاب.

- In spring, you can see the sky clear and blue.

* clear (ed) (v)

ىنظف - يزيل المخلفات

ex.:- I had to clear my desk before I left.

(inf. + ing) / اسم without + سا

ىدون

ex.:- Without sleep, we wouldn't be able to work the next day.

ex.:- 333 Listen without interrupting me.

(inf.) + مفعول به help

ساعد

ex.:- Start to help me explain my feelings more clearly.

المصدر .inf + مفعول به make

(بععل)

ex.: 533 His cruel words made her feel sad.

5 any more = no more

لم (أعد)

* any more

تستخدم دائمًا مع فعل منفى بـ (not)

ex.:- WB She isn't worried about being ill any more.

* no more

تستخدم لتدل على النفي مع بقاء الفعل قبلها مثبتًا

- She is no more worried about being ill.

تعبیرات وحروف جر هامت Prepositions & Prepositions قبیرات وحروف جر هامت

		سيرت وحروف جر حد
tell me what to do أخبرني ماذا أفعل	tell about	پذبر عن
talk about يتحدث عن	unhappy about	حزین بشأن
دون مقاطعتی without interrupting me	in the mirror	في المرآة
It is clear to me that	do more good work	يعمل مزيد من العمل الجيد
إنه من الواضح بالنسبة لى أن	look so good	يبدو جذاب جيدًا

and soulifilling elec	
agree on	يعمل شئ آخر
	رىلە قفتى
help with	اُولًا / مُبل کل شیء پساعد فی
	do something else agree on first of all help with

Exercise on Vocabulary

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

2	Key vocabulary			
	1. He is a good		ens to me carefully	
	a. speaker	D. player	C. listener	d fighter
	2. People use	to look so good i	n their pictures	d. fighter
	a. skills	b. filters	c. notes	d. medicines
	3. You're strong. You	u can with a	any problem.	medicines
	a. find	b. make	c. cope	d. add
	4. Coronavirus is a .		(-	
	a. clear	b. simple	c. digital	d. serious
	5. Will you up	o with your friend:	s today?	
	a. make	b. meet	c. wake	d. get
0	SB and WB Exercises		طالب والتدريبات	تدريبات من كتاب الد
	6. 🜃 Ask question	is to sure yo	ou really understand	the problem.
	a. give	b. have		d. do
	7. 3 Before leaving	g for school, she l	ooks at herself in th	ıe
	a. wall	b. mirror	c. video game	d. basin
	8. 1 How can she	him to wor	rk harder ?	
	a. take	b. do		d. encourage
	9. WB Young childr	en are not good li	steners because the	ey often!
	a. eat	b. interrupt	c. encourage	d. Histori
C	El-Moasser Exercis	110	صر	تدريبات كتاب المعاد
	10. You should thir	before ta	king an important o	lecision.
	a clearly	b. happily	c. angrily	d. really
	a. clearly 11. Did you see the	of the new	[]]]]]	d. poster
	a video	h advice	c. comment	u. po

a. taps b. tapes c. tips d. lips Language Notes, Expressions & Prepositions 13. Try	12. You shoul	d listen to	your big bro	other's		
13. Try	- tinc		c. tips	d. lips		
a. helping b. help c. to help 14. You can't succeed without hard. a. working b. to work c. work d. works 15. Do you agree what I say? a. of b. to c. up d. on 16. No, thanks. I don't want rice a. any more b. some more c. no more d. much Vocabulary Study: Synonyms and Antonyms Word قاماله المسلم ا						
a. helping b. help c. to help 14. You can't succeed without hard. a. working b. to work c. work d. works 15. Do you agree what I say? a. of b. to c. up d. on 16. No, thanks. I don't want rice a. any more b. some more c. no more d. much Vocabulary Study: Synonyms and Antonyms Word قاماله المسلم ا	ا في ورطة me. I'm really in a mess !					
a. working b. to work c, work d. works 15. Do you agree what I say? a. of b. to c, up d. on 16. No, thanks. I don't want rice a. any more b. some more c. no more d. much Vocabulary Study: Synonyms and Antonyms Word قالح الله المواقع	a. helping	a, neiped				
a. working b. to work c. work 15. Do you agree		d works				
a. of b. to c. up d. on 16. No, thanks. I don't want rice	a. working	a. Working				
الدين المرادة على المرادة الم	c un			d. on		
a, any more b, some more c, no more d, much Vocabulary Study: Synonyms and Antonyms Word قماعاله العلام المعاد				- 5		
Synonyms and Antonyms Word قالا الكافة المعاد المعاد المعاد الكافة الك				c. no mor	e d. much	
Synonyms and Antonyms Word قاملات المخاد المعالد المعادد الم			V :			
المرادف Antonym بالمخاد معدلاً المرادف المرادف المعدلاً عدال المرادف المعدلاً عدال المرادف المعدلاً المرادف المعدلاً المعدلاًا المعدلاً ا					رادفات ومتضادات	
ask العبر البديد (elder			L.	المرادف <mark>mm</mark>	المضاد Antonym	
elder younger قرسناً elder younger العبرسنا elder Prefixes & Suffixes Prefix / Suffix - er - ing - in			question /	inquire	tell / answer بر / پجیب	
Prefix / Suffix - er الوظيفة Function اليحول فعل إلى اسم فاعل العلم المناعل التلاقية التلاقية العلم		أكبر سنًا	elder		غر سنًا younger	
listener بحول فعل إلى اسم فاعل المسم فاعل المسم المعلقة المنافعة	Prefixes & Su	ffixes	798086	Heart Search	ناطع بادئة وناهية	
er - ing - in	Prefix / S	uffix	Functio	الوظيفة 👥	Examples airoi	
ng منف المراصفة understanding يحول فعل إلى السراصفة understanding يحول فعل إلى السراصفة understanding عدول فعل إلى السراصفة understanding عدول فعل إلى السراصفة understanding عدول فعل إلى السراصفة understanding seeds and in a seed in a	– er		ل اسم فاعل	يحول فعل إل	listener	
Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: 1. The antonym of the word "older" is					poster @	
Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: 1. The antonym of the word "older" is	– ing		, اسم / صفة	يحول فعل إلى	understanding معامر / تفاهم	
Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: 1. The antonym of the word "older" is	Guardian	\/	-bl	adir.		
1. The antonym of the word "older" is	Exercise	on voc	abulary 3	tuay		
a. ancient b. elder c. younger d. early 2. "Ask" and "question" have meaning. a. opposite b. different c. similar d. the same 3. We turn the verb "listen" to a noun by adding "".	Choose the control	orrect ans	wer from a	, b, c or d	:	
2. "Ask" and "question" have	1. The antonyr	n of the w	ord "older" i	5		
a. opposite b. different c. similar d. the same 3. We turn the verb "listen" to a noun by adding "					r d. early	
3. We turn the verb "listen" to a noun by adding "					1.1	
	Section 1995 Section 1995					
				7		

- They may be more understanding. The word "understanding" here is a/an
 - a. verb
- b. adjective
- c. adverb

d. noun

Skills Corner



كيفية التعامل مع معارات (القراءة - الكتابة - التحدث) في الورقة الامتحانية لكل درس على حده. تنجيف للمزيد من الشرح والتدريبات على مهارات (القراءة - الكتابة - التحدث)
Part 2 في ملحق (Master Your Term)

Reading Corner

قم بقراءة Reading on lesson 6 SB page 62 من كتاب المعاصر صفحة ٣٤٥ ثم قم بالتدرب على إجابة بعض أسئلة قطعة الفحم طبقاً لمواصفات الورقة الامتحانية.

A. Answer the following questions:

- مهارة التفكير النقدى Critical thinking skill -
 - 1. Why do you think Dalia doesn't tell her friends about her worries?
 - Because she finds it difficult to talk about her feelings.
- استخراج المعلومات Extracting information
 - 2. How does Dalia feel about her appearance?

B. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d

- تخمين معنى مفردة لغوية في النص Guessing the meaning of vocabulary in context
 - 3. The word "older" in the first paragraph is the opposite of
 - a. smarter
- b. lighter
- c. quieter
- d. younger

Writing Corner

محارة الكتابة

A. Read the sentences

جمل تساعدك على كتابة فقرة إنشائية / رسائة بريد إلكتُروني

"A day at school" يوم في المدرسة

1. I had a terrible day at school.

ا. قضيت يوم سئ في المدرسة.

2. There was a maths class.

- ٢. كانت هناك حصة لهادة الرياضيات.
- 3. We had a test and I was last in the class.
 - ٣. كان هناك امتحان وكنت المركز الأخير في الفصل.
- 4. I felt very sad as the test was very difficult.
 - £. شعرت بحزن شديد لأن الامتحان كان صعب جدًا.

-		201	١.
- 1	۳	٦	
•		_	7

B. Building sentences	
⊙ Read and complete:	
(Do - shouldn't - Could
1. Sorry mum, I wasn't to do 2 Hoda walk when she was a 3. You eat too much crisps. 4. We must our passwords se 5. Pupils go to school on time C. Practise by yourself - Write a paragraph of about (110) to	نثويه بعد دراسة القواعد والمفردات اللغوية الخاصة بالدرسين قم بالتدريب على بناء الجملة اe.
	ble day"
	هارة التُحدث
1. Expressions the speaker use to	
Tell me about it. What happened?Go on. It might help to talk about it	تعب يرات يستخدمها المتحدث ليوضح أنه يصغى جيدُ اخبرى عن هذا الأمر . ماذا حدث ؟ you know. استمر فى الحديث. ربما يساعدك الحديث عن هذا ال
I see. What makes you say that?It's clear you are unhappy about it.That must make you feel very sad.	افهم. ما الذى جعلك تقول هذا ؟ ^{من} الواضح أنك غير سعيد عن هذا الأمر. ^{من ا} لمؤكد أن هذا يجعلك تشعر بالحزن.
- Can you give me an example of wh	at you mean ? ^{هل} يمكنك إعطائي مثال عن الأمر الذي تقصده ؟

2. A good listener:

المستمع الجيد :

A good listener:



- 1. gives me advice but only if I ask for it.
 - يقدم النصيحة لي ولكن عندما أطلب منه ذلك.
- 2. listens without interrupting me.
 - يستمع لي بدون مقاطعتي في الحديث.
- 3. looks interested in what I am saying. يبدو مهتمًا بما أقول
- asks questions to make sure they really understand the problem.
 - يسأل أسئلة ليتأكد من استيعابه للمشكلة.
- 5. shows that they are listening.
 - يوضح أنه يصغى إلىً.
- 6. tries to help me explain my feelings more clearly.
 - یحاول أن یساعدنی لتوضیح مشاعری بأكثر وضوحًا.

A good listener doesn't : 🔞

- 1. Tell me what to do.
- لا پخبرنی بما أفعل.
- 2. Tries to talk about something else. يحاول التحدث عن شيء آخر
- Tells me about their own problems.
 - لا يخبرني بمشاكله الخاصة.
- Tells me everything is OK and my problem isn't serious.
 - یخبرنی أن کل شیء علی ما پرام وأن مشکلتی لیست خطیرة.

Self Assessment Activity



قيم نفسك.

- ▶ ليتعرف الطالب على مدى اتقانه لأهداف الوحدة.
- ◄ فى حالة عدم إجتيازه يتم الانتقال إلى صفحة Review لمراجعة الوحدة مرة اخري.

General Exercises

🐽 🗦 & 🌀

· Understand · Apply

· Create

	Complete t	the following dialogu	e:	
Ī	Maher asks	his teacher, Mr Othma	n how to be a good	listener.
	Maher	: Hello, Mr Othman. Ca	nn I ask you a questio	on, please ?
	Mr Othman	: Hello, Maher. (1)	*	
	Maher	: (2) ?		
	Mr Othman	: If you want to be a g the speaker.	ood listener, you sho	ouldn't interrupt
	Maher	: It's OK. I won't interru	ipt the speaker. (3)	
	Mr Othman	: You should also show subject.		
	Maher	: What should I do if to Can I give advice?	he speaker said som	ething wrong?
	Mr Othman	: (4)B	ut, don't give orders	i.
	Maher	: Thanks for your time,		
	Mr Othman	: (5)		
2	Choose the	e correct answer from	a, b, c or d:	
•	1. Si Noboo	ly minds when people	mistakes I	
	a. QO	b. make	c take	d a 2110
•	2. After she h	ad the medicine, she	better a lot	d. gave
- 1	a. Hau	D. ant		d. made
•	3. Have you f	inished or you will	something else ?	d. made
		D. GO	- 4 11	d. make
Ī	a. from	t ready the final	exam ?	u. make
		D. Of		d at
	answered a	ring your exam paper, y all the questions.	ou should su	re that you had
	a give			

a. give

b. forget

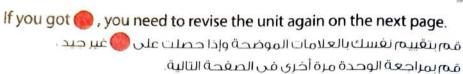
c. do

d. make

S A VOIL	ome advice about	now to solve this p	roblem ?
Land	D. attenu	c. give	a. take
a. preterio	at yourself a	t the mirror for a lo	ng time.
	b. look	c. watch	d. notice
a. see	nine, she to	speak two languag	jes well.
:- able to	b. wasn't able to	c. is able	d. was able
a. Is able to	ny money to buy	a present for your n	num. You
save some mone			
a. mustn't	b. had to	c. have to	d. shouldn't
a. musure 10. WB She 9		she broke her leg.	
a. has to	b. must	c. had to	d. should
	Desi		
W Complete the	e sentences with t	these words:	
	look - a - takes -	get - worried	
			n hour for him
Taha lives a lon	g way from the sch	ool. It (1)a	a a father and he
to (2)ho	ome to his small villa	age. He does not hav	home he has to
is (3) bed	cause his mother is	ill. So, when he gets	es not have much
		ers and sisters. He doe	.5 Hot he
time to do his sch	ool work.		محاسمته نا دروسامه
Write a paragra	oh of about (110)	words on:	ب بساحی بهایه الکتاب
	"A good li	stener"	

Self Assessment Activity

التقييم الذاتي





ياية هذه الوحدة، سأكون قادرًا على أن
اتعلم مفردات لغوية
teenagers
anxious
disappoint
empathy
t / had to / should / shouldn't / might) :
have to / could / was / قرأ واكتب جمل باستخدام
hen they were young.
orary.
on Fridays.
uldn't stay up late.
suggesting solutions to
تحدث عن مشكلات المراهقين واقتراح حا
تددث عن مشكلات المراهقين واقتراح حا ? nd problems
تددث عن مشكلات المراهقين واقتراح حا nd problems ?
تددث عن مشكلات المراهقين واقتراح حا ? nd problems

، جزء للمتابعة فى كراسة المعاصر Master your term ، جزء للمتابعة الشهرية بعد كل ثلاث وحدات لمزيد من التدريبات



on unit 6

SB page 63 WB page 115

Sopraoo		•	Language	Speaning
reellayers	مراهقين	(must - mustn't) (have to - don't have to)		(1) Discussing teenagers' worries and
anxious	वाहु	must + inf. , soull	يجب للتعبير عن الإلزام والضرورة	their problems:
embarrassed	מלק	محرج eX.: - Friends must keep secrets.	ets.	مناقشة قلق الشباب ومشاكلهم
positive	ایتابی	ايجابي mustn't + inf.	لا يجب للتعبير عن المنع والتحريم	What are teenagers worried about? الا يجب للتعبير عن المنع والتحريم
negative	ulli	سلبی ولاي: - You mustn't interrupt someone's speech.	omeone's speech.	- They are worried about
upset	منزعج	have to + inf.	عندما يكون الشء ضرورى	- We could help
support	तंत्र्य	يدعم ا - ا ا ا ا ا ا ا ا ا ا ا ا ا ا ا ا ا	ence subject.	Of any real company of a reconstruction of
mental health	الصحة العقلية	dufacilization don't have to + inf.	عندما يكون الشء غير ضرورى	عندما یکون الشیء غیر ضروری عندما یکون الشیء غیر ضروری
disappointed	محنط	صحبط المالي عبر المالي	o work on Fridays.	تعبيرات يستخدمها المتحدث ليوضح آنه يصف جيداً
sort of	نوع من	should I should	inf. Jack	(A) : I've got a problem.
realise	بُدرك	مل شيء	للتعبير عن النصيحة بعمل أو عدم عمل شء . Tell me about it.	(B) : Tell me about it.
cyberbully	يتنمر عبر الانترند	يتنمر عبر الانترنت - You should't drink water from the canal.	er from the canal.	(A) : I broke my new phone.
mindfulness	اليقظة	was / were able to + inf.	inf. Jaroll	
interrupt	ग्वाक्र		للتعبير عن القدرة في الماض	
serions	خطير - جاد	ट्रं I was able to say sorry to Ali.	Ali.	: Semesting colutions to problems :
empathy	عاطفة	could / couldn't	Me. Jacol	
cope with	يتكيف مع		للتعبير عن القدرة وعدم القدرة في الماض	n leibos con man Li
interests	اهتمامات	اهتمامات - : 💘:: - ا could read when I was six.	s six.	- Could you use social man.
breathe	يتنفس	يتنفس - She couldn't stand on one leg.	one leg.	technology to help them:

Writing Skill

مهـــارة الكتابـــة

"معالحة جديدة للفقرة الإنشائية والبريد الإلكتروني"

A Paragraph on

Teenagers' problems / Ways to relax / Using technology to solve problems / The advantages and disadvantages of social media

@

Brainstorming

مجموعة أسئلة لاستثارة أفكار لكتابة الفقرة الإنشائية / رسائل البريد الإلكتروني

- What do you think most teenagers worry about ?
- What can they do to cope with their problems ?
- How could you use technology in a positive way ?
- What must you do to be a good listener?

Vocabulary

مفردات لغوية مساعدة

- technology anxious mindfulness
 social media embarrassed cyberbully
 positive upset example
 negative empathy social life
 relax mental health
- 3

Expressions & Structures

تعبيرات وتراكيب مساعدة

- I'd like to listen to music.
- It's clear you're unhappy about it.
- I decided to cope with
- Most teenagers worry about
- Using social media can help
- We had to

г
H

Paragraph / Email

كتابة الفقرة الإنشائية / رسالة بريد الكتروني

Write a paragraph of about (110) words on:

"Teenagers' problems"

Exam Language

أهم النقاط (موضع إختبار) في كل وحدة والتي تستطيع من خلالها التعامل مع تدريبات الوحدة و كل التدريبات الخاصة بالمنهج



o Vocabulary

مفردات لغوية مامة قد تكون موضع اختبار :

embarrassed	مرتبك / متحير	realise	يدرك
anxious	قىق	cyberbully	لتنمر عبر الإنترنت
negative	سلبي	mindfulness	ليقظة
positive	إيجابى	interrupt	- يقاطع (الحديث)
fail	يفشل	serious	خطیر /جاد
mental health	الصحة العقلية	social life	الحياة الاجتماعية
support	يدعم	secret	ייענ

Language

- 1. You mustn't(1) talk in class.
- 2. A good friend must⁽²⁾ keep secrets.
- 3. Samy had to (3) go to the doctor.
- 4. He was able to (4) carry the heavy box.
- 5. They couldn't (5) answer the questions.
- 6. You should study (6) your lessons.

قواعد لغوية هامة قد تكون موضع اختبار :

Check Language

- تستخدم للمنع والتحريم وبعدها المصدر
- تعبر must عن الألزام وبعدها مصدر الفعل (2)
- تستخدم had to للتعبير عن حدث ضروري في الماضي (3)
- تستخدم was/were) able to) للتعبير عن القدرة في الماضي
- تستخدم couldn't للتعبير عن عدم القدرة في الماضي (5)
- تستخدم للتعبير عن النصيحة والفعل بعدها في المصدر

Speaking

Suggesting solutions to problems

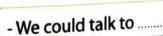
Questions

•		
1 Who sou	ld vou talk t	o for help

- Who could you talk to for help? 2. What could you do to help?
- 3. Could you use social media or technology to help?

وظائف لغوية هامة قد تكون موضع اختبار :

Answers



- We could help by
- Good idea , but



General Exercises

on unit

6

· Understand

Apply

Create

Complete the following dialogue:

L	Complete the following thought.
	Salem is angry because he can't find his pen after the English lesson.
	Usama: What's the matter, Salem?
	Salem : (1)
	Usama: Have you looked for it in your bag?
	Salem: (2)
	Usama: Don't worry. (3)
	Salem : It isn't under the desk. I looked for it there.
	Usama: (4)?
	Salem : No, I didn't look for it in my English book.
	Usama : (5)?
	Salem : It's on the bookshelf.

2 Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

I always wanted to be part of a certain group of popular students. One day, they suggested that we cyberbully a boy in my class called Fawzi, so I wrote an unkind comment about him on social media.

I thought that my friends would think it was funny. I didn't realise that they were joking and I was the only one to write an unkind comment.

Fawzi read my comment and the next day he didn't want to come to school. I had to tell my parents, and they couldn't understand why I did it. Then, the other students did not want to include me in their group. I am so embarrassed about what I did

However, I hope my experience will have a positive result, too. I didn't have to do what my friends suggested. You should think before you do something. Some online messages can hurt people very badly.

I was able to say sorry to Fawzi the next day. He is very kind and now be kind to people.

a. Answer the	following question	ons:	
	hy Fawzi didn't wa		nool. Mention two
2. Infer why Give two	reasons.	barrassed about	what he had done.
	tion two reasons.	end bad online m	nessages ? Why/Why
b. Choose the	correct answer fro	ma,b,cord:	
4. The best ti	tle for the passage	is	
a. friendsh	ip	b messages	
c. cyberbullying d. think before you react			
5. The writer message.	thought that his fr	iends would	when they read his
a. cry	b. fight	c. laugh	d. shout
6. The underl	ined pronoun " <u>it</u> " r	efers to	
a. Fawzi	TV.	c. media	d. class
Choose the co	rect answer fron	na,b,cord:	
1. WB The review	of the book has no	othing to s	ay about it. It sounds
great,			
a. negative	b. positive	c. good	d. helpful
My grandm	other always	and makes us lau	igh when we visit her.
you online.	your parents or the	e teacher if some	one tries to
a. cyberbully I. She	b. support er after taking her r	c. encourage	d. help
a. failed	race taking ner r	medicine.	
======================================	b. felt	c. passed	d. succeeded

Stop here!

Mini-Test on	unit 6 for Al-Azhar stude	
		116

اختبار مصغر لطلاب الأزهر الشريف

Read and match	
----------------	--

Α	
 To "support" means My grandfather always jokes and He feels anxious because Tarek had to go to the dentist I tell you a secret, 	a. makes us laugh when we visit him. b. but you mustn't tell anyone! c. something important that you have done. d. to help and encourage someone e. because his teeth hurt. f. he has an important exam tomorrow

Read and correct the underlined words:

1. Say me about it. What happened?	
2. It's serious to me that Ahmed is very good at running.	()
3. In the mountains, we want to	()
3. In the mountains, we were able see an amazing waterfall.	()
4. I have to get up early tomorrow because it is a holiday!	()

2. Use your brain, think smart

طبق ما تعلمته واختبر ذكائك

• Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

	eccanswer from a,		
1. A/Anis a. adult	a person who is bet b. teenager	ween 13 and 19 ye c. baby	
2. She feels	as her parents we	re died.	d. grown up
a. lonely	b. lunar	c. loneliness	d. loan
3. Ia bedi a. divide	room with my broth b. share		d. include
		c. contain	d. Include
T. Always take a	deep to relax	well.	8-8-000 www. 1400
a. breathe	b. breathing	c. breath	d. breathed
5. He is w	orried about being	ill.	
a. more	b. any more	c. no more	d. once more

Review B

S8 pages 64 & 65 WB pages 116 & 117





on Lesson 1 SB page 64

Aya Ayman Abbas is a young Egyptian Paralympic swimmer⁽¹⁾ with an incredible⁽²⁾ list⁽³⁾ of achievements⁽⁴⁾. She was born in Cairo and she joined a swimming club when she was six. She couldn't walk, but at the age of eight, she was already swimming in national competitions⁽⁵⁾ When she was 16, Aya became the first and youngest Egyptian swimmer to enter the 2016 Rio Paralympic



Games⁽⁶⁾. Aya had to face⁽⁷⁾ many challenges⁽⁸⁾ in her life. When she first started swimming, there weren't any swimming teams or equal opportunities⁽⁹⁾ for disabled⁽¹⁰⁾ people. Aya was able to achieve⁽¹¹⁾ her goals⁽¹²⁾ with the support⁽¹³⁾ of her parents. However, since that time, life has become a lot more positive⁽¹⁴⁾ for young disabled athletes⁽¹⁵⁾.

Aya is now a member⁽¹⁶⁾ of the Egyptian Paralympic team. Although she has a busy life as a university student, she is also a campaigner⁽¹⁷⁾ for disabled sports people. She hasn't stopped training⁽¹⁸⁾ since her last event. She is a true role model⁽¹⁹⁾ for all Egyptians!

Check Vocabulary

سباح من ذوى الاحتياجات الخاصة (1)	مذهل / مدهش (2)			
دورة الالعاب البارالمبية (6)	(5) OTO 1 OTO 1	قائمة (3)	انجازات (4)	مسابقات قومية (5)
رندر (11) ينجز/يحقق (16) عضو (16)	يواجه (7)	تحدیات (8)	فرص متساوية (9)	
	أهداف (12)	ایجابی (14) مساندة (13)	المعاقيين / ذو الهمم (10)	
	(17) Inlin	Designation of the last of the	ایجابی (14)	رياضيون (15)
		تدریب (18)	نموذج پحتذی به (19)	

del.

on Lesson 1 WB page 116

Police in Australia have found a man who was lost in the desert for 18 days. Robert Webber, who is 58, has driven from his hotel in the morning of January 2nd. He was not able to move his car after he went down a small farm road(1). He tried to walk back to (2) his hotel, but he couldn't remember the way. For many days, Robert had to drink water from rivers and eat what food he could find. Nearly (3)



three weeks later, a man has found Robert sitting under a tree. He was tired but well.

'Robert has already drunk lots of water and feels better on now, but he hasn't slept much yet', said a police officer. 'Remember that you must tell people when you drive somewhere in the desert, he said. You don't have to drive along (5) small roads either. They are not always safe'.

Check Vocabulary

يقود على امتداد (5) يشعر بتحسن (4) تقريبًا (3) يعود إلى (سيرًا على الأقدام) (2) يسلك طريق المزرعة الصغيرة (1)



on Lesson 1 SB page 64

Narrator: Conversation 1

Ola: What's wrong, Lina? Has something bad happened? You look really unhappy.

Lina: It's nothing. I'm just a bit anxious(1), that's all. Ola: Tell me about it. What are you anxious about?

Lina: Well, you know it's the national maths competition soon.

Ola: Yes. Go on.

Lina: I've revised(3) for it since the beginning of the year, and my parents think I will do very well. But I'm worried that I'm going to do very badly and that my parents will be disappointed.

Ola: I see. Would it help to talk to the maths teacher? Perhaps she could help you revise some of the things you are less positive about.

Lina: Yes, I could do that. That's a good idea, Ola, thanks.

Narrator: Conversation 2

Hany: Hi, Tamer! I haven't seen you for a long time. Are you OK?

Tamer: Well...

Check Vocabulary

يراجع (3) المسابقة القومية للرياضيات (2) مُلق مُليلاً (1)

Hany: I can see there's a problem. Why don't you tell me about it? Tamer: I'm too embarrassed to talk about it, Hany. I'm afraid I've done

Hany: Go on ... maybe it will help to talk to someone else about it.

Tamer: One of my school friends told me a secret⁽⁴⁾, and I told someone else. That was wrong. He's really angry with me now, and I can understand why.

Hany: I'm sorry to hear that. It must be very sad for you both. Is there

anything you can do?

Tamer: I've tried to say I'm sorry, but he doesn't want to talk to me. He hasn't spoken to me since it happened.

Hany: You could try sending him an email? It's often easier to write

about how you feel than to talk about it.

Tamer: Yes, you might be right ... thanks Hany. I think I'll try that.

Check Vocabulary

سـر (4)

on Lesson 2 WB page 117

Conversation 1

Wael: Hi Ziad. Has the bus arrived yet?

Ziad: No, it hasn't Wael.

Wael: How long have you been here? Ziad: I've been here for twenty minutes. Wael: The bus is very late. Shall we walk?

Ziad : Good idea.

Conversation 2

Nawal: Hi Marwa. How are you?

Marwa: Hi Nawal. I'm tired! I've not slept for hours.

Nawal: Have you arrived at the hotel yet?

Marwa: No! We've already flown for eight hours, but now we have to take a train.

Nawal: So you're at the train station?

Marwa: No, we haven't left the airport yet.

Conversation 3

Mother: Hi, Hisham. Have you done well? Hisham: Hi, Mum. Yes, I think I was second.

Mother: Well done! What an amazing achievement! Have you got a medal? Hisham: No, they haven't told us who has won yet. I might be first!

Mother: I'm really happy for you. You did really well.

on Units 4



فتدور

म्म दर्द

قم بمراجعة الوحدة مرة أخرى في نهاية كل وحدة

قم بتقييم نفسك بالعلامات الموضحة وإذا حصلت على 🛑

ज़र्स संद

If you got igoplus , you need to revise the unit again at the end of each unit.

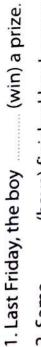
Mini-Test on Unit 4

0
U
þ,
à
from
answer
correct
the
Choose

7		
Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:	othe fence.	c. pretend d. trick
correct answer	1. Tom used beautiful colours to	p. spend
י בווססספ נוופ	1. Tom used b	a. paint

- 2. means to walk or drive behind someone. d. Drop to stop the sheep c. Feel 3. The field had a long b. Follow
 - 4. The boy he was enjoying the work. He d. tree b. fountain c. tap from leaving or escaping. a. fence
 - b. pretended d. printed thought he could trick them. <. protected a. turned
- new and exciting d. ring 6. They haven't seen their uncle since they a. discover b. drop things about space. Scientists often
- d. was c. have b. were .young. a. are

the following sentences with the	orm of the word(s) in brackets:
2. Complete the fo	correct form of



2. Sama (have) finished her homework.

3. The doctor has been in this hospital (for) 2005.

4. Has she (never) seen a lion?

3. Write a paragraph of about 110 words on :

"What you do on holidays"

If you got 🔵 , you need to revise the unit again at the end of each unit.

Mini-Test on Unit 5

Ali is asking Abdullah about his favourite footballer.

1. Complete the following dialogue:

: Hello Abdullah, what's your favourite sport?

Abdullah : (1).....

:(2)

Abdullah: My favourite footballer is Mo Salah.

Abdullah : He plays for Liverpool. : (3)

: Why do people like him ? Abdullah : (4)

: Does he score many goals ? Abdullah : (5)

- 2. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:
- 1. He is the _____ of a team of people and they have meetings every day.
- a. student b. manager c. servant d. cleaner 2. He working for the company three years ago.

d. spent

b. looked c. made

a. started

قم بمراجعة الوحدة مرة أخرى في نهاية كل وحدة، قم بتقييم نفسك بالعلامات الموضحة وإذا حصلت على 🔵 غير جيد ،



3. Samar travelled to the USA to the award.

d. drop 4. She also gives speeches to other young a. sweep b. receive c. dry

d. achieve engineers to help them their goals. b. need c. steal a. feed

5. Ais someone who works with maths.

b. nurse a. mathematician

d. volunteer

6. He hasn't received his job

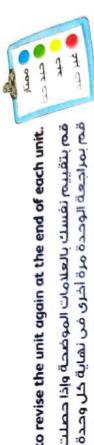
c. for b. yet a. never

"A creative person"

3. Write a paragraph of about 110 words on:

If you got 🔵 , you need to revise the unit again at the end of each unit.

قم بتقييم نفسك بالعلامات الموضحة وإذا حصلت على 🔵 غير جيد ،



Mini-Test on Unit 6

- is something important that you have 1. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:
- Achievement

done

- b. Addiction
- C. Appearance
- d. Attention
- 2. The review of the book has nothing _____ to say about it. It sounds great.
- d. wasting a. positive b. negative c. ugly
- 3. My grandmother always and makes us
 - a. jokes b. fixes c. cooks d. drops laugh when we visit her.
- 4. You must tell your parents or the teacher if you online. someone tries to
 - b. phone a. cyberbully
- d. pick
- 5. Tarek doesn't want to go to Canada. He can't cold weather.
 - a. talk with

c. interrupt

- b. cope with
 - d. make up

o. 10u	_	mustn't	noise	บู	7	chould	2	<u> </u>	e at the nospital.
a. III	į	1200	٠	1	2	3		j	1

0

Complete the sentences with the correct

form of the word(s) in brackets:

- You (shouldn't) study your lessons. 2. They (has) to go to school early.
- (Were) Hoda able to run fast when she was young?
- 4. He didn't (had) to see a doctor.
- 3. Write a paragraph of about 110 words on :

"What you didn't have to do at primary school"

c. drive

Answers

of Main Book Topics الشرح

Unit 1

General Exercises on lessons 1 & 2

"Ismailia is an interesting city"

Egypt has a lot of interesting places in all of its parts. Ismailia is one of Egypt's beautiful governorates. Although Ismailia does not have many historical sites, it has a lot of green areas. Everyone describes the green areas of Ismailia as "places of comfort". A lot of families go to Ismailia to spend their holidays. There are attractive buildings, interesting monuments and lots of gardens. The best thing about Ismailia is its calmness. The city has little pollution, no factories and a little of traffic. The weather there is fine; not hot or cold most of the year. There are lots of things you can do in Ismailia, you can sit on beaches, go swimming and enjoy some water sports.

To conclude, I advise all people who want to have fun and enjoy their time to visit Ismailia. You will never get bored!

General Exercises on lessons 3 & 4

From : mazen2004@gmail.com
To : heshamprince@gmail.com

Subject : new Egyptian cities

Dear Hesham,

How are you? I miss you so much! Isn't it the time for coming back? You've gone to Tunisia for a long time and nearly you've forgotten all your friends. What I want to say that our great country has changed a lot. A lot of fantastic new cities have been built, so we can enjoy our time together visiting those new Egyptian cities. We can visit the New Administrative Capital, AL Fatah EL Aleem Mosque or go to Hurghada. The new school year starts soon and I hope you come back before it. I miss our days. Please, contact and tell me what you're going to do. See you soon.

Yours, Mazen

General Exercises on lessons 5 & 6

From : alaa22@gmail.com

To : sara26@yahoo.com Subject : invitation to the exhibition

Dear Sara,

How are you? I miss you so much! At first, I write this email to tell you that my family always ask me about you. They've been in love with you since you met them on last year's holiday. Second, I'd like to invite you to visit the exhibition with my family. It's a good chance to have fun and let all my family see you. The new exhibition has a lot of art works and I know you love the works of art and have too much knowledge about galleries. All my relatives who have recently visited the exhibition say that it has a fantastic collection of paintings and drawings. Those works were made by famous artists. I want you not to skip this. With my best wishes.

Yours,

Alaa

General Exercises on unit 1

"What you do on one day of the week"

In fact, I have too many tasks to do during the week. On last Friday, I had an idea. I wanted to visit my mother's oldest aunt. She is a very kind person. I remembered staying with her when I was young. She always talked to me and told me interesting stories about my father and mother. What I love and make me remember her from time to time is that she has a very good quality. I cannot find today with a lot of people; she has a very wide chest and can answer to all my questions. She never gets bored. I think this was the thing that made me want to visit her last week. We had good time and again she told me exciting and new stories. I think I will never forget her and I want to visit her more and more.



General Exercises on lessons 3 & 4

From : seifsalah@almoasser.com

To : john17@gmail.com Subject : Egyptian tourist attractions

Dear John,

How are you? You asked me before about Egypt and its history. I remember you asked me about what places you can visit in it, too. Egypt has a lot of tourist attractions. Egypt also has worldwide tourist cities. We have Sharm El-Shiekh and Hurghada and they are visited by millions of people every year. We have beaches you will never find in other places. We have hotels with good quality. I can't say that our water sports activities are rare, but I can say the nature and its beauty we have is rare. We have great historical museums and temples in Luxor and Aswan, All I mentioned above is few! But when you visit Egypt, you'll learn more and more. I hope to see you soon.

Yours, Seif

General Exercises on lessons 5 & 6

"Something I bought online"

Everything in life; big or small, old or new has positive sides and negative sides as well! No one can deny that online shopping has become more and more popular nowadays. Many people prefer it because it is easier and quicker than traditional shopping. As I am interested in music and it is my favourite hobby, I decided to buy a piano! A friend of mine told me that there is a very good online website for a music shop whose fame is fantastic. When I saw their goods and the musical instruments they displayed, I was astonished by some pianos they offered,

so I ordered one. In fact, the piano arrived one day after the order. But when I opened it, I found out it was broken! Of course, I was angry and I made a complaint. I learned that things have advantages and disadvantages!

General Exercises on unit 2

"The best and worst items of technology in my house"

Technology has become a symbol of progress especially at our homes. Of course technology has changed our life and it is a must to use it in modern life. Smart TV sets, mobile phones and laptop computers are almost in all of our homes. And as it is always said, "For every plus, there is a minus!"These technological devices have made our life easier and more enjoyable. On one hand, they tell us about what happens in our world, make us watch football matches all over the world and follow our likes by an easy and quick way. But on the other hand, they have made us lazy, feel bored most of the time and somehow away from our real life! People look at those screens more than they look at themselves! Even children have become busy playing online games and watching videos. Isn't that strange?



General Exercises on lessons 1 & 2

"What I can do to help people in my community"

A man who is living for just himself or herself is not living! I think our community is a part of our life and it is a must to cooperate for it and for solving the problems it suffers from. At my school, there are some students who have disabilities at different parts of their bodies. Some can't move, well others can't

see well. I thought and thought about them and at last I had an idea for helping them. I went to the school headmaster and suggested a way to lighten the burdens of them and their parents for coming at school. I suggested all students in all classes at school should donate money for building a special area for them and making special roads without stairs for them. The headmaster welcomed my idea and thanked me and promised that he will work for it. Isn't that a small help for our community?

General Exercises on lessons 3 & 4

To : aymanking@gmail.com
From : mahmoudhero@elmoasser.com
Subject : some community problems
Dear Ayman,

How are you? I hope you and your family are happy and in good health. I write this email to tell you some problems in my community. I have some friends who suffer from the absence of thought and aim. They do not do well at their study and school work. They do not have real goals to achieve. All they want to sing songs and play games everyday. They never study and their parents do not know what to do. I think it is a problem at our community that we should find a solution to it. Don't you have any suggestions? Please, write to me if you have any solutions. Waiting for your reply! With my best wishes.

Yours, Mahmoud

General Exercises on lessons 5 & 6

"A message to a social network service page about a community project"

We all love our community and want to give services to help improve it. I and some of my friends decided to meet to discuss how to do a project to help our community. At our meeting, we decided to start a local charity, where people can donate food to families who need it. We got some ideas from a network for our project. Everyone in our community who can offer food to help in this aim should be cooperative and helpful. We can design pages on the internet, call for anyone who can help us. Social work is a great issue that deserves to start working on it. We need volunteers to help us plan and complete this project. Please, we should not neglect that to be a developed country and improve our community.

General Exercises on unit 3

"A person who made a difference in my community"

As I was young, I had little experience in life. I had a lot of problems and I could not find solutions for most of them. I wasted too much time of my life and regretted that. One day, I met a friend who was older than me. His name is Helmi. Really. he is a great person. He listened to all my problems carefully and told me about some of his own problems which were a lot greater than mine. The strange thing that he faced all his problems with great satisfaction and told me he always said Thanks God. He told me that the strong man is the person who can face and overcome, not to give up. At last, he could solve all his problems by working hard. I learned from him that the hard work is the only key to solve any problem. From this time and I kept Helmi's advice in my mind and I worked harder and harder and I've never forgotten his advice.



General Exercises on lessons 1 & 2

"My experiences"

Have you ever climbed a mountain? Have you ever eaten a snake? In fact, everyone in life has their own special experiences who will never forget. My first experience that I will never forget is when a friend of mine invited me to have lunch at his house. This friend lives in Marsa Matrouh. I travelled and had a very delicious meal. It was grilled meat and I was very happy with the food. When I finished, I asked him what kind of meat that we had. To my surprise, he told me it was meat of a snake! I told him how come! After that I knew it is easy to have snakes for meals at Matrouh. Another experience is when I travelled in a truck and an officer on the road stopped me and took me to the police station. He thought I was a criminal. After my parents came, I was set free. To conclude, everyone has some experiences which sometimes he or she may learn from or experience itself may teach him or her.

General Exercises on lessons 3 & 4

To : omarhedar@gmail.com
From : adelmunir@elmoasser.com
Subject : a day I spent at the Pyramids
Dear Omar.

How are you? I hope you and your family are in good health. Last week, our school went on a trip to the Pyramids. It was my first time to visit and see the Pyramids. I spent a very beautiful day there. I enjoyed riding a camel and a horse. There were a lot of tourists from all over the world. I spoke with them in English. Our great ancient Egyptians were really great builders and engineers. I knew that they built the Pyramids at first as tombs for themselves. I'd like to invite you to come to Giza and visit them. Really, you will enjoy and learn a lot of things. I hope to see you soon. With my best wishes.

Yours, Adel

General Exercises on lessons 5 & 6

"Things that I have achieved"

It is said that situations are the best teacher. When I was young, I had a dream to be the best student in English, because I love my English teacher and he always encourages me. I wanted to be perfect in English like him. After school, I always saved my pocket money to buy English books of higher levels than I'm in. I always go home and finish my study, then I read these books, write my notes and talk to myself in English. I've learnt all about grammar, vocabulary and writing paragraphs. In monthly tests at school, I always get the full mark. My class teacher asked me to talk in English in the morning school broadcasting. All my friends admired me and told me that I'm the best in English. I've got the full mark in English in all my study years and I've decided to be an English teacher when I grow up.

General Exercises on unit 4

"A happy event that happened to me recently"

I had an experience I will never forget. I always liked walking in the fields, on my own. My mother used to advise me not to do so, but I thought I was right. One day, I was alone in a faraway part of the fields. It was very early in the morning and there weren't so many farmers there. Suddenly, I saw a group of five or six large dogs in front of me. I wasn't afraid at all. When the dogs got nearer to me, I wasn't afraid and I was standstill. After a minute, the dogs moved away. To my surprise, I was being watched by the field owner. He asked a worker to come and asked me to go to him. When I met him, he was happy that I was brave and gave me some beautiful presents for both my parents and me.



General Exercises on lessons 1 & 2

"My role model"

Samar Abdelfattah is my role model. As a young child, Samar wanted to be an astronaut. After she finished school, she went to Cairo University to study space engineering. While Samar was at university, a space technology company had a competition. Students had to design a new form of transport that travels above the ground. It is called "hyperloop". Samar decided to enter the competition and asked other engineering students from university to join her team. Teams of students from universities all around the world entered, but Samer's team was the only one from Africa or the Middle East that worked hard on the design and won the competition. Samar travelled to America to receive the award. I really admire her.

General Exercises on lessons 3 & 4

: monasaleh@gmail.com

: rehammagdi@elmoasser.com

Subject: the importance of helping

other people

Dear Mona,

How are you? I hope you and your family are in good health. I'd like to tell you that yesterday evening, I was travelling on a train from Aswan to Cairo. One of the passengers suddenly fainted and fell on the aisle of the train. People got worried and asked the train inspector to come. He thought that the passenger was in great danger. Luckily, one of the passenger on another carriage came to help. He wasn't a doctor but he had an idea of first aid. He put his hands on the man's chest and began to press hard. After some time, the man opened his eyes and got better.

Without helping others, many bad things

Yours, Reham

General Exercises on lessons 5 & 6

"A famous person"

Fatma Ali El-Banna was born in Alexandria in 2003. As a child, she loved learning about science and wanted to be a great scientist. She learned more and more about science as well as how to look after the environment and Egypt's culture, She came first in Egypt in the NASA International Space Apps Challenge. She became very famous when she found a natural way for villages to clean the dirty water. The project can also help to stop pollution. In 2021, Fatma's project won fourth place in the society's international Science and Engineering Fair. She became very famous not only in Egypt but all over the world as well. Now, she wants to do more things to help her country. I admire Fatma and all her achievements.

0 General Exercises on unit 5

"A biography about a person I admire"

Mohamed Salah is the person who I admire most. He was born in a village in Gharbia. He is polite and hardworking. He has played for many teams. He also plays for the Egyptian National Team. He scored many goals for our team. He played for Roma Team. Now, he plays for Liverpool in England and scored many goals. Liverpool is a very good team. I like the way by which they play. Players are so active and present great shows and good results. This happened after Salah's joining to them. Salah added much speed to the team. Salah has got a lot of important awards in Africa and Europe.



General Exercises on lessons 1 & 2

"Social media in our life"

Technology is very important in our life. It has made life easier. An important type of modern technological developments is the social media and its role in our life. Of course no one can deny the role that the social media plays in our daily life. We can get the local and the global news almost at no time thanks to social media. It is also a comfortable way to communicate with each other either on the local level or the world wide level. If one of our relatives succeeded, the first thing that tells us this piece of news is the social media. But it is said that for every plus, there is a minus. Social media can waste our time if we became addicted to it. It offers great ways to attract our attention and make us away from our main tasks. If we are not careful. we may go with it to distant areas that return to us with negative sides.

General Exercises on lessons 3 & 4

To : seiframzi@gmail.com

From : shehab15@elmoasser.com

Subject: being mindful

Dear Seif.

How are you? I hope you and your family are in good health. I heard that you're somehow anxious about your schoolwork. I'd like to advise you to relax, be calm and concentrate on your study. This can come by mindfulness. You should have breaks between your study sessions. You can spend your weekend at a different place with cheerful people. Don't try to talk or hear about peoples' problems. Being mindful helps you to achieve great progress in your life. I hope you get better soon. With my best wishes.

Yours, Shehab

General Exercises on lessons 5 & 6

"A good listener"

No one can deny that personal problems are a thing that anyone lives with. The most important thing is to learn from our mistakes and this cannot be achieved except by listening to other peoples' pieces of advice. Especially people who are older than us and had a lot of experiences in their lives. To be a good listener is a very important quality one should have. It is a skill, because you can choose who you listen to and what to be listened at. The intelligent person is the one who listens more than he talks. God has created us with one mouth but with two ears. This is a message sometimes people do not care about. This message means that we should listen more than talk. Listening is a very important teacher. Through it, we can find solutions to problems, do useful things and be successful. To conclude, we should listen to learn.

General Exercises on unit 6

"What we should do to be good listeners"

Talking is free but listening is gold! Listening has many ways and shapes. We can listen to people, programmes, radios and books. To be a good listener, you should listen without interrupting the one who is talking and ask questions to make sure you really understand the problem which they face. You should also try to help them explain their feelings more clearly. On the other hand you shouldn't talk about something else when you listen to someone. Don't forget listening to mindful and educated people who are interested in your success and progress is golden. This can be found with different persons like your teachers, your parents and your friends. When you listen to them, of course many things will change at your life.

Glossary

المفردات اللغوية التى وردت فى الوحدات لحصيلة أكبر (للمزيد من المفردات اللغوية)

Unit 1

lessons 1 & 2

weekend (n)	عطلة نهاية الأسبوع
motorbike (n)	دراجة بخارية
compare (d) (v)	يقارن
lunchtime (n)	وقت الغداء
machine (n)	ٱلة
carry (ied) (v)	يحمل

lessons 3 & 4

اغذا
فيما بعد
طريقة
غالي الثمن
صور فوتوغرافية
الأقرب

lessons 5 & 6

phrase (n)	عبارة
partner (n)	شریك
clothes shop (n)	محل ملابس
book shop (n)	مكتبة (لبيع الكتب)
closed (adj)	قلخم
share (d) (v)	يشارك
enough	فاق
weekdays	عطلات ايام الأسبوع

Unit 2

lessons 1 & 2

right	
online	صحتك
café	عبر الإنترنت
	مقمى

home store	محل للأدوات المنزلية
decide(d)	يقرا
quickly	قداسا
discuss (ed)	بناقش
difference	اختلاف
loudly	بطوت عالى
cost - cost - cost (v)	فلكتب
city centre	مركز المدينة

lessons 3 & 4

teasons o a .	
town centre	مركز المدينة
leaves	أوراق الشجر
look like	ىشىە
pots	أواني
hope (d) (v)	ىأهل
below	أسفل
type	نوع
paint (ed)	ىلون - يدھن
history	تارىخ
modern	ديث
amazing	رانع
olan (ned) (v) (n)	نطة / يخطط
imagine	يتخيل
congratulation	نهانیتا - مبروك
eady	جاهز
	<i>J</i> .

lessons 5 & 6

still	لا يزال
wait (ed)	ينتظر
arrive (d) (v)	<u>י</u> בע
list	قائمة
delicious	لذيذ

main

partner

excited

prefer (red) (v)

preparatory school

primary school

primary school

primary school

primary school

diamon



lessons 1 & 2

sports activities أنشطة رياضية حديث - مستحد recent (adj) planned (adj) phio local area منطقة محلية عاجلًا - قريبا soon (adv) discuss (ed) (v) يناقش history museum متحف التاريخ صفحة موقع إليكتروني (website page (n improve (d) (v) ىحسن interview (ed) (v), (n)

یجری مقابلة شخصیة / مقابلة شخصیة کل واحد وirls' handball team فریق کرة الید للسیدات architect (n)

lessons 3 & 4

kindly (adv)	بلطف - بكرم
rest (n)	فترة الراحة - استراحة
repair (ed) (v) (n)	يصلح / إصلاح
historic (adj)	تاریخی
cover (ed) (v), (n)	يغطي - غطاء
note (ed) (v), (n)	ىلاحظ - ملاحظة
calligraphy (n)	فن الخط
metro ticket (n)	تذكرة مترو أنفاق

Lebanon	دولة لبنان
furniture (n)	دوت ب آثاث منزلی
competition (n)	مسابقة
sports centre (n)	مرکز ریاضی
kind (adj)	طیب - عطوف
ill (adj)	مريض

lessons 5 & 6

يضيف
يحتاج
طلاء - دهان
یکمل
سبب
فجأة
بدفء
نهاية
يهزم
يتحدث / حديث



lessons 1 & 2

fewer (adj)	أقل (عددًا)
marry (ied) (v)	يتزوج
life (n)	حياة

lessons 3 & 4

handball club (n)	نادي كرة اليد
amazing (adj)	مدهش - مذهل
cat noise (n)	صوت قطة
chess club (n)	نادی شطرنج
sea animals (n)	حيوانات بحرية
metal (n)	معدن
aguarium	متحف الأحياء المائية

lessons 5 & 6

happen (ed) (v)	بددن
take turns (phr.v)	ينبادل الأدوار
add (ed) (v)	يضيف
feel - felt - felt	يشعر
bear - bore - born	يُولد/يلد
become - became - becor	ne يصبح
part (n)	دزء
scared (adj)	خائف
Greece	دولة اليونان



lessons 1 & 2

travel (led) (v)	يسافر
Nigeria (n)	دولة نيجيريا
Brazil (n)	دولة البرازيل
Africa (n)	قارة أفريقيا
receive (d) (v)	يستلم
real (adj)	حقیقی

lessons 3 & 4

timetable (n)	جدول مواعيد
handball (n)	جـــون در ــــ كرة اليد
newspaper (n)	حريدة - صحيفة
stadium (n)	استاد
cleaner (n)	عامل نظافة
advice (n)	نصيحة
nervous	مين
calm	هادئ
musical instruments	آلات موسيقية
nearly (adv)	تقریبًا - حوالی

lessons 5 & 6

surprised	(adj)	يند صيف
	(CC)	Lumi

athlete (n)	رياض
return (ed) (v)	
get married (v)	29€. 20.:
still (adv)	ېتروخ رايزال
driving test	ريزل اختيار القيادة
	0



lessons 1 & 2

try (ied)	يخاول
technology	خولوديا
however	رارغم من ذلك
change (d)	_{غبر} - يتغير
even	دثی
necessary	ضوری
avoid (ed)	تدنب
essential	_{ساسی} - جوهری

lessons 3 & 4

funny	dane
badly	فرقال سياد
carefully	قىلنى
baker's	مخبز
imagine (d)	ىتخىل
mention (ed)	ينکر پنگر
try (ied)	۔ پخاول - پجرب
laugh (ed)	ىضدك
angry	غاض
UK	العملكة المتحدة
start (ed)	بشغل - يبدأ

lessons 5 & 6

else	أيضًا - آذا
prize	جائزة
terrible	فريع - شنيع
near	قريب

End of Term Practice

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

- 1. What is the speaker going to do today?
 - a. Take people to a nature reserve.
 - b. Give directions to an information centre.
 - c. Explain some facts about animals.
 - d. Find some water for the visitors and birds.
- 2. How do they get to the information centre?
 - Turn left and go past an old building.
 - b. Turn left and go right at an old building.
 - c. Turn right and go past an old building.
 - d. Turn right onto a big road.
- 3. What haven't they seen at the nature reserve this year?
 - a. Any birds
- b. Smaller birds c. Larger birds
- d. Any water

- 4. What must people take with them?
 - a. Food
- b. enough water c. Phones
- d. sun hats

2 Complete the following dialogue:

Ziad and Adam are talking about their plans for the weekend.

	5 and an enter plants for the meeticine.
Ziad: Hi, A	Adam. This is my older cousin, Hany.
Adam: (1)	, Hany, What are you doing next weekend?
: We'r	e going to the park. (2)
nuain: Im r	Not sure about that. There are some boys in the park and
-iau : (3)	It might be good to talk about it, you know.
Adam: (5)	ind comments! That must have made you feel very sad. But I told the officers at the park, and they talked to
Adam: The I	boys about that. ? Doys said sorry to me the next day. But I still don't want to go to the park.
nany : You	mustr/s come the next day. But I still don't want to go to

Hany: You mustn't feel bad anymore. I'm sure they won't do it again.

Read the text, then answer the questions :

You probably have a fridge in your house to keep your food cool, but have you ever thought about what people did in the past? People have used ice to keep food cool for thousands of years. In the north of Europe in winter, people were able to use snow or ice, which they kept underground for many months. In 1842, an American doctor called John Gorrie invented a machine to make ice. He used it to keep people cool when they got an illness called yellow fever. By 1900, places that sold meat in the USA started to have fridges and today, nearly all homes in the USA have a fridge in their kitchens.

We continue to use the same technology for fridges that we have used for a century. The problem is that a room with a fridge in it is a lot noisier and hotter than other rooms! Now people are designing modern fridges that are neither hot nor noisy. These are going to use less energy, too, so they will be more efficient.

1. What two problems do fridges cause?	
2. Why do you think that places that sold meat star	ted to have fridges by 1900?
the correct answer from a L	c. kept food cool. c. look better. c. work well and quickly
1. We saw some beautiful trees in the garde a. botanical b. passenger c. smart 2. Fatima worked hard to clean the dirty water, and a. competitions b. results c. teams 380	ens.

	. Lateba children	n were beca	use they heard ther
3. The parents kne	w that the crimare		iuse they heard ther
talking.	b delicious	c. awake	d. sleeping
. My grandmothe	r is very	e always knows n	ow i teel.
	b. positive	c. understanding	di cilibaliasseu
s Only Ali's cousin	knew the way to	the park, so we all	him there.
* took	b. went	c. got	u. Iolioweu
6. We take t	he bus to the muse	eum, we could tak	e a tram or a train,
t00.		c chauldn't	d might not
a. mustn't	b. don't have to	c. snoulan t	u. might not
7. You don't have t	o buy any bread to	oday because I	some.
 bought alread 	-,	b. have already b	oought
c have yet bou		d. yet bought	
8. I like the b	olue shirt and the o		
a. either	b. both		d. nor
9. I was very	to see my cousin	this morning beca	use I thought she
was in Jordan!			
a. surprise	b. surprising	c. surprised	d. surprises
10. The first bus to	the museum	at 9.30 am every	y day.
is leaving	b. leave	c. leaves	d. leaving
5 Read and correc	ct the underlined	l words.	
The work that the community.	ne volunteers do c	an really <u>do</u> a diffe	rence to our
People were sur knows.	prised by the <u>kind</u>	of Mr Nader. He h	elps everybody he
3. My parents have	e lived in the same	house when 2012	•
	n't working becau		
6 Choose one of t	he following. Wr	ite about 100 wo	ords.
Write an article on some traditional Egyptian handicrafts you like.			
			The MOUNT CONTINUENT.

Write an email to a friend suggesting how you could help your community.